
This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<http://books.google.com>







Gift of

Janet Gail Wolfson

Complements:

1. Direct Object.
2. Predicate noun
3. " " adjective
4. " " pronoun

A

LATIN GRAMMAR

ADAPTED FOR THE USE OF COLLEGES.

FROM THE FIFTEENTH GERMAN EDITION OF

DR. F. SCHULTZ'S GRAMMAR.

THIRTY-FIFTH EDITION

Frederick Huebner & Co.

Printers to the Holy Apostolic See and the Sacred
Congregation of Rites

RATISBON

ROME

NEW YORK

CINCINNATI



COPYRIGHT, 1878, BY E. STEINBACK.

PARSONS
1878

**CHAS. & McJUGAL, ELECTROTYPERS,
22 Beekman St., N. Y.**

PREFACE.

THE Grammar which we here present to the classical public, is arranged according to the German-Latin Grammar of Dr. Ferdinand Schultz. It is no small recommendation of the original, that it has passed through fifteen large editions in as many years.

The great merits of the work, which have made it so much esteemed, are its simplicity, clearness, and conciseness; for, while it does not overburden the learner with that boundless erudition, which is so frequently, in many text-books, a stumbling-block to the student, yet, we are convinced, nothing essential has been omitted.

Some additions have been made in order to render the work better adapted to the curriculum of studies in our American institutions.

All we ask for it is a fair trial in the *practical* work of the schoolroom; for it is there that the true test of a text-book must be sought, and we believe that when it has been so tested, it will be found to be all that it is claimed to be.

CONTENTS.

PART I

GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. VOWELS AND CONSONANTS.....	1
II. PARTS OF SPEECH.....	3
III. GENDER OF WORDS.....	4
IV. DECLENSION.....	6
V. FIRST DECLENSION.....	8
VI. SECOND DECLENSION.....	13
VII. THIRD DECLENSION.....	19
VIII. FOURTH DECLENSION.....	39
IX. FIFTH DECLENSION.....	42
X. OBSERVATIONS ON THE DECLENSIONS.—DEFECTIVE AND REDUNDANT NOUNS.....	43
XI. THE ADJECTIVE.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.....	46
XII. THE NUMERAL.....	53
XIII. THE PRONOUN.....	59
XIV. THE VERB.....	66
XV. THE AUXILIARY VERB, ESSE, TO BE.....	68
XVI. THE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.....	73
XVII. VIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.....	78
XVIII. REMARKS ON THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.....	101
XIX. IRREGULAR PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF THE FIRST CON- JUGATION.....	105
XX. IRREGULAR PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF THE SECOND CON- JUGATION.....	107
XXI. PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION ...	111
XXII. IRREGULAR PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF THE FOURTH CON- JUGATION.....	123
XXIII. PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF THE INCHOATIVE VERBS.....	125
XXIV. PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF DEPONENT VERBS.....	128
XXV. IRREGULAR VERBS.....	131
XXVI. DEFECTIVE VERBS.....	139
XXVII. IMPERSONAL VERBS.....	143
XXVIII. ADVERBS.....	145
XXIX. PREPOSITIONS.....	149
XXX. CONJUNCTIONS.....	153
XXXI. FORMATION OF WORDS.....	163

PART II.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER		PAGE
XXXII.	SENTENCES. — AGREEMENT OF THEIR PARTS.....	178
XXXIII.	THE USE OF CASES. — THE NOMINATIVE.....	179
XXXIV.	THE ACCUSATIVE.....	181
XXXV.	THE DATIVE.....	188
XXXVI.	THE GENITIVE.....	198
XXXVII.	THE ABLATIVE.....	201
XXXVIII.	PECULIARITIES OF SYNTAX. — IDIOMS OF ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.....	211
XXXIX.	USE OF THE TENSES... ..	217
XL.	USE OF THE INDICATIVE.....	233
XLI.	USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.....	235
XLII.	USE OF THE IMPERATIVE.....	238
XLIII.	USE OF THE INFINITIVE.....	239
XLIV.	USE OF THE PARTICIPLES.....	249
XLV.	USE OF THE GERUND.....	256
XLVI.	USE OF THE SUPINE.....	259
XLVII.	RULES AND DIRECTIONS FOR THE CONSTRUCTION AND ARRANGEMENT OF SENTENCES.....	261
XLVIII.	CONNECTION OF SENTENCES. — COMPOUND SENTENCES... ..	270
XLIX.	FIGURES AND TROPES.....	278

PART III.

PROSODY.

L.	LENGTH AND SHORTNESS OF SYLLABLES.....	275
LI.	FINAL SYLLABLES.....	280
LII.	VERSIFICATION.....	282
LIII.	SHORT VIEWS OF THE LYRIC METRES OF HORACE.....	285

APPENDIX.

LIV.	THE ROMAN CALENDAR.....	291
LV.	ROMAN WEIGHTS, MONEY, AND MEASURES.....	293
LVI.	THE MOST COMMON ABBREVIATIONS.....	294
	INDEX.....	296

PART I.

GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

CHAPTER I.

VOWELS AND CONSONANTS.

§ 1.

1. THE Latin alphabet consists of twenty-four letters:

a b c d e f g h i (j) k l m n o p q r
s t u v x y z.

A B C D E F G H I (J) K L M N O
P Q R S T U V X Y Z.

2. Of these letters six are vowels, namely: *a, e, i, o, u,* and *y*; the rest are consonants.

3. The vowels are pronounced either short or long; the short vowel is marked thus \sim , the long vowel $\bar{\text{—}}$; e. g., *contīnens, rosārum.*

a. The vowels are pronounced according to what is called the Continental method:

ă (short <i>a</i>),	like <i>a</i> in man;
ā (long <i>a</i>),	like <i>a</i> in far;
ĕ (short <i>e</i>),	like <i>e</i> in met;
ē (long <i>e</i>),	like <i>a</i> in mate;
ĭ (short <i>i</i>),	like <i>i</i> in pin;
ī (long <i>i</i>),	like <i>i</i> in machine;
ŏ (short <i>o</i>),	like <i>o</i> in log;
ō (long <i>o</i>),	like <i>o</i> in throne;
ŭ (short <i>u</i>),	like <i>u</i> in bull;
ū (long <i>u</i>),	like <i>u</i> in rule;
ÿ (short <i>y</i>),	like <i>i</i> in pin;
ÿ̄ (long <i>y</i>),	like <i>i</i> in machine.

Qu is always pronounced like *kw*; thus *quis, quae, quod*; *ngu* before vowels, like *ngro*; *lingua, anguis, languor*, are therefore dissyllables (*arguo*, on the contrary, is a trisyllable).

Su before vowels is pronounced like *sw* in *suadeo, suavis, suesco*, in all other words like *su*; e. g., *su-us, su-es, censu-it*.

b. The consonants are pronounced as in English: but *c* and *g*, when followed by *e, i, y, ae, or oe*, have the soft sound; in all other cases, the hard.

Ti (short) before vowels is pronounced like *ci*; as, *lectio, lek-cio*; *gratia, gra-cia*; *otium, o-cium*; only after *s* and *x*, and in Greek words, *t* always retains its own sound; as, *osti-um, mixti-o, Multi-ades*; also *niti-er, quati-er, toti-us* (*i* being long).

4. There are in Latin the following compound vowels or diphthongs:—*ae, au, oe*; e. g., *aetas, aurum, coelum*; *eu* is rare; still more so, *ei, oi, ui*. The diphthongs are always long.

Eu is diphthong only in *ceu, neu, seu, heu, cheu, heus, neuter, neutiquam*, and in foreign proper names; as, *Europa, Eurus*; *ei* only in *hei* (with the poets, also in *dein, deinde*; likewise, *oi* in *proin* and *proinde*), *us* only in *hui* (with poets, also in *cui, huic*).

Points of separation (*puncta diaereseos*); as, *aër, poëta*.

5. The consonants are divided into

a. Semivowels (*semivocales*), to which the liquids (*liquidæ*) and the sibilant *s* (*littera sibilans*) belong.

b. Mutes (*mutæ*), which include the rest. The mutes are classified with reference to the organ by which they are pronounced; they are, 1. labials (*labiales*), *b, p, f, v*; 2. gutturals (*gutturales*), also called palatals (*palatinae*), *c (k, g), g (h)*; 3. linguals (*linguales*), also called dentals (*dentales*), *d, t*. Another division: *p, c, t*, smooth (*tenues*); *b, g, d*, middle (*mediae*); *ph, ch, th*, aspirate (*aspiratae*). Double consonants are *x (ca, qe, qe, he)* and *z (ds, ts)*; *h* is only an aspiration, not properly a consonant.

6. Every word is written as it is spoken. Capital letters are used, 1, at the beginning of a sentence; 2, for proper names and the adjectives formed from them.

7. The syllables are divided at the end of a line according to pronunciation; e. g., *magi-stri, om-nis, ig-nis, duc-tus, rap-tus*. In compound words the division must be made so as to keep the component parts distinct; *ad-ire, post-ea, dis-tribu-ere, di-stare*.

CHAPTER II.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 2.

THERE are in Latin eight different kinds of words, or parts of speech, namely :

1. **Substantives** (*nomina substantiva*); e. g., *vir*, the man; *rosa*, the rose; *virtus*, virtue; *verbum*, the word. Substantives are divided into:

1. Common nouns (*nomina appellativa*); as, *arbor*, the tree.
2. Proper names (*nomina propria*); as, *Caesar*, Caesar.
3. Collective nouns (*nomina collectiva*); as, *multitudo*, the crowd.
4. Abstract nouns (*nomina abstracta*); as, *mens*, the mind.

The three first classes are called concrete nouns (*nomina concreta*) in contradistinction to abstract nouns.

2. **Adjectives** (*nomina adiectiva*); e. g., *bonus*, good; *pulcher*, beautiful; *amabilis*, amiable.

To the adjectives belong most of the numerals (*numeralia*); e. g., *multi*, many; *unus*, one; *duo*, two; *primus*, the first.

3. **Pronouns** (*pronomina*); e. g., *ego*, I; *tu*, thou; *qui*, who.

These three parts of speech are declined.

4. **Verbs** (*verba*); e. g., *sum*, I am; *amo*, I love; *monere*, to warn; *dormire*, to sleep.

Verbs are conjugated.

5. **Adverbs** (*adverbia*); e. g., *valde*, very; *saepe*, often; *ibi*, there.

To the adverbs belong several numerals; e. g., *semel*, once; *primum*, first.

6. **Prepositions** (*praepositiones*); e. g., *ad*, to; *ab*, from; *ante*, before.

7. **Conjunctions** (*coniunctiones*); e. g., *et*, and; *sed*, but; *si*, if; *quia*, because.

8. **Interjections** (*interiectiones*); e. g., *vae*, woe! *ah*, ah!

These four parts of speech are indeclinable (*indeclinabilia*). The declinable words are called by a common name (*nomina*), the indeclinable words (*particulæ*). All words are therefore *nomina*, or *verba*, or *particulæ*.

The Latin language has no article, consequently *vir* may be either *the man*, *a man*, or *man*.

CHAPTER III.

GENDER OF WORDS.

§ 3.

ALL nouns have one of three genders (*genera*).

1. The **masculine** gender (*genus masculinum*); e. g., *vir*, man; *rivus*, brook.

2. The **feminine** gender (*genus femininum*); e. g., *femina*, woman; *virtus*, virtue.

3. The **neuter** gender (*genus neutrum*); e. g., *lignum*, wood; *foedus*, alliance.

Some words can be used either in the masculine or feminine gender, they are therefore **common** (*generis communis*).

§ 4.

The gender of substantives is determined partly by their termination, and partly by their meaning.

RULES OF GENDER ACCORDING TO MEANING.

1. The men, the nations, rivers, winds,
And names of months are masculine.
2. The women, trees, the towns, and lands,
And islands, all are feminine.
3. The words which cannot be declined
Are of the neuter gender all.
4. *Commune* call what either man
Or woman also signifies.

1. Of the masculine gender are therefore *pater*, father; *nauta*, sailor; *Persa*, Persian; *Albis*, the Elbe; *Sequāna*, the Seine; *aquilo*, the northwind; *Aprilis*, April; etc.

Some rivers are feminine, namely: *Albula*, *Allia*, *Matrona*, *Lethæ*, and *Styx*. Also *copiæ*, troops, remains feminine. *Hadria* (poet.), the Adriatic Sea, is masculine.

2. Of the feminine gender, are *mater*, mother; *pirus*, pear-tree; *Corinthus*, Corinth; *Germania*, Germany; *Aegyptus*, Egypt; *Delus*, the island of Delos; etc.

Of cities and countries are

a. Always masculine, 1, the plurals in **i**; as, *Delphi*, *Vetii*; 2, the town *Canopus*, -i, and the countries, *Bosporus*, *Pontus*, *Hellespontus*, and *Isthmus*; 3, the towns, *Hippo*, *Narbo*, *Sulmo*, *Vesontio*, -onis, *Tun-es*, -etis.

b. Always neuter: 1, the plurals in **a** (gen. *orum*); as, *Susa*, *Susorum*, *Leuctra*, *Arbela*; 2, all those ending in **um**, **on**, **ur**, or **e**; as, *Tusculum*, *Ilion*, *Tibur*, *Fraeneste* (*Argos*, indeclinable and neuter, whereas *Argi-orum*, masc.).

3. Of the neuter gender are *nihil* (indecl.), nothing; *fas* (indecl.), right; *vale* (indecl.), the farewell; *valde* (the word *valde*), also *amo*, *ante*, etc.

4. Common are, *adolescens*, the youth, the maiden; *comes*, male or female companion; *dux*, male or female leader; *civis*, male or female citizen; *heres*, heir or heiress; *sacerdos*, priest, priestess; *infans*, male or female child.

These substantives of the common gender denote mostly living beings; as, *bos*, ox or cow.

5. Many names of men and animals have for the masculine and feminine gender a word of the same stem, but with different terminations (**substantiva mobilia**); as, *victor*, conqueror; *victrix*, female conqueror; *dominus*, lord; *domina*, lady; *puer*, boy; *puella*, girl; *magister*, master; *magistra*, mistress; *rex*, king; *regina*, queen; *asinus*, ass; *asina*, female ass; *gallus*, cock; *gallina*, hen. Rarely have the names entirely different roots; as, *servus*, slave; *ancilla*, female slave (seldom *serva*); *taurus*, steer; *vacca*, cow; *aries*, ram; *ovis*, sheep.

6. Many names of animals always keep the same gender (**nomina opicoena**); *corvus*, raven, only masc.; *cornix*, crow, only fem.; *passer*, sparrow, only masc.; *ciconia*, stork, only fem. We find, however, *corvus femina*, the female raven; *cornix mas* or *mascula*, the male crow.

§ 5.

The adjectives also have genders, which we generally recognize by the ending; *e. g.*, *bonus*, good, is masculine; *bona*, good, is feminine; *bonum*, good, is neuter. Thus, *malus*, *mala*, *malum*, bad; *magnus*, *magna*, *magnum*, great; *parvus*, *parva*, *parvum*, small; *carus*, *cara*, *carum*, dear.

§ 6.

The adjective takes, in Latin, always the gender of the substantive to which it belongs, 1, as **attribute**; *bonus pater*, the good father; 2, as **predicate**; *pater est bonus*, the father is good. *Bona mater*, the good mother; *mater est bona*, the mother is good. *Bonum exemplum*, the good example; *exemplum est bonum*, the example is good. *Comes bonus*, the good companion; *comes bona*, the good companion (female). *Dux bonus*, the good leader; *dux bona*, the good leader (female).

CHAPTER IV.

DECLENSION.

§ 7.

IN the declension or inflection of nouns, the Latin language has :

1. The **number** (*numerus*). The number is either **singular** (*singularis*) or **plural** (*pluralis*); *e. g.*, the father, the fathers.

2. The **case** (*casus*). In Latin there are six cases, namely, the **NOMINATIVE**, which answers the question, **Who? What?** 2, the **GENITIVE**, which answers the question, **Whose? Of whom? Of what?** 3, the **DATIVE**, which answers the question, **To whom? For whom?** 4, the **ACOUSATIVE**, which answers the question, **Whom? What?** 5, the **VOCATIVE**, in exclamations; 6, the **ABLATIVE**, in answer to the question, **by, from, in, with, whom, or what?**

The nominative and vocative are called *casus recti*; the other, *casus obliqui*.

§ 8.

In Latin there are five declensions. The declensions are distinguished by the termination of the genitive singular; the first declension has the genitive singular in *ae*, the second in *i*, the third in *is*, the fourth in *us*, the fifth in *ei*.

§ 9.

The terminations of the five Latin declensions are found in the following tables of case-endings:

SINGULAR.

FIRST DECL.	SECOND DECL.	THIRD DECL.	FOURTH DECL.	FIFTH DECL.
	Neut.		Neut.	
<i>Nom.</i> <i>ă</i>	ŭs, ěr; ŭm	_____	ŭs; ū	ĕs
<i>Gen.</i> <i>ae</i>	ī	īs	ŭs	ĕī
<i>Dat.</i> <i>ae</i>	ō	ī	ŭī;	ĕī
<i>Acc.</i> <i>ăm</i>	ŭm	ĕm, ĩm; <i>like Nom.</i>	ŭm; ū	ĕm
<i>Voc.</i> <i>ă</i>	ĕ, ěr; ŭm	<i>like Nom.</i>	ŭs; ū	ĕs
<i>Abl.</i> <i>ă</i>	ō	ĕ, ī	ū	ĕ

PLURAL.

FIRST DECL.	SECOND DECL.	THIRD DECL.	FOURTH DECL.	FIFTH DECL.
	Neut.		Neut.	
<i>Nom.</i> <i>ae</i>	ī; <i>ă</i>	ĕs;	ŭs; ŭă	ĕs
<i>Gen.</i> <i>ărŭm</i>	ōrum	ŭm or ĩŭm	ŭŭm	ĕrŭm
<i>Dat.</i> <i>īs</i>	īs	ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs)	ĕbŭs
<i>Acc.</i> <i>ăs</i>	ōs; <i>ă</i>	ĕs;	ŭs; ŭă	ĕs
<i>Voc.</i> <i>ae</i>	ī; <i>ă</i>	ĕs;	ŭs; ŭă	ĕs
<i>Abl.</i> <i>īs</i>	īs	ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs)	ĕbŭs

2. Several cases, as may be seen from the table, have some times the same form.

a. The Vocative is everywhere like the Nominative, except in the second declension, where *ĕ* takes the place of *us*.

b. The neuter nouns of all declensions have a common form for the Nom., Acc., and Voc., sing., and another common form for the Nom., Acc., and Voc., plur.

c. The Dat. and Abl., plur., in all declensions, have a common form.

d. In the second decl., Dat. and Abl. sing., are the same.

e. In the third, fourth, and fifth, the Nom. and Acc. plur. are the same.

f. In the first, the Gen. and Dat. sing. and Nom. plur. have the same form.

g. In the fifth also, Gen. and Dat. sing. are alike.

h. In the fifth, Nom. sing. and Nom. plur. are alike.

CHAPTER V.

FIRST DECLENSION.

§ 10.

THE nominative case of all Latin nouns of the first declension ends in **a**. This vowel is changed through the different cases; the rest of the word, called the **root**, remains unchanged.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	<i>rōs-ă</i> , the rose.	<i>scrībă</i> , the scribe.
Gen.	<i>ros-ae</i> , of the rose.	<i>scribae</i> , of the scribe.
Dat.	<i>ros-ae</i> , to or for the rose.	<i>scribae</i> , to or for the scribe.
Acc.	<i>ros-ăm</i> , the rose.	<i>scrībăm</i> , the scribe.
Voc.	<i>ros-ă</i> , O rose!	<i>scrībă</i> , O scribe!
Abl.	<i>ros-ă</i> , by, from, with the rose.	<i>scrībă</i> , by, from, with the scribe.

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>ros-ae</i> , the roses.	<i>scribae</i> , the scribes.
Gen.	<i>ros-ārum</i> , of the roses.	<i>scribarum</i> , of the scribes.
Dat.	<i>ros-īs</i> , to or for the roses.	<i>scribis</i> , to or for the scribes.
Acc.	<i>ros-ās</i> , the roses.	<i>scribas</i> , the scribes.
Voc.	<i>ros-ae</i> , O roses!	<i>scribae</i> , O scribes!
Abl.	<i>ros-īs</i> , by, from, with the roses.	<i>scribis</i> , by, from, with the scribes.

§ 11.

All adjectives in **a** (the feminine of those in **us** and **er**, § 18) follow the first declension.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	<i>forma</i>	<i>pulchra</i> ,	the beautiful form.
Gen.	<i>formae</i>	<i>pulchrae</i> ,	of the beautiful form.
Dat.	<i>formae</i>	<i>pulchrae</i> ,	to the beautiful form.
Acc.	<i>formam</i>	<i>pulchram</i> ,	the beautiful form.
Voc.	<i>forma</i>	<i>pulchra</i> ,	O beautiful form!
Abl.	<i>forma</i>	<i>pulchra</i> ,	from the beautiful form.

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>formae</i>	<i>pulchrae</i> ,	the beautiful forms.
Gen.	<i>formarum</i>	<i>pulchrarum</i> ,	of the beautiful forms.
Dat.	<i>formis</i>	<i>pulchris</i> ,	to the beautiful forms.
Acc.	<i>formas</i>	<i>pulchras</i> ,	the beautiful forms.
Voc.	<i>formae</i>	<i>pulchrae</i> ,	O beautiful forms!
Abl.	<i>formis</i>	<i>pulchris</i> ,	by, etc., the beautiful forms.

§ 12.

All words in **a**, of the first declension, are of the feminine gender (*generis feminini*). Only those which denote men, nations, or rivers remain masculine (§ 4).

§ 13.

WORDS FOR EXERCISE.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|------------------|
| 1. <i>Alauda</i> , | the lark ; | <i>luna</i> , | the moon ; |
| <i>ancilla</i> , | the servant-girl ; | <i>rana</i> , | the frog ; |
| <i>aura</i> , | the air ; | <i>sagitta</i> , | the arrow ; |
| <i>bacca</i> , | the berry ; | <i>silva</i> , | the forest ; |
| <i>catēna</i> , | the chain ; | <i>stella</i> , | the star ; |
| <i>causa</i> , | the cause ; | <i>umbra</i> , | the shade ; |
| <i>columba</i> , | the dove ; | <i>via</i> , | the way. |
| <i>cura</i> , | the care ; | 3. <i>aqua</i> , | the water ; |
| <i>faba</i> , | the bean ; | <i>bestia</i> , | the beast ; |
| <i>fabula</i> , | the fable ; | <i>herba</i> , | the herb ; |
| <i>ianua</i> , | the door ; | <i>porta</i> , | the door ; |
| <i>lana</i> , | the wool ; | <i>puella</i> , | the girl ; |
| <i>luscinia</i> , | the nightingale ; | <i>ripa</i> , | the bank ; |
| <i>penna</i> , | the feather ; | <i>rota</i> , | the wheel ; |
| <i>poena</i> , | the punishment ; | <i>vita</i> , | the life. |
| <i>praeda</i> , | the prey ; | 4. <i>agricola</i> , | the farmer ; |
| <i>schola</i> , | the school ; | <i>advēna</i> , | the stranger ; |
| <i>terra</i> , | the earth ; | <i>aurīga</i> , | the driver ; |
| <i>unda</i> , | the wave ; | <i>convīva</i> , | the guest ; |
| <i>uva</i> , | the grape ; | <i>homicīda</i> , | the murderer ; |
| <i>virga</i> , | the rod. | <i>incōla</i> , | the inhabitant ; |
| 2. <i>ala</i> , | the wing ; | <i>nauta</i> , | the sailor ; |
| <i>aquīla</i> , | the eagle ; | <i>perfūga</i> , | the deserter ; |
| <i>ara</i> , | the altar ; | <i>pirāta</i> , | the pirate ; |
| <i>barba</i> , | the beard ; | <i>poēta</i> , | the poet ; |
| <i>fama</i> , | the fame ; | <i>scurra</i> , | the jester ; |
| <i>fossa</i> , | the ditch ; | <i>Persa</i> , | the Persian ; |
| <i>gloria</i> , | the glory ; | <i>Scytha</i> , | the Scythian ; |
| <i>ira</i> , | the wrath ; | <i>Mōsa</i> , | the Meuse. |

§ 14.

- Anīma divīna*, the divine soul ;
arānēa parva, the little spider ;
catēna firma, the strong chain ;

<i>caterva magna,</i>	the large crowd;
<i>cēna luuta,</i>	the exquisite banquet;
<i>formīca sedūla,</i>	the diligent ant;
<i>regīna bona,</i>	the good queen;
<i>stātua aurēa,</i>	the golden statue;
<i>tābūla nigra,</i>	the black-board;
<i>aula regia,</i>	the royal court;
<i>nēbūla densa,</i>	the thick mist;
<i>superbia māla,</i>	the wicked pride;
<i>fortūna dūbia,</i>	the fickle fortune;
<i>pecunia rotunda,</i>	the round money;
<i>villa ampla,</i>	the spacious country-house.

§ 15.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Two nouns of the first declension form the dat. and abl. plur. in *abus* instead of *is*; namely, *dea*, goddess, and *filia*, daughter; therefore, *deabus*, *filibus*. They were thus distinguished from the same cases of *deus* and *filius*, *deis* and *filiis*. The two numeral adjectives, *duae*, two; *ambae*, both; have, in the dat. and abl., only *duabus*, *ambabus* (§ 56, 2).

2. *Amphora*, pitcher, and *drachma*, a drachm, have the gen. plur. sometimes thus, *amphorum* and *drachmum*, instead of *amphorarum*, *drachmarum* (cf. § 25, 2). Something similar occurs also in foreign names of nations, and in the compounds of *cōla* and *gēna*; as, *Lapithum*, *coelicolum*, *terrigenum*, instead of *Lapitharum*, etc.

3. *Famīlia*, family, has the gen. sing. *famīlias*, instead of *famīliae*, but only in connection with *pater*, *mater*, *filius*, *filia*; e. g., *pater famīlias*, the father of the family.

4. Some feminine adjectives, *una*, *sola*, etc., have in the genitive, not *ae*, but *ius*, dative *i* (cf. § 25).

5. Poets sometimes use the antiquated genitive *ai* instead of *ae*; as, *mulai*, *pictai*, for *aulae*, *pictae*.

Some Greek words used in Latin are declined after the first declension. They have in the nominative *e*, *as*, or *es*. In the plural they are declined like the Latin words; in the singular, as follows:

Nom.	<i>epitom-ē</i> , the extract.	<i>Aenēas</i> , Aeneas.
Gen.	<i>epitom-ēs</i> , of the extract.	<i>Aenēae</i> , c. Aeneas.
Dat.	<i>epitom-ae</i> , to the extract.	<i>Aenēae</i> , to Aeneas.
Acc.	<i>epitom-ēm</i> , the extract.	<i>Aenēam</i> (an) Aeneas.
Voc.	<i>epitom-ē</i> , O extract!	<i>Aenēā</i> , O Aeneas!
Abl.	<i>epitom-ē</i> , by the extract	<i>Aenēā</i> , from Aeneas.

Nom. *anagnostēs*, the reader.
Gen. *anagnostae*, of the reader.
Dat. *anagnostae*, to the reader.
Acc. *anagnostēn* (*ām*) the reader.
Voc. *anagnoste* (*ā*) O reader!
Abl. *anagnostā* (*ē*) from the reader.

In the plural *epitomae*, *epitomarum*, &c.; *anagnostae*, *anagnostarum*, &c. Decline in the same manner, *aloe*, *aloe*; *grammaticae*, *grammar*; *boreas*, *Northwind*; *tiāras*, *turban*; *pyrites*, *flint*; *sophistes*, *sophist*. Many of these words, however, have in the nominative sing. already the Latin ending *a* for *e* or *es*, as *grammaticos* (and *grammaticae*), *sophista* (and *sophistes*); then they follow the Latin declension throughout.

1. RULES OF GENDER ACCORDING TO TERMINATION.

Words of the first declension ending in *a* or *e* are feminine; those ending in *as* or *es* are masculine. (cf. § 12.)

CHAPTER VI.

SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 16.

Nouns of the second declension end in the nom. sing. in *us*, *er* (*ir*, *ur*) or *um*. All the words in *um* are neuter.

The terminations *us* and *um* are the case-endings of the nominative; the ending *er* (*ir*, *ur*) belongs to the root of the word.

SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>riv-ūs</i> , the brook.	<i>tect-um</i> , the roof.
Gen. <i>riv-i</i> , of the brook.	<i>tect-i</i> , of the roof.
Dat. <i>riv-ō</i> , to the brook.	<i>tect-o</i> , to the roof.
Acc. <i>riv-ūm</i> , the brook.	<i>tect-um</i> , the roof.
Voc. <i>riv-ē</i> , O brook!	<i>tect-um</i> , O roof!
Abl. <i>riv-ō</i> , from the brook.	<i>tect-o</i> , from the roof.

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>riv-ī</i> , the brooks.	<i>tect-ā</i> , the roofs.
Gen.	<i>riv-ōrum</i> , of the brooks.	<i>tect-orum</i> , of the roofs.
Dat.	<i>riv-īs</i> , to the brooks.	<i>tect-īs</i> , to the roofs.
Acc.	<i>riv-ōs</i> , the brooks.	<i>tect-ā</i> , the roofs.
Voc.	<i>riv-ī</i> , O brooks !	<i>tect-ā</i> , O roofs !
Abl.	<i>riv-īs</i> , from the brooks.	<i>tect-īs</i> , from the roofs.

§ 17.

The words in **er** (*ir*, *ur*) have no case-ending in the nom. and voc. ; for the rest, they are declined like those in *us*. Be it remarked, however, 1, that the words in *er* (*ir*, *ur*) have the nominative and vocative alike; 2, that the case-ending is appended to the nominative, which either undergoes no change at all, or only drops the *e* before *r*.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	<i>puēr</i> , the boy.	<i>āger</i> , the field.
Gen.	<i>puēr-ī</i> , of the boy	<i>agr-ī</i> , of the field.
Dat.	<i>puer-o</i> , to the boy.	<i>agr-o</i> , to the field.
Acc.	<i>puer-um</i> , the boy.	<i>agr-um</i> , the field.
Voc.	<i>puer</i> , O boy !	<i>ager</i> , O field !
Abl.	<i>puer-o</i> , with, from the boy.	<i>agr-o</i> , from the field.

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>puer-ī</i> , the boys.	<i>agr-ī</i> , the fields.
Gen.	<i>puer-orum</i> , of the boys.	<i>agr-orum</i> , of the fields
Dat.	<i>puer-īs</i> , to the boys.	<i>agr-īs</i> , to the fields.
Acc.	<i>puer-os</i> , the boys.	<i>agr-os</i> , the fields.
Voc.	<i>puer-ī</i> , O boys !	<i>agr-ī</i> , O fields !
Abl.	<i>puer-īs</i> , from the boys.	<i>agr-īs</i> , from the fields.

3. There is but one noun in *ir*, namely, *vir*, the man, gen. *virī*; in *ur* only an adjective, namely, *satur* (*satūrā*) *satūrum*, sated. Both are declined like *puer*.

§ 18.

Nearly all adjectives in **us**, **er** and **um** are of the second declension; those in *us* follow *rivus*; those in *er*, *puer* or *ager*; those in *um*, *tectum*.

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	<i>bonus,</i>	<i>bona,</i>	<i>bonum,</i> good ;	<i>niger,</i>	<i>nigra,</i>	<i>nigrum,</i> black ;
G.	<i>boni,</i>	<i>bonae,</i>	<i>boni,</i>	<i>nigri,</i>	<i>nigrae,</i>	<i>nigri,</i>
D.	<i>bono,</i>	<i>bonae,</i>	<i>bono,</i>	<i>nigro,</i>	<i>nigrae,</i>	<i>nigro,</i>
A.	<i>bonum,</i>	<i>bonam,</i>	<i>bonum,</i>	<i>nigrum,</i>	<i>nigram,</i>	<i>nigrum,</i>
V.	<i>bone,</i>	<i>bona,</i>	<i>bonum,</i>	<i>niger,</i>	<i>nigra,</i>	<i>nigrum,</i>
A.	<i>bono,</i>	<i>bona,</i>	<i>bono.</i>	<i>nigro,</i>	<i>nigra,</i>	<i>nigro.</i>

PLURAL.

N.	<i>boni,</i>	<i>bonae,</i>	<i>bona,</i>	<i>nigri,</i>	<i>nigrae,</i>	<i>nigra,</i>
G.	<i>bonorum,</i>	<i>bonarum,</i>	<i>bonorum,</i>	<i>nigrorum,</i>	<i>nigrarum,</i>	<i>nigrorum,</i>
D.	<i>bonis,</i>	<i>bonis,</i>	<i>bonis,</i>	<i>nigris,</i>	<i>nigris,</i>	<i>nigris,</i>
A.	<i>bonos,</i>	<i>bonas,</i>	<i>bona,</i>	<i>nigros,</i>	<i>nigras,</i>	<i>nigra,</i>
V.	<i>boni,</i>	<i>bonae,</i>	<i>bona,</i>	<i>nigri,</i>	<i>nigrae,</i>	<i>nigra.</i>
A.	<i>bonis,</i>	<i>bonis,</i>	<i>bonis.</i>	<i>nigris,</i>	<i>nigris,</i>	<i>nigris.</i>

§ 19.

(1.) Five nouns, *puer*, *socer*, *vesper*, *gener*, *adulter* ; (2), six adjectives, *asper*, *miser*, *tener*, *lacer*, *prosper*, *liber* ; (3), the compounds of *fer* and *ger* retain the *e* in the genitive. The rare adjective *gibber*, hump-backed, has *gibberi* ; *dexter* has *dextri* and *dexteri*, right ; *sinister*, only *sinistri*, left.

§ 20.

The words in *us* are all declined like *rivus* ; remark however : (1), the vocative singular sometimes drops the ending *e*, viz. : in the words *filius*, son, *genius*, tutelary deity, and in all proper names in *ius* (or *jus*), thus *fili*, O son ! (for *fili-e*) ; *geni*, O tutelary deity ; *Tulli*, O Tullius ! *Virgili*, O Virgil ! *Pompei*, O Pompey ! *Cai*, O Caius ! When these proper names are adjectives, they have *e* ; e. g., *Cynthiae*, O Cynthian.

The other common names in *ius*, as *gladius*, sword, *fluvius*, river, &c., have no vocative. *Darius* has *Darie*. Sometimes the nominative is used for the vocative ; thus, by Livy : *tu*, *populus Albanus*, for *popule Albana*.

2. The voc. sing. of *meus*, my, is *mi*, of *Deus*, God, *Deus*; e. g., *mi Deus*, my God; the voc. fem. of *meus* is *mea*, neuter, *meum*.

3. The word *Deus* is declined in the plural nom. *dii*, *dī* (*dei*); gen. *deorum*; dat. *dīs*, *dis* (*deis*); acc. *deos*; voc. *dii*, *dī*; abl. *dīs*, *dis* (also *deis*).

4. The words in *ius* and *ium* regularly form their genitive in *ii*; nouns, however, have it often in *i*, thus: *filii* and *filii*, *ingenii* and *ingenii*.

§ 21.

Us, er, ir, ur are masculine; **um** is neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.

The following are feminine; *alvus*, belly; *colus*, distaff; *humus*, ground; *vannus*, van; the three following which have no plural, are neuter: *virus*, poison; *vulgus*, the rabble; *pelagus*, the sea.

2. All names in **us**, of towns, islands, and trees, are, of course, feminine (§ 4).

Feminine are also *arctus*, *atomus*, *methōdus*, *periōdus*, *dialectus*, *diamētrōs*, *perimētrōs*, *paragrāphus*, and a few others. They are properly Greek, and retain the feminine gender which they have in Greek.

§ 22.

WORDS FOR EXERCISE.

1. <i>Avus</i> ,	grandfather;	3. <i>agnus</i> ,	lamb;
<i>corvus</i> ,	raven;	<i>annus</i> ,	year;
<i>hircus</i> ,	he-goat;	<i>campus</i> ,	field;
<i>hortus</i> ,	garden;	<i>ēquus</i> ,	horse;
<i>lūpus</i> ,	wolf;	<i>lūdus</i> ,	game;
<i>ursus</i> ,	bear;	<i>ocūlus</i> ,	eye;
<i>vicīnus</i> ,	neighbor;	<i>pōpūlus</i> ,	people.
<i>ventus</i> ,	wind.	4. <i>cērāsus</i> ,	cherry-tree;
2. <i>cibus</i> ,	food;	<i>mālus</i> ,	apple-tree;
<i>morbus</i> ,	sickness;	<i>prūnus</i> ,	plum-tree;
<i>mundus</i> ,	world;	<i>pōmus</i> ,	fruit-tree;
<i>nāsus</i> ,	nose.	<i>fāgus</i> ,	beech-tree;

<i>fraxīnus</i> ,	ash-tree ;	<i>exemplum</i> ,	example
<i>pōpūlus</i> ,	poplar ;	<i>ferrum</i> ,	iron ;
<i>ulmus</i> ,	elm-tree.	<i>lignum</i> ,	wood ;
5. <i>arbiter</i> ,	umpire ;	<i>ōvum</i> ,	egg ;
<i>fāber</i> ,	artisan ;	<i>verbum</i> ,	word.
<i>magister</i> ,	master ;	8. <i>arātrum</i> ,	plough ;
<i>cōlūber</i> ,	adder ;	<i>vallum</i> ,	rampart ;
<i>līber</i> ,	book.	<i>bellum</i> ,	war ;
6. <i>adulter</i> ,	adulterer ;	<i>coelum</i> ,	heaven ;
<i>armiger</i> ,	armor-bearer ;	<i>ōdium</i> ,	hatred ;
<i>gēner</i> ,	son-in-law ;	<i>prētium</i> ,	price.
<i>sōcer</i> ,	father-in-law ;	9. <i>auxīlium</i> ,	help ;
<i>vesper</i> ,	evening.	<i>dēbitum</i> ,	debt ;
7. <i>argentum</i> ,	silver ;	<i>factum</i> ,	fact ;
<i>astrum</i> ,	star ;	<i>gaudium</i> ,	joy ;
<i>aurum</i> ,	gold ;	<i>mendacium</i> ,	lie ;
<i>bōnum</i> ,	good ;	<i>scamnum</i> ,	bench.

§ 23.

MASC. FEM. NEUT.

1. *Albus, alba, album*, white ;
altus, alta, altum, high ;
aptus, apta, aptum, fit ;
caecus, caeca, caecum, blind ;
clarus, clara, clarum, bright ;
durus, dura, durum, hard ;
fidus, fida, fidum, trusty ;
iustus, iusta, iustum, just ;
laetus, laeta, laetum, joyful ;
longus, longa, longum, long ;
multus, multa, multum,
much ;
pius, pia, pium, pious ;
probus, proba, probum, up-
right ;
stultus, stulta, stultum, fool-
ish ;

MASC. FEM. NEUT.

- tardus, tarda, tardum*, slow ;
verus, vera, verum, true.
2. *aeger, aegra, aegrum*, sick ;
integer, integra, integrum,
whole ;
niger, nigra, nigrum, black ;
piger, pigra, pigrum, lazy ;
vafēr, vafra, vafrum, crafty.
3. *asper, aspera, asperum*, rough ;
lacer, lacera, lacerum, torn ;
miser, misera, miserum,
wretched ;
prosper, prospera, prosperum,
prosperous ;
tener, tenera, tenerum, soft ;
frugifer, frugifera, frugiferum,
fruit-bearing.

4. *meus, mea, meum, mine* ; *noster, nostra, nostrum, our* ;
tuus, tua, tuum, thine ; *vester, vestra, vestrum, your* ;
suus, sua, suum, his ; *suus, sua, suum, their*.

§ 24.

Combination of substantives and adjectives of the first and second declensions :

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <i>Amīcus benignus,</i> | the kind friend ; |
| <i>angūlus rectus,</i> | the right angle ; |
| <i>dīgītus parvus,</i> | the little finger ; |
| <i>iōcus grātus,</i> | the pleasant joke ; |
| <i>āper fērus,</i> | the wild boar ; |
| <i>vīr probus,</i> | the upright man ; |
| <i>āsīnus piger,</i> | the lazy ass ; |
| <i>servus vāfer,</i> | the crafty slave ; |
| <i>dōlus miser,</i> | the wretched trick ; |
| <i>capillus tener,</i> | the soft hair. |
| 2. <i>damnum mōdīcum,</i> | a slight loss ; |
| <i>horrēum plēnum,</i> | a full granary ; |
| <i>furtum impiūm,</i> | a godless theft ; |
| <i>templum sacrum,</i> | the sacred temple ; |
| <i>vinum rubrum,</i> | red wine ; |
| <i>vītiūm taetrum,</i> | an ugly vice ; |
| <i>praedium frugifērum,</i> | the fruit-bearing farm ; |
| <i>tēlum mortiferum,</i> | a deadly weapon ; |
| <i>verbum liberum,</i> | a free word. |
| 3. <i>alvus plena,</i> | the full belly ; |
| <i>malus onusta,</i> | the laden apple-tree ; |
| <i>popūlus alta,</i> | the high poplar ; |
| <i>pirus amoena,</i> | the agreeable pear-tree ; |
| <i>poēta clarus,</i> | the famous poet ; |
| <i>scriba doctus,</i> | the learned scribe ; |
| <i>agricōla pius,</i> | the pious farmer ; |
| <i>nauta laetus,</i> | the joyful sailor ; |
| <i>aurīga asper,</i> | the rough driver ; |
| <i>convīva aeger,</i> | the sick guest ; |
| <i>Persa piger,</i> | the lazy Persian ; |
| <i>Scythia liber,</i> | the free Scythian. |

§ 25.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Nine adjectives of the second declension have the genitive sing., not in *i*, but in *ius*; the dative, not in *o*, but in *i*, for the three genders. They form the plural regularly. They are:

*Unus, solus, totus, ullus,
uter, alter, neuter, nullus,
alius.*

Decline, therefore, as follows.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
Nom.	<i>totus,</i>	<i>tota,</i>	<i>totum,</i>	whole.
Gen.	<i>tot-ius,</i>	<i>tot-ius,</i>	<i>tot-ius,</i>	
Dat.	<i>tot-i,</i>	<i>tot-i,</i>	<i>tot-i,</i>	
Acc.	<i>totum,</i>	<i>totam,</i>	<i>totum,</i>	
Abl.	<i>totō,</i>	<i>totā,</i>	<i>toto,</i>	

solus, a, um, alone.

neuter, tra, trum, none (of two);

unus, one.

neither.

ullus, any one.

alter, tera, terum, the other (of

nullus, none (of all).

two); a second.

uter, tra, trum, which (of two).

alius, alia, aliud, another (irregular neuter).

They are declined like *totus*; thus: gen. *sotius*, dat. *sotī*, &c.; *alter* retains *e* in the genitive, *alterius*, *altēri*, &c.; *uter* and *neuter* drop it, *utrūs*, *neutrūs*. Note that *alius* makes in the genitive *aliūs* (not *aliūs*), and the dat. *aliī*.

2. In the genitive plur., *um* for *orum* is sometimes found; e. g., *liberum* for *liberorum*, of the children; *deum* for *deorum*. Thus they always said *triumvirum* for *triumvirorum*, of the triumvirs; *praefectus fabrum* for *fabrorum*. Nouns which denote money, measure, weight, often form the gen. plur. in *um* instead of *orum*, especially *nummus*, *sestertius*, *denarius*, *modius*, and *talentum*, in connection with numerals; e. g., *duo millia nummum* for *nummorum*, two thousand sesterces; *trium modium*, of three bushels; also *duo millia amphōrum* for *amphorarum*; *trium drachmum* for *drachmarum*; § 15., 2. In Poetry, *Argivum*, *Danaum*, *Pelasgum*, instead of *Argivorum*, etc.

3. Greek proper names in *eus* have the gen. in *ēi*, dat. *ēo*, acc. *ēum*, voc. *ēu*, abl. *ēo*; e. g., *Orpheus* (dissyl.), *Orphēi* (trissyl.), *Orphēo*, *Orphēum*, *Orphēu*, *Orphēo*. *Orphēa* sometimes used for *Orphēum*.

4. In other Greek words of the second decl., *os* is sometimes used for *us*, and *on* for *um* (in the nom. and acc.) as *arctos* and *arctōn*, *Delos* and *Delon* for *arctus*, *arctum*, *Delus*, *Delum*. Only *Ilios*, *i*, fem., but *Iliōn* and *Iliūm*, *i*, neut.

5. In titles of books, the gen. plur. *ōn*, for *ōrum*, of words taken from the Greek, is used; as, *Georgicon libri*, for *Georgicorum libri*.

CHAPTER VII

THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 26.

1. The words of the third declension end in the nominative either with a **vowel**, or **l, n, r, s, x**, (besides one in **c**, *lac*; one in **t**, *caput*).

2. The case-endings (§ 9) are added to the root. The root is found by cutting off the case-ending **is** from the genitive.

3. Words which have the same number of syllables in the nom. and gen. sing. are called **parisyllabic**; e. g., *nubes*, gen. *nubis*.

4. Words which increase in gen. sing. are called **inparisyllabic**; e. g., *dolor*, gen. *dolōris*.

I. MASCULINE NOUNS.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	<i>dolor</i> , the pain.	<i>mōs</i> , the custom.
Gen.	<i>dolōr-is</i> , of the pain.	<i>mōr-is</i> , of the custom.
Dat.	<i>dolōr-i</i> , to the pain.	<i>mōr-i</i> , to the custom.
Acc.	<i>dolōr-ēm</i> , the pain.	<i>mōr-em</i> , the custom.
Voc.	<i>dolōr</i> , O pain!	<i>mōs</i> , O custom!
Abl.	<i>dolōr-ē</i> , from the pain.	<i>mōr-e</i> , from the custom.

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>dolōr-ēs</i> , the pains.	<i>mōr-ēs</i> , the customs.
Gen.	<i>dolōr-ūm</i> , of the pains.	<i>mor-um</i> , of the customs.
Dat.	<i>dolōr-ībūs</i> , to the pains.	<i>mor-ībūs</i> , to the customs.
Acc.	<i>dolōr-ēs</i> , the pains.	<i>mor-ēs</i> , the customs.
Voc.	<i>dolōr-ēs</i> , O pains!	<i>mor-ēs</i> , O customs!
Abl.	<i>dolōr-ībūs</i> , from the pains.	<i>mor-ībūs</i> , from the customs.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	<i>anser</i> , the goose.	<i>pāter</i> , the father.
Gen.	<i>ansēr-is</i> , of the goose.	<i>patr-is</i> , of the father.
Dat.	<i>ansēr-i</i> , to the goose.	<i>patr-ī</i> , to the father.
Acc.	<i>ansēr-em</i> , the goose.	<i>patr-em</i> , the father.
Voc.	<i>anser</i> , O goose!	<i>pater</i> , O father!
Abl.	<i>ansēr-e</i> , from the goose.	<i>patr-e</i> , from the father.

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>ansēr-es</i> , the geese.	<i>patr-es</i> , the fathers.
Gen.	<i>ansēr-um</i> , of the geese.	<i>patr-um</i> , of the fathers.
Dat.	<i>ansēr-ībūs</i> , to the geese.	<i>patr-ībūs</i> , to the fathers.
Acc.	<i>ansēr-es</i> , the geese.	<i>patr-es</i> , the fathers.
Voc.	<i>ansēr-es</i> , O geese!	<i>patr-es</i> , O fathers!
Abl.	<i>anser-ībūs</i> , from the geese.	<i>patr-ībūs</i> , from the fathers.

II. FEMININE NOUNS.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	<i>virtus</i> , virtue.	<i>cupīditās</i> , the desire.
Gen.	<i>virtūt-is</i> , of virtue.	<i>cupīditāt-is</i> , of the desire.
Dat.	<i>virtūt-i</i> , to virtue.	<i>cupīditāt-i</i> , to the desire.
Acc.	<i>virtūt-em</i> , virtue.	<i>cupīditāt-em</i> , the desire.
Voc.	<i>virtus</i> , O virtue!	<i>cupīditās</i> , O desire!
Abl.	<i>virtūt-e</i> , from virtue.	<i>cupīditāt-e</i> , from the desire.

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>virtut-es</i> , virtues.	<i>cupīditat-es</i> , the desires.
Gen.	<i>virtut-um</i> , of virtues.	<i>cupīditat-um</i> , of the desires.
Dat.	<i>virtut-ībūs</i> , to virtues.	<i>cupīditat-ībūs</i> , to the desires.
Acc.	<i>virtut-es</i> , virtues.	<i>cupīditat-es</i> , the desires.
Voc.	<i>virtut-es</i> , O virtues!	<i>cupīditat-es</i> , O desires!
Abl.	<i>virtut-ībūs</i> , from virtues.	<i>cupīditat-ībūs</i> , from the desires.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	<i>pars</i> , the part.	<i>nūbes</i> , the cloud.
Gen.	<i>part-is</i> , of the part.	<i>nub-is</i> , of the cloud.
Dat.	<i>part-i</i> , to the part.	<i>nub-i</i> , to the cloud.
Acc.	<i>part-em</i> , the part.	<i>nub-em</i> , the cloud.
Voc.	<i>pars</i> , O part!	<i>nubes</i> , O cloud!
Abl.	<i>part-e</i> , from the part.	<i>nub-e</i> , from the cloud.

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>part-es</i> , the parts.	<i>nub-es</i> , the clouds.
Gen.	<i>part-ium</i> , of the parts.	<i>nub-ium</i> , of the clouds.
Dat.	<i>part-ibus</i> , to the part,	<i>nub-ibus</i> , to the clouds.
Acc.	<i>part-es</i> , the parts.	<i>nub-es</i> , the clouds.
Voc.	<i>part-es</i> , O parts!	<i>nub-es</i> , O clouds.
Abl.	<i>part-ibus</i> , from the parts.	<i>nub-ibus</i> , from the clouds.

III. NEUTER NOUNS.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	<i>ānimal</i> , the animal.	<i>māre</i> , the sea.
Gen.	<i>animāl-is</i> , of the animal.	<i>mar-is</i> , of the sea.
Dat.	<i>animāl-i</i> , to the animal.	<i>mar-i</i> , to the sea.
Acc.	<i>animāl</i> , the animal.	<i>mare</i> , the sea.
Voc.	<i>animāl</i> , O animal!	<i>mare</i> , O sea!
Abl.	<i>animāl-i</i> , from the ani- mal.	<i>mar-i</i> , from the sea.

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>animāl-ia</i> , the animals.	<i>mar-ia</i> , the seas.
Gen.	<i>animāl-ium</i> , of the ani- mals.	<i>mar-ium</i> , of the seas.
Dat.	<i>animāl-ibus</i> , to the ani- mals.	<i>mar-ibus</i> , to the seas.
Acc.	<i>animāl-ia</i> , the animals.	<i>mar-ia</i> , the seas.
Voc.	<i>animāl-ia</i> , O animals!	<i>mar-ia</i> , O seas!
Abl.	<i>animāl-ibus</i> , from the animals.	<i>mar-ibus</i> , from the seas.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	<i>guttur</i> , the throat.	<i>nōmen</i> , the name.
Gen.	<i>guttur-is</i> , of the throat.	<i>nomĭn-is</i> , of the name.
Dat.	<i>guttur-i</i> , to the throat.	<i>nomĭn-i</i> , to the name.
Acc.	<i>guttur</i> , the throat.	<i>nomen</i> , the name.
Voc.	<i>guttur</i> , O throat !	<i>nomen</i> , O name !
Abl.	<i>guttur-e</i> , from the throat.	<i>nomĭn-e</i> , from the name.

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>guttur-a</i> , the throats.	<i>nomĭn-a</i> , the names.
Gen.	<i>guttur-um</i> , of the throats.	<i>nomĭn-um</i> , of the names.
Dat.	<i>guttur-ibus</i> , to the throats.	<i>nomĭn-ibus</i> , to the names.
Acc.	<i>guttur-a</i> , the throats.	<i>nomĭn-a</i> , the names.
Voc.	<i>guttur-a</i> , O throats !	<i>nomĭn-a</i> , O names !
Abl.	<i>guttur-ibus</i> , from the throats.	<i>nomĭn-ibus</i> , from the names.

§ 27.

In order to find out whether a word is declined after the third declension, the gen. sing. must be known.

1. Nom. **ā**, gen. **ātis** ; as, *poēma*, *poēmātis*, the poem ; all derived from the Greek. Declined like *guttur*.
2. Nom. **e**, gen. **is** ; as, *rete*, *retis*, the net. Like *mare*.
3. Nom. **o**, gen. 1) **inis** ; as, *homo*, *hominis*, man ; *nemo* (*neminis*), nobody ; *turbo*, *turbinis*, the whirlwind ; *Apollō*, *Appollinis*, and nearly all the words in **do** and **go** ; as, *ordo*, *ordinis*, order ; *imago*, *imaginis*, image ; *caro*, flesh, has *carnis* (instead of *carinis*). Like *anser*.
2) **ōnis**, all other words ; as, *leo*, *leonis*, the lion ; *ratio*, *rationis*, reason ; also, a few in **do** and **go** ; as, *praedo*, *praedonis*, robber ; *harpāgo*, *harpagōnis*, grappling-hook. Like *dolor*.
4. Nom. **al**, gen. **ālis** ; as, *vectigal*, *vectigālis*, tax. Like *animal*. Only *sal*, salt, has *sālis*. Like *anser*.
5. Nom. **l**, gen. **lis** ; as, *sol*, *sōlis*, the sun ; *exsul*, *exsulis*, the exile ; *vigil*, *vigilis*, watchful, watchman. Like *anser*.
Mel, honey, has *mellis* ; *fel*, gall, *fellis*. Like *guttur*.

6. Nom. en, gen. inis; as, *carmen, carminis*, poem; *agmen, agminis*, army, Like *nomen*.
Ren, kidney, has *renis*. Like *dolor*.
7. Nom. ar, gen. āris; as, *exemplar, exemplāris*, pattern: *calcar, calcōris*, spur. Like *animal*.
Lar, household god, has *lūris*; *par*, like, and *dispar*, unlike, *pāris* and *dispāris*; *Caesar, Caesāris*. Like *anser*. *Iubar*, ray, *iubāris*; *nectar*, nectar, *nectāris*. Like *guttur*.
Fur, meal, *farris*; *hepar*, liver, *hepātis*. Like *guttur*.
8. Nom. er, gen. 1) ēris; as, *agger, aggēris*, mound; *carcer, carcēris*, prison; *mulier, muliēris*, woman; also all names of plants ending in er, of the third decl.; as, *acer, acēris*, maple-tree (all neuter, § 34, I, 4); finally, five adjectives, namely, *celer*, swift; *degener*, degenerate; *pauper*, poor; *puber*, adult; *uber*, fertile. Like *anser*.
 2) ris; those in ter, beside most of the adjectives of the third declension: thus, *frater, fratris*, brother; *mater*, mother; *venter*, belly; *imber, imbris*, rain; and the names of months in ber; as, *September*. Like *pater*. Adjectives: *acer, acris*, sharp; *alacer, alacris*, lively; etc.
 NOTE.—*later, latēris*, tile; *ver, vēris*, spring; *iter, itinēris*, journey.
9. Nom. or, gen. ōris; as, *amor, amōris*, love; *soror*, sister; *creator, creator*; *viator*, traveler; *auditor*, hearer; *doctor*, teacher. Like *dolor*.
Arbor, tree, makes *arbōris*; *castor*, beaver, *castōris*; *rhetor*, rhetorician, *rhetōris*; *Hector, Hectōris*. Like *anser*. Thus also: *ador, adōris*, spelt; *aequor, aequōris*, sea; *marmor, marmōris*, marble. Like *guttur*. Moreover, *memor, memōris*, mindful; *immemor, immemōris*, unmindful.
Cor, heart, has *cordis*.
10. Nom. ur, gen. ūris; as, *fulgur, fulgūris*, lightning. Four have ōris, viz., *ebur, ebōris*, ivory; *femur, femōris*, thigh; *iecur, iecōris*, liver; *robur, robōris*, strength; the oak. Like *guttur*.
Fur, thief, takes *fūris*. Like *dolor*.
11. Nom. as, gen. ātis; as, *aestas, aestātis*, summer; *aetas, aetātis*, age; *brevitas*, shortness; *civitas*, citizenship; *libertas*,

freedom; *paupertas*, poverty; *potestas*, power; *veritas*, truth; *voluntas*, will; *nostras*, of our country, our countryman. Like *cupiditas*.

NOTE.—*Anas, anatis*, duck; *as, assis*, pound; *mas, marris*, male; *vas, vadis*, bail; *vas, vasis*, vase; *gigas, gigantis*, giant; *lampas, lampadis*, torch. *Fas*, right, *nefas*, wrong, are not declined.

12. Nom. *es*, gen. 1) *is*; about thirty words; *as, caedes, caedis*, murder; *clades, cladis*, defeat; *fames*, hunger; *moles*, load; *sedes*, seat; *vulpes*, fox. Like *nubes*.

2) *ētis*; about ten words; *as, abies, abiētis*, fir; *aries, arietis*, ram; *paries*, wall; *interpretas, interpretis*, interpreter; *seges*, crop; *teges*, mat; *habetas, habētis*, dull. Like *anser*.

3) *itis*; about twenty-five words; *as, ales, alitis*, bird; *comes, comitis*, companion; *equas, equis*, rider; *hospes*, host; *miles*, soldier; *pedes*, footman; *caelestas, caelestis*, celestial; *divos*, rich. Like *anser*.

NOTE.—*Obsecras, obsedis*, hostage; *reces, renouās*, inactive; *pes, pēdis*, foot; *heras, herēdis*, heir; *merces, mercēdis*, reward; *quies, quiētis*, rest; *locuples, locuplētis*, rich; *aes, aeris*, ore, bronze; *Ceres, Cereris*, Ceres.

13. Nom. *is*, gen. *is*; about eighty substantives and all adjectives in *is*; *as, amnis*, river; *collis*, hill; *ignis*, fire; *orbis*, circle; *piscis*, fish; *finis*, end; *mensis*, month; *apis*, bee; *avis*, bird; *clavis*, key; *febris*, fever; *navis*, ship; *ovis*, sheep; *turris*, tower; *vallis*, valley; *brevis*, short; *dulcis*, sweet; *facilis*, easy; *fortis*, brave; *nobilis*, noble; *turpis*, foul. Like *nubes*.

Note the following substantives:

1. *Lapis, lapidis*, stone; *tyrannis, tyrannidis*, tyranny.

2. *Cinis, cinēris*, ashes; *pulis, pulvērīs*, dust; *vomis, vomēris*, plough-share.

3. *Lis, litis*, quarrel; *sanguis, sanguinis*, blood; *glis, gliris*, dormouse; *vis*, force, strength; plur., *vires* (acc. sing. *vim*; abl. *vi*).

14. Nom. *os*, gen. *ōris*; *as, flos, flōris*, flower; *ros, rōris*, dew; *os, ōris*, mouth.

NOTE.—*Os, ossis*, bone; *bos, bōvis*, ox; *os*,

cōlis, whetstone; *dos*, *dotis*, dowry; *nepos*, *nepōtis*, grandson; *sacerdos*, *sacerdōtis*, priest; *custos*, *custōdis*, guardian; *compos*, *compōtta*, controlling; *impos*, *impōtis*, powerless. Greek: *heros*, *herōis*; *Minos*, *Mīnōis*; *Tros*, *Trōis*.

15. Nom. us, gen. 1) **ĕris**; as, *Venus*, *Venēris*, the goddess Venus; *vetus*, *vetēris*, old; and eighteen neuters, namely, *acus*, *acēris*, chaff; *rudus*, *rudēris*, rubbish. which are rare, and

foedus, *genus*, *latus*, *glomus*,
olus, *opus*, *pondus*, *onus*,
acelus, *sidus*, *ulcus*, *funus*,
vellus, *viscus*, *vulnus*, *munus*.

<i>foedus</i> , alliance;	<i>acelus</i> , crime;
<i>genus</i> , sex, gender;	<i>sidus</i> , star;
<i>latus</i> , side;	<i>ulcus</i> , ulcer;
<i>glomus</i> , ball of yarn;	<i>funus</i> , funeral;
<i>olus</i> , vegetable;	<i>vellus</i> , fleece;
<i>opus</i> , work;	<i>viscus</i> (<i>viscera</i>), entrails;
<i>pondus</i> , weight;	<i>vulnus</i> , wound;
<i>onus</i> , load;	<i>munus</i> , office, gift.

Like *guttur*.

2) **ōris**; as, *lepus*, *lepōris*, hare; and fourteen neuters, namely:

corpus, *fenus*, *frigus*, *decus*,
litus, *nemus*, *pectus*, *pecus*,
pignus, *stercus*, *facinus*,
tempus, *tergus*, *dedecus*;

<i>corpus</i> , body;	<i>pecus</i> , a herd;
<i>fenus</i> , rent;	<i>pignus</i> , token, pledge;
<i>frigus</i> , cold;	<i>stercus</i> , dung;
<i>decus</i> , ornament;	<i>facinus</i> , deed;
<i>litus</i> , shore;	<i>tempus</i> , time;
<i>nemus</i> , grove;	<i>tergus</i> , back;
<i>pectus</i> , breast;	<i>dedecus</i> , disgrace.

Like *guttur*.

3) **ūtis**, only five; as, *salus*, *salūtis*, welfare; *servitus*, *servitūtis*, slavery. Like *virtus*.

4) **ūris**, only seven; as, *crus*, *crūrīs*, leg; *ius*, right; *rus*, country; *mus*, mouse; *tellus*, earth.

NOTE.—*Palus*, *palūdīs*, swamp; *incus*, *incū*

dis, anvil; *grus*, *grūs*, crane; *sus*, *suis*, hog; *fraus*, *fraudis*, deceit; *laus*, *laudis*, praise; *pecus*, *pecūdia*, a single head of cattle (*pecus*, *pecōris*, a herd).

16. Nom. **bs**, gen. **bīs**; as, *plebs*, *plēbis*, the people; *urbs*, *urbis*, the town; *caelebs*, bachelor, has *caelibis*.

17. Nom. **ms**, gen. **ntis**; as, *dens*, *dentis*, tooth; *fons*, *fontis*, spring; *mons*, *montis*, mountain; *constans*, *constantis*, constant; *prudens*, *prudētis*, prudent.

NOTE.—*Frons*, *frondis*, foliage; *glans*, *glāndis*, acorn (*frons*, *frontis*, brow). Like *pars*.

18. Nom. **ps**, gen. **pis**; as, *stirps*, *stirpis*, stem, trunk.

NOTE.—*Auceps*, *aucūpis*, fowler; *princeps*, *principis*, chief; *anceps*, *ancipitis*, twofold, doubtful; (*biceps*, *praeceps*).

19. Nom. **rs**, gen. **rtis**; as, *ars*, *artis*, art; *mors*, *mortis*, death; *sortis*, *sortis*, lot; *iners*, *inertis*, indolent. Like *pars*.

Concors, concordant, *discors*, discordant, *misericors*, compassionate, make **rdis** thus, *concordis*, etc.

20. Nom. **ax**, gen. **ācis**; as, *pax*, *pācis*, peace; *audax*, *audācis*, bold; *rapax*, *rapācis*, rapacious; *tenax*, *tenācis*, tenacious; *vorax*, greedy. Like *pars*.

Fax, torch, takes **fācis**.

21. Nom. **ex**, gen. **icis**, as, *index*, *indicis*, informer; *iudex*, *iudicis*, judge; *vertex*, *verticis*, summit; *duplex*, *duplicis*, double; *supplex*, *supplicis*, suppliant.

NOTE.—*Rex*, *rēgis*, king; *lex*, *lēgis*, law; *grex*, *grēgis*, flock; *nex*, *nēcis*, death; *prex*, *prēcis*, prayer; *senex*, *sēnis*, old man; *supplex*, *suppelledis*, furniture; *remex*, *remigis*, rower. Like *anser*.

22. Nom. **ix**, gen. **icis**; as, *cornix*, *cornicis*, crow; *radix*, *radicis*, root; *nutrix*, *nutricis*, nurse; *victrix*, conqueror (fem.); *felix*, happy; *pernix*, swift.

Appendix, addition, *appendicis*; *calix*, chalice, *calicis*; *pix*, pitch, *picis*; *nix*, snow, *nivis*.

23. Nom. **ox**, gen. **ōcis**; only *vox*, *vōcis*, voice; and the adjectives, *atrox*, *atrōcis*, fierce; *ferox*, wild; *velox*, swift; *nox*, night, has *noctis*; *praeox*, mature, has *praeoōcis*.

24. Nom. **ux**, gen. **ūcis**; as, *crux*, *crūcis*, cross; *dux*, *dūcis*, leader; *nox*, *noctis*, nut; *trux*, *trūcis*, savage

NOTE.—*Lux, lūcis*, light; *conjug, conjugis*, spouse; *frux, frūgis*, fruit; *fax, faucis*, throat, jaw.

25. Nom. **x**, with preceding consonant; gen.

cis;

as, *arz, arcis*, stronghold; *fala, falcis*, sickle; *lanz, lancis*, dish. Like *pars*.

26. Anomalous.

Lac, lactis, milk; *caput, capitis*, head; *hiems, hiemis*, winter.

§ 28.

All adjectives, except those in *us, a, um*, and *er, a, um* (§ 18), follow the third declension.

1. **All adjectives of one termination** (cf. § 48); as, *audax, audācis*, bold; *praeceps, praecipitis*, steep; *iners, inertis*, slothful; *dives, itis*, rich; *mēmor, ōris*, mindful; *par, pāris*, equal; *pauper, ěris*, poor; *vetus, ěris*, old (all others in *us* are of the second); moreover, all those in *ns*; as, *prudens, ntis*, prudent; *amans*, loving; *constans*, constant.

2. **All adjectives of two terminations**; as, *brēvis*, neut. *breve*, gen. *brevis*, short; *fācilis, facile*, gen. *facilis*, easy; *suāvis, suave*, gen. *suavis*, sweet; etc. Also the comparatives; as, *brevior*, neut. *brevius*, gen. *brevioris*, shorter; *facilior*, neut. *facilius*, gen. *ōris*, easier; *suavior*, neut. *suavius*, gen. *ōris*, sweeter.

3. **Of the adjectives of three terminations**, only thirteen; as, *celer, celēris, celere*, gen. *celēris*, swift. All others drop the *e* of the nom. masc.; as, *acer, acris, acre*, gen. *acris*, keen.

NOTE.—Six of the adjectives in **er**, that have three terminations, end in **ster** (§ 48, 4). The others are :

<i>salūber, bris, bre</i> , wholesome;	<i>acer, oris, cre</i> , keen;
<i>volūcer, oris, cre</i> , winged;	<i>celer, is, e</i> , swift;
<i>cēlēber, bris, bre</i> , renowned;	<i>puter, tris, tre</i> , rotten;
	<i>alūcer, oris, cre</i> , lively.

The following four have one termination :

<i>puber, (pubes,) ěris</i> , adult;	<i>degēner, ěris</i> , degenerate;
<i>pauper, ěris</i> , poor;	<i>ūber, ěris</i> , fertile.

All others in **er** are declined after the second decl. (§ 19); also one in **ster**; namely, *sinister, sinistra, sinistrum*, left.

SINGULAR.

	MASC. FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	<i>audax</i> , bold.	<i>audax</i> .	<i>brēvior</i> ,	breuius , shorter
Gen.	<i>audācis</i> ,		<i>brēvioris</i> .	
Dat.	<i>audāci</i> ,		<i>brēviori</i> .	
Acc.	<i>audācem</i> ,	<i>audax</i> .	<i>brēviōrem</i> ,	breuius .
Voc.	<i>audax</i> ,	<i>audax</i> .	<i>brēvior</i> ,	breuius .
Abl.	audāci and audace .		brēviōre (<i>brēviori</i>).	

PLURAL.

	MASC. FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	<i>audaces</i> ,	audacia .	<i>brēviōres</i> ,	brēviōra .
Gen.	<i>auda-cium</i> .		<i>brēviorum</i> .	
Dat.	<i>audacibus</i> .		<i>brēvioribus</i> .	
Acc.	<i>audaces</i> ,	audacia .	<i>brēviores</i> ,	brēviora .
Voc.	<i>audaces</i> ,	audacia .	<i>brēviores</i> ,	brēviora .
Abl.	<i>audacibus</i> .		<i>brēvioribus</i> .	

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	<i>ācer</i> ,	<i>acris</i> ,	<i>acre</i> , keen.	<i>dulcis</i> ,	<i>dulce</i> , sweet.
Gen.	<i>acris</i> .			<i>dulcis</i> ,	
Dat.	<i>acri</i> .			<i>dulci</i> .	
Acc.	<i>acrem</i> ,	<i>acre</i> .		<i>dulcem</i> ,	<i>dulce</i> .
Voc.	<i>acer</i> ,	<i>acris</i> ,	<i>acre</i> .	<i>dulcis</i> ,	<i>dulce</i> .
Abl.	<i>acri</i> .			<i>dulci</i> .	

PLURAL.

	MASC. FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	<i>acres</i> ,	<i>acria</i> .	<i>dulces</i> ,	<i>dulcia</i> .
Gen.	<i>acrium</i> .		<i>dulcium</i> .	
Dat.	<i>acribus</i> .		<i>dulcibus</i> .	
Acc.	<i>acres</i> ,	<i>acria</i> .	<i>dulces</i> ,	<i>dulcia</i> .
Voc.	<i>acres</i> ,	<i>acria</i> .	<i>dulces</i> ,	<i>dulcia</i> .
Abl.	<i>acribus</i> .		<i>dulcibus</i> .	

§ 29.

REMARKS ON CERTAIN CASES.

Three words have always the acc. sing. in **im** instead of **sm**. They are:
sitis, thirst; *vis*, strength; *tussis*, cough.

Also names of towns and rivers in **is**; as, *Tībēris*, *Neapōlis*.
The following nine have **im** and **em** :

<i>febris</i> ,	fever ;	<i>turris</i> ,	tower ;	<i>messis</i> ,	harvest ;
<i>pelvis</i> ,	basin ;	<i>restis</i> ,	cord ;	<i>nāvis</i> ,	ship.
<i>puppis</i> ,	stern ;	<i>secūris</i> ,	hatchet ;	<i>clāvis</i> ,	key.

NOTE.—The six first have generally **im**, the three last generally **em**.

§ 30.

I. In the abl. sing. have only **i** instead of **e** :

1. All words which have in the acc. only **im**; as, *sitis*, abl., only *siti*; *vis*, only *vi*; *tussis*, only *tussi*; *Tiberis*, only *Tiberi*.

2. The neuters in **e**, **al**, and **ar**, which have the gen. in **ālis** and **āris** (*ā* long); as, *ovīle*, the sheep-fold, *ovīli*; *vectigal*, the tax, *vectigali*; *calcar*, the spur, *calcāri*; (on the contrary, *nectar*, abl., *nectāre*; *iubar*, ray, *iubāre*; *hepar*, liver, *hepāte*; *fur*, meal, *farre*).

The names of towns in **e** always keep **e**, in the abl.; as, *Caerē*, *Prænestē* (they are, properly speaking, indeclinable). The masculine in **al** and **ar** have always **e**; as, *sal*, *sāle*; *Caesar*, *Caesāre*.

3. All adjectives, whose neuter ends in **e** (**is**, **is**, **e**, and **er**, **is**, **e**), as well as those substantives in **er** and **is**, which are properly adjectives of this class; as, *facilis*, abl. *facili*; *acer*, abl. *acri*; *September* (sc. *mensis*), abl. *Septembri*; *natālis* (sc. *dies*), birthday, abl. *natāli*; *annālis* (sc. *liber*), annals, abl. *annali*; *aequalis*, contemporary, abl. *aequali*; *affinis*, relative *affini*.

Iuvenis, young man, has *iuvene*; *aedilis*, *aedile*; also the adjectives, when used as proper names; as, *Metellus Celer*, abl. *Metello Celere*; *Iuvenalis*, abl. *Iuvenale*.

II. Ablative in **i** and **e** :

1. Those which have **im** and **em** in the accusative; thus, *puppi* and *puppe*, *turri* and *turre* (but only *reste*, *secūri*, generally *navi*).

Some parisyllables in **is** have also the double termination **e** and **i** in the abl.; as, *amnis*, *avis*, *civis*, *ignis*. It is always *aqua et igni interdicens* (§ 229); otherwise oftener *igne*.

2. All adjectives which form no neuter in *e*: consequently, *felicī* and *felice*, *veterī* and *vetere*, *prudētī* and *prudente*, *constantī* and *constante*. The comparative usually takes *e*; as, *maiore* (very seldom *maiori*).

Most adjectives of one termination prefer *i*, in the ablative, especially *memor*, *par*, *concors*, *discors*, *atrox*, *audax*, *ingens*, *recens*, *praeceps*, *inopator*, *hebes*; hence, *memori*, *pārī*, *concordī*, etc. However,

a. The participles in *ns* have only *e*, when used as participles, especially in the abl. absolute; as, *Romulo regnante*. On the contrary, they have mostly *i*, when used as adjectives.

b. The participles and adjectives of one termination have mostly *e* in the ablative, when used as substantives to signify persons (§287, 4, 2); therefore, *multum distat rudis a sapiente*.

The substantive *par*, the pair, has *pare* and *pārī*.

c. The following adjectives of one termination have only *e* in the ablative:

Caelebs, *compos*, *impos*, *deses*,
Pauper, *princeps*, *puber*, *reses*,
 Those in *es*, *itis*; as, *ales*,
Dives, *sospes*, and *superstes*. (§ 27, 16, 14, 12.)

deses, *desidis*, slothful; *sospes*, *sospitis*, safe;
ales, *alitis*, winged; *superstes*, *superstitis*, surviving.

§ 31.

The nominative plural of neuters ends in *a*, more rarely in *ia*. The following words have the termination *ia*:

1. The neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, which have *ālis* and *āris* in the genitive (§ 30, I, 2); thus, *maria*, seas; *animalia*, animals; *exemplaria*, patterns; (but *furra* from *far*).

2. All adjectives and participles in the positive degree: *facilia*, *brevia*, *dulcia*, *acria*, *salubria*, *celerita*, *felicitia*, *prudencia*, *sapientia*, *amantia*; except *vetus*, plur. neut. *vetēra*.

In the comparative, however, they have always *a*; as, *maiora*, *acriora*, *breviora*, *plura* (likewise *complura*, rarely *compluria*).

Some adjectives of one termination form no nom. and acc. neut. for the plural, namely: 1, those which have in the abl. sing. only *e*, (§ 80 I, 2, e); 2, *ciour*, *memor*, *inmemor*, *supplex*, *uber*, *particeps*, and *vigil*.

§ 32.

The genitive plural ends in **um**, more rarely in **ium**. The following words have *ium*:

1. All parisyllables (§ 26, 3); as, *clades*, defeat, *cladium*, likewise, *brevium*, *omnium*, *carnium*, *imbrium*. The following parisyllables, however, have *um*:

Vātes, sēnex, *pāter*, *pānis*,
With *accīpīter* and *cānis*,
Frāter, *māter*, *īūvenis*,
Sometimes *āpis*, *vōlucris*.

<i>Vates</i> , seer (gen. plur. <i>vatum</i>);	<i>canis</i> , dog;
<i>panis</i> , bread;	<i>apis</i> , bee;
<i>accipiter</i> , hawk (<i>accipitrum</i>);	<i>volucris</i> , bird.

2. All imparisyllables which have two consonants before the case-ending; as, *ars*, art, *artium*; *fontis*, spring, *fontium*; likewise, *assium*, *noctium*, *ossium*, *urbium*, *amantium*, *inertium*.

Parentes, parents, has *parentum*; often also, *adolescentum*, *clientum*, *prudentum*, *sapientum*, for *adolescentium*, etc.; but then only when the words are used as substantives.

3. The following ten monosyllables:

fauz, *fraus*, *glis*, *ius*, *lis*,
mas, *mus*, *nix*, *plus*, *vis*.

<i>Fauz</i> , <i>faucium</i> , throat;	<i>mus</i> , <i>murium</i> , mouse;
<i>fraus</i> , <i>fraudium</i> , cheat;	<i>nix</i> , <i>nivium</i> , snow;
<i>glis</i> , <i>glirium</i> , dormouse;	<i>plus</i> , <i>plurium</i> , more;
<i>ius</i> , <i>iurium</i> , right;	<i>vis</i> , <i>virium</i> , strength.
<i>lis</i> , <i>litium</i> , quarrel;	<i>Ops</i> , <i>opis</i> , help, has <i>opum</i> .
<i>mas</i> , <i>marium</i> , the male;	

Pes, foot, has *pedum*; likewise *quadrupes*, the quadruped, has *quadrupedum*; but *compes*, fetter, *compedium*. A number of monosyllables have no gen. plur.; as, *aes*, *cos*, *rus*, *sal*, *sol*, *far*, *fel*, *mel*.

4. All words which make the plur. neut. in *ia* (§ 31); as, *marium*, *animalium*, *exemplarium*, *audacium*, *amantium*, (except

veterum, maiorum, and all comparatives, except *plurium* and *complurium*).

Those adjectives which form no nom. plur. neut. (§ 31, 2, note) make the gen. plur. in **um**; thus, *caelebs*, gen. plur. *caelëbium*; *dives*, gen. plur. *divitium* (but *dīs, dītis*, plur. neut. *dītia*, gen. *dītium*); etc.

5. The names of nations in **is** and **as**, gen. **itīs** and **ātīs**; as, *Quiris*, gen. plu. *Quiritium*; *Arpinas*, *Arpinatium*. Likewise *nostras, vestras, ovias*, have only *nostratium*, etc.; *optimates* and *penates* have *optimatium* and *penatium*, rarely *optimatum* and *penatum*.

6. The neuter names of feasts, only used in the plural, have, instead of **ium**, sometimes **lorum** after the second declension; as, *Saturnalia*, *Saturnalium*, and *Saturnaliorum*.

§ 33.

1. The acc. plur. of the masc. and fem. words which have **ium** in the gen. plur., had anciently the termination **is** (**eis**), instead of **ēs**; thus, *cladis, omnis, tris*, instead of *cladēs, omnes, tres*.

2. NOTE.—*Bōs, bōvis*, ox, cow, is regular; however, it has the gen. plu. *boum* for *bōvum*, dat. plu. *bōbus* or *būbus* for *bōvibus*. *Sus, suis*, hog, has mostly *sūbus* for *sūibus*. Jupiter has gen. *Jōvis*, dat. *Jōvi*, acc. *Jovem*, voc. *Jupiter*, abl. *Jove*.

§ 34.

RULES OF GENDER ACCORDING TO TERMINATION.

I. GENERAL RULE.

Masculine are those which end in **o, or, os, e-r**, and those in **e-s** which increase in the genitive.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. In **o**. Words ending in **do, go, io**, are feminine, also **caro**. Masculine, however, are the following: *ordo, cardo, ligo, harpāgo, margo, septentrio, vespertilio, papilio, pugio, scipio*.

Cāro, carnīs, flesh;

ordo, inīs, order;

cardo, inīs, hinge;

ligo, ōnīs, hoe;

harpāgo, ōnīs, grappling-hook;

margo, inīs, border;

septentrio, ōnīs, north;

vespertilio, bat;

pāpilio, butterfly;

pūgio, dagger;

scipio, staff.—(§ 27, 8.)

p 32

2. In **or**. Four are neuter: *aequor*, sea; *ādor*, spelt; *mar-mor*, marble; *cōr*, heart. *Arbor, arbōris*, tree, is fem. (§ 27, 9)

3. In **os**. Three are feminine; *eos, cōs, dōs*. *Ōs*, mouth, *ōs*, bone, are always neuter (§ 27, 14).

Eos (indecl.), dawn; *dos, dōtis*, dowry; *cos, cōtis*, whetstone.

4. In **e-r**. The following are neuter: *cadāvēr, cīcer, ūter, papāver, pīper, spinther, tūber, ūber, vēr, verber*. *Linter* is fem.

<i>cadaver, ēris</i> , corpse;	<i>spinther, ēris</i> , bracelet;
<i>cicer, ēris</i> , a pea;	<i>tūber, ēris</i> , hump;
<i>iter, itinēris</i> , journey;	<i>uber, ēris</i> , udder;
<i>papaver, ēris</i> , poppy;	<i>vēr, vēris</i> , spring;
<i>pīper, ēris</i> , pepper;	<i>verber, ēris</i> , blow;
<i>linter, tris</i> , skiff—(§ 27, 8).	

5. In **e-s**, increasing in the genitive. One is neuter: *aes*. Eight are feminine: *compes, merces, merges, quies, rēquies, inquies, sēges, tēges* (§ 27, 12).

<i>aes, aeris</i> , ore, bronze;	<i>merges, mergitīs</i> , sheaf;
<i>requies, requiētīs</i> , rest;	<i>compes, compēdīs</i> , shackle;
<i>quies, quiētīs</i> , rest;	<i>inquies, inquiētīs</i> , restlessness;
<i>merces, mercēdīs</i> , reward;	<i>seges, segētīs</i> , crop.

II. GENERAL RULE.

Words ending in **as, is, aus, and x**; as, *aetas, āvis, laus*, and *nix*, as also **s**, preceded by a consonant, are feminine. Parisyllables in **es** are also feminine.

<i>Aetas, aetatis</i> , age;	<i>laus, laudīs</i> , praise;
<i>avis, avis</i> , bird;	<i>nix, nivīs</i> , snow.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. In **as**. The word *as*, gen. *assis*, a pound, is masculine; *vas, vāsīs*, a vessel, neut.

Vas, a bail, *vādīs*, and *mas*, the male, *mārīs*, are already masculine from their meaning. The Greek words in **as**, gen. **-antis**, are also masc.; *as, adāmas, -antis*, the diamond.

2. In **is**. Words in **cis, guis, and quis**; in **alis, ollis, mis, nis**; and *axis, callis, caulis, ensis*; and *fustis, orbis, vectis, mensis*; *glīs, lāpis, pulvis*, are masc.; also, *buris, scrobis, torris, postis*; and *sentis, cassis, vepris, hostis*.

<i>fascis, is</i> , bundle;	<i>ensis</i> , sword;	<i>funis</i> , cord;
<i>piscis</i> , fish;	<i>fustis</i> , club;	<i>ignis</i> , fire;
<i>anguis</i> , serpent;	<i>orbis</i> , circle;	<i>panis</i> , bread;
<i>sanguis, inis</i> , blood;	<i>vectis</i> , lever;	<i>lapis, idis</i> , stone;
<i>unguis, is</i> , claw;	<i>mensis</i> , month;	<i>puleis, ěris</i> , dust;
<i>torquis, is</i> , necklace;	<i>glis, gliris</i> , dormouse;	<i>bĕris, is</i> , part of a plough;
<i>annĕlis, is</i> , annals;	<i>natalis</i> , birthday;	<i>scrĕbis</i> , ditch;
<i>canalis, is</i> , canal;	<i>collis</i> , hill;	<i>torris</i> , firebrand;
<i>amnis, is</i> , stream;	<i>folĕis</i> , bellows;	<i>postis</i> , post;
<i>cinis, ěris</i> , ashes;	<i>pollis, inis</i> , mill-dust;	<i>sentis</i> , briar;
<i>erinis, is</i> , hair;	<i>cucumis, ěris</i> , cucumber;	<i>cassis</i> , snare;
<i>axis</i> , axle;	<i>vermis, is</i> , worm;	<i>vepris</i> , thorn-bush;
<i>callis</i> , path;	<i>vomis, ěris</i> , ploughshare;	<i>hostis</i> , enemy.
<i>caulis</i> , stalk;	<i>finis, is</i> , end;	

Canis, dog, is gen. com.; likewise *tigris*, tiger. The Greek words, *tyrannis, -idis*, tyranny; *pyrĕmis, -idis*, pyramid; *proboscis, -idis*, trunk; are fem. *Sentis, cassis, vepris*, are hardly ever used, except in the plural.

3. In **x**. With **x**, those that have **ox** are masculine; as, *cōdex, pollex, grex*; but *lex, nex, suppellex, forfex, faex*, and *prex*, are feminine.

In **ix** and **yx** are masculine: *calix, fornix, phoenix, bombyx, varix*; also *tradux, thorax*; and the numbers in **unx**; as, *quincunx, deunx* (§ 27, 20-25).

<i>Codex, icis</i> , book;	<i>fornix, icis</i> , vault;
<i>pollex, icis</i> , thumb;	<i>phoenix, icis</i> , phoenix (a fabulous bird);
<i>grex, grĕgis</i> , flock;	<i>bombyx, ycis</i> , silk-worm;
<i>lex, lĕgis</i> , law;	<i>varix, icis</i> , vein;
<i>nex, nĕcis</i> , death;	<i>tradux, ũcis</i> , vine-branch;
<i>suppellex, suppellectĭlis</i> , furniture;	<i>thorax, ācis</i> , breast-plate;
<i>forfex, icis</i> , scissors;	<i>quincunx, uncis</i> , $\frac{1}{5}$;
<i>faex, faecis</i> , yeast;	<i>deunx, unois</i> , $\frac{1}{2}$.
<i>prex, prĕcis</i> , prayer;	
<i>calix, icis</i> , chalice;	

4. In **s**, with preceding consonant:

All masculine are *fons* and *mons*,
Dens, rūdens, chĕlybs, hĕdrops, pons,

With *torrens, trĕdens, ōriens*,

And *dodrans, triens, occĕdens*.—(§ 27, 17).

<i>dens, ntis</i> , tooth;	<i>pons, ntis</i> , bridge;	<i>dodrans, 1/2</i> ;
<i>rudens</i> , cable;	<i>torrens</i> , torrent;	<i>triens, 1/3</i> ;
<i>hydrops, ōpis</i> , dropsy;	<i>trĕdens</i> , trident;	<i>occĕdens</i> , west.
<i>chĕlybs, ybis</i> , steel;	<i>oriens, ntis</i> , east;	

III. GENERAL RULE.

Words in **e**, **l**, **ur**, **us**, **ar**, **men**, **ma**, are neuter (§ 27; 1, 2, 4-7, 10, 15).

EXCEPTIONS.

1. In **l** and **ur**. *Sōl*, *sāl*, *turtur*, and *vultur* are masculine; *pectēn*, *liēn*, *rēn*, and *splēn* (not ending in **men**), are also masculine (§ 27; 4, 5, 6, 10).

sol, *sōlis*, sun;

sal, *sālis*, salt;

turtur, *ūris*, turtle-dove;

vultur, vulture;

pecten, *inīs*, comb;

lien, *ēnis*, milt;

ren, *rēnis*, kidney;

splen, *ēnis*, spleen.

2. In **us**. Nine words in **ūs** (long) are feminine; *servitus*, *senectus*, *virtus*, *subscus*, *sālus*, *iuventus*, *incus*, *tellus*, *pālus*; likewise, *pecus*, *pecūdis*, *sūs*, and *grūs*, *grūis* are generally feminine. Masculine are three: *trīpus*, *lēpus*, *mūs* (§ 27; 15).

Servitus, *ūtis*, slavery;

senectus, old age;

virtus, virtue;

salus, welfare;

iuventus, youth;

subscus, *ūdis*, tongue of a

dovetail;

inūs, *ūdis*, anvil;

pālus, *ūdis*, swamp;

tellus, *ūris*, earth;

pecus, *ūdis*, cattle;

sus, *enīs*, hog;

grus, *gruis*, crane;

trīpus, *ōdis*, tripod;

lēpus, *lepōris*, hare;

mūs, *mūris*, mouse.

3. Separately must be remembered the neuters: *lāc*, *lactis*, milk; and *cāput*, *capītis*, head (*sincīput*, *sincipītis*, half the head; *occīput*, back part of the head).

§ 35.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Some Greek proper names in **es** have the gen. sing. in **i**, besides **is**; as, *Achilles*, gen. *Achillīs* and *Achillī*; likewise, *Themistocles*, *Neocli*, for *Themistoclis*, *Neoclis*.

2. Greek words in **ma** have the dat. and abl. plur. oftener in **mātis** than **matibus**; e. g., *poēma*, poem; oftener *poēmatīs* than *poēmatibus*.

3. Greek words in **is**, gen. **īs**, have the acc. in **im** (**im**), abl. **i**; as, *poēsis*, poetry, acc. *poēsīm* (rarely *poēsīn*), abl. *poēsī*; likewise, *Apis*, gen. *Apīs*, acc. *Apīm*, abl. *Apī*.

4. Greek words in **is** and **as** have, in poetry, instead of **īdis**, **ādīs**, sometimes the Greek gen. **īdōs**, **ādōs**; as, *Aenēis*, *Aenēīdōs*; *Pallās*,

Pallādōs. *Pan* has even in prose only gen. *Panos*, acc. *Pana* (*panis*, bread; gen. *panis*, acc. *panem*).

5. Greek words have sometimes the Greek acc. sing. *a* along with the Latin *em*; as, *Agamemnōna* and *Agamemnonem*, *Salumina*, *Pericliā*. *Aēr* and *aethēr* have the acc. always *aēra*, *aethera*, instead of *aērem*, *aethērem*. *Parīs*, *Paridos*, has, in the acc., *Paridem*, *Parida*, *Parim*, or *Parin*.

6. Proper names of men in *es* make the acc. *em* and *en*, voc. *es* and *ē*; as, acc. *Xerzēm*, *Xerzen*, voc. *Xerzēs*, *Xerzē*; *Socratēm*, *Socraten*, *Socrates*, *Socrate*.

7. Greek proper names in *is*, *ys*, *eus*, form the vocative, as in Greek, by dropping *s*; as, *Alexis*, voc. *Alexi*; *Cotys*, voc. *Coty*; *Perseus*, voc. *Perseu* (cf. § 25; 4).

8. Greek names of men in *as*, gen. *antis*, make the vocative *a*; as, *gigas*, *gigantis*, giant, voc. *gigā*; also, *Atlā*.

9. Foreign proper names sometimes take, in the nom. and acc. plur., the Greek terminations *ēs* and *ās* (for *ēs*); as, nom. *Arcādēs*, acc. *Arcādās*, *Macedōnas*, *Allobrogas*.

10. The Greek feminine words in *o* have *us*, in the gen.; as, *echo*, the echo, gen. *echūs*; *Sappho*, *Sapphus*, in dat. acc. and abl. they retain *o*, therefore, *echo*, *Sappho*. Of *Io*, we find the dative *Iōni*.

11. The Greek neuters, *melos*, song, and *cetos*, sea-monster, are indeclinable in the singular; in the nom. and acc. plur., they have *melē* and *cetē*. A similar plural is *Tempē*, the valley of Tempe.

12. In titles of books, Greek words often keep the Greek termination *ōn*, in the gen. plur.; as, *Metamorphoseon libri*, the Books of the *Metamorphoses* (cf. § 25; 5).

§ 36.

WORDS FOR EXERCISE.

1. <i>Lātro</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , robber;	<i>tīmor</i> , fear;
<i>fīro</i> , beginner;	<i>ōrātor</i> , speaker;
<i>pāvo</i> , peacock;	<i>peccātor</i> , sinner;
<i>carbo</i> , coal;	<i>vēnātor</i> , hunter;
<i>pulmo</i> , lung;	<i>condītor</i> , builder;
<i>tēmo</i> , pole (of wagon);	<i>iānītor</i> , porter;
<i>clāmor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , cry;	<i>audītor</i> , hearer;
<i>cōlor</i> , color;	<i>largītor</i> , briber;
<i>error</i> , mistake;	<i>pastor</i> , shepherd;
<i>lābor</i> , work;	<i>pictor</i> , painter;
<i>ōdor</i> , smell;	<i>praeceptor</i> , teacher;
<i>terror</i> , fright;	<i>scriptor</i> , writer;

- victor*, conqueror ;
dēfensor, defender ;
possessor, owner ;
rōs, *rōris*, dew ;
ūter, *tris*, hose ;
caespes, *ītis*, turf ;
gurgēs, whirlpool ;
līmes, boundary ;
satelles, satellite.
2. *Altitūdo*, *īnis*, height ;
consuētūdo, custom ;
fortitūdo, bravery ;
multitūdo, crowd ;
hirundo, swallow ;
hirūdo, leech ;
testūdo, turtle ;
orīgo, source ;
virgo, maiden ;
actio, *ōnis*, action ;
contio, assembly ;
lectio, reading ;
mōtio, motion ;
mūtatio, change ;
narratio, tale ;
nōtio, notion ;
ōrātiō, speech ;
quaestio, question ;
rātiō, reason ;
rēgio, country ;
suspīcio, suspicion ;
- II.
1. *Aequitas*, *ātis*, equity ;
auctoritas, authority ;
calāmitas, misfortune ;
crudelitas, cruelty ;
- dignitas*, dignity ;
facultas, faculty ;
grāvitas, heaviness ;
lēvitas, lightness ;
māiestas, majesty ;
piētās, piety ;
societas, society ;
tempestat, weather ;
vetustas, antiquity ;
voluptas, pleasure ;
2. *Auris*, *is*, ear ;
classis, fleet ;
corbis, basket ;
fēlis, cat ;
mēssis, harvest ;
pellis, fur, hide ;
pestis, pestilence ;
vestis, dress ;
vītis, vine.
3. *Fraus*, *dis*, deceit ;
4. *Cornix*, *īcis*, crow ;
rādix, root ;
nutrix, nurse ;
arx, *cis*, castle ;
crux, *crūcis*, cross ;
falx, sickle ;
nex, *nēcis*, murder, death
vox, *vōcis*, voice.
5. *Cohors*, *tis*, troop ;
fors, chance ;
gens, people ;
lens, lentil ;
mens, mind ;
serpens, snake.
6. *Aedes*, *is*, temple ;
fāmes, *is*, hunger ;
saepes, fence ;
vulpes, fox.

III

1. *Altāre, is*, altar ;
bovīle, cattle-stall ;
conclāve, room ;
cubīle, couch ;
sedīle, seat ;
tribūnal, ālis, tribunal ;
vectīgal, tax ;
cochlear, āris, spoon ,
lacūnar, ceiling.
2. *Murmur, ūris*, murmur ;
sulfur, sulphur ;
funus, ěris, funeral ;
glōmus, ball of yarn ;
ōlus, vegetable ;
ŕpus, work ;
pondus, weight ;
sīdus, star ;
ulcus, ulcer ;
fācīnus, ōris, deed ;

frīgus, cold ;
tātus, shore ;
nēmus, grove ;
pīgnus, token ;
stercus, dung ;
tergus, back.

4. *Acūmen, ĩnis*, point ;
certāmen, contest ;
crīmen, crime ;
ecāmen, swarm ;
flūmen, river ;
fulmen, lightning ;
grāmen, grass ;
tāmen, threshold ;
lūmen, light ;
nūmen, divinity ;
ōmen, foreboding ;
sēmen, seed ;
specīmen, sample ;
strāmen, straw.

§ 37.

1. *Agrestis*, rustic ;
illustris, illustrious ;
tēnis, soft ;
tristis, sad ;
cīvīlis, civil ;
hostīlis, hostile ;
vīrīlis, manly ;
mortālis, mortal ;
fīdēlis, faithful ;
dīffīcīlis, difficult ;
sīmīlis, like ;
ūtilis, useful.
2. *Abstīnens*, abstemious ;
clemens, clement ;

dīlīgens, diligent ;
frēquens, frequent ;
īngens, mighty ;
īnnōcens, innocent ;
pōtens, powerful ;
sāpiens, wise ;
vēhēmens, violent ;
ēlégans, tasty ;
expers, devoid ;
īners, lazy ;
ferox, wild ;
mendax, lying ;
trux, fierce.

§ 38.

<i>Miles alācer</i> , the lively soldier ;	<i>certāmen nōbile</i> , the noble contest ;
<i>āvis celēris</i> , the swift bird ;	<i>leo generōsus</i> , the generous lion ;
<i>īter salūbre</i> , the wholesome journey ;	<i>arbor frugifēra</i> , the fruit-tree ;
<i>lābor difficilis</i> , the hard work ;	<i>pignus grātum</i> , the precious token ;
<i>aestas brēvis</i> , the short summer ;	<i>ventus vehēmens</i> , the violent wind ;
<i>ōpus ūtile</i> , a useful work ;	<i>schōla illustris</i> , the famous school ;
<i>cochlear aureum</i> , the golden spoon ;	<i>mendacium pertinax</i> , the stubborn lie.
<i>vectīgal grave</i> , the heavy tax ;	
<i>nōmen clārum</i> , the bright name ;	

CHAPTER VIII.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 39.

Words of the fourth declension end, in the nominative either in **us** (masc. and fem.), or in **u** (neut.).

SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>sens-ūs</i> , the sense.	<i>corn-ū</i> , the horn.
Gen. <i>sens-ūs</i> , of the sense.	<i>corn-ūs</i> , of the horn.
Dat. <i>sens-ūi</i> , to the sense.	<i>corn-ū</i> , to the horn.
Acc. <i>sens-ūm</i> , the sense.	<i>corn-ū</i> , the horn.
Voc. <i>sens-ūs</i> , O sense !	<i>corn-ū</i> , O horn !
Abl. <i>sens-ū</i> , from the sense.	<i>corn-ū</i> , from the horn.

PLURAL.

Nom. <i>sens-ūs</i> , the senses.	<i>corn-ūa</i> , the horns.
Gen. <i>sens-ūum</i> , of the senses.	<i>corn-ūum</i> , of the horns.
Dat. <i>sens-ibus</i> , to the senses.	<i>corn-ibus</i> , to the horns.
Acc. <i>sens-ūs</i> , the senses.	<i>corn-ūa</i> , the horns.
Voc. <i>sens-ūs</i> , O senses	<i>corn-ūa</i> , O horns !
Abl. <i>sens-ibus</i> , from the senses.	<i>corn-ibus</i> , from the horns

§ 40.

Twelve words make the dative and ablative plural in *ibus*, instead of *ibus*; viz., 1, all dissyllables in *cus*; 2, five others.

Quercus, *spēcus*, *ācus*,
Arcus, *pēcu*, *lācus*,
Vēru, *tribus*, *artus*,
Portus, also *partus*.

<i>Quercus</i> , oak;	<i>pēcu</i> , cattle;	<i>artus</i> , member;
<i>spēcus</i> , cave;	<i>lācus</i> , lake;	<i>portus</i> , harbor;
<i>ācus</i> , needle;	<i>vēru</i> , spit;	<i>partus</i> , birth;
<i>arcus</i> , bow;	<i>tribus</i> , tribe;	

Portus has *portubus* and *portibus*.

§ 41.

The word *domus*, house, is declined partly after the fourth, partly after the second declension.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Nom. <i>dōmūs</i> , the house.	<i>domūs</i> , the houses.
Gen. <i>domūs</i> , of the house.	<i>domūum</i> and <i>domōrum</i> , of the
Dat. <i>domūi</i> (rarely <i>domō</i>), to the house.	houses. <i>domibus</i> , to the houses.
Acc. <i>domum</i> , the house.	<i>domos</i> (<i>domūs</i>), the houses.
Voc. <i>domus</i> , O house!	<i>domūs</i> , O houses!
Abl. <i>domō</i> (rarely <i>domu</i>), from the house.	<i>domibus</i> , from the houses.

REMARK.—*Domī* (old genitive) means only, at home; *domum* often means, home (motion towards); *domo*, from home.

§ 42.

Remark the following singularities:

1. *Tonitrus* (masc.), thunder, makes the plural, *tonitrua* (neuter).
2. The words *colus*, *cupressus*, *ficus*, *laurus* and *pinus* are of the second declension, but take also the cases in *us* and *u* of the fourth, thus: *colus* with *coli* and *colos*, *colu* with *colo*.
3. The dative-ending *ui* is sometimes contracted into *u*; thus: *equitatus*, dat. *equitatuī* and sometimes *equitatu*.
4. The gen. sing. *senati* instead of *senatus* is not in use.

§ 43.

RULES OF GENDER ACCORDING TO TERMINATION.

PRINCIPAL RULE.

Words in **us** are masculine ; those in **u** are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.

Nine words in **us** are feminine :

Porticus, hall ; *Quinquatrus, uum*, a Roman feast ; *ācus*, needle ; *fīcus*, fig ; *Idus, uum*, the Ides (middle of month) ; *dōmus*, house ; *mānus*, hand ; *ānus*, an old woman ; *tribus*, tribe.

§ 44.

WORDS FOR EXERCISE.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Adventus</i> , arrival ; | <i>ornātus</i> , ornament ; |
| <i>aestus</i> , heat ; | <i>principatus</i> , leadership ; |
| <i>audītus</i> , hearing ; | <i>quaestus</i> , gain ; |
| <i>cantus</i> , singing ; | <i>rēcītus</i> , return ; |
| <i>cāsus</i> , fall, case ; | <i>rīsus</i> , laughter ; |
| <i>currus</i> , wagon ; | <i>saltus</i> , leap ; |
| <i>cursus</i> , course, race ; | <i>senātus</i> , senate ; |
| <i>equitatus</i> , cavalry ; | <i>sīnus</i> , bosom ; |
| <i>exercītus</i> , army ; | <i>sōnītus</i> , sound ; |
| <i>fructus</i> , fruit ; | <i>spīritus</i> , spirit ; |
| <i>gustus</i> , taste ; | <i>tactus</i> , touch ; |
| <i>impētus</i> , attack ; | <i>transītus</i> , crossing ; |
| <i>luctus</i> , mourning ; | <i>ūsus</i> , use ; |
| <i>lūsus</i> , play, game ; | <i>versus</i> , verse ; |
| <i>magistratus</i> , magistrate ; | <i>vīsus</i> , sight ; |
| <i>mētus</i> , fear ; | <i>vultus</i> , mien ; |
| <i>morsus</i> , bite ; | <i>gēlu</i> , cold ; |
| <i>mōtus</i> , motion ; | <i>gēnu</i> , knee. |
| <i>olfactus</i> , smell ; | |

2. *fructus mātūrus*, ripe fruit ;
cursus cēler, swift race ;
arcus intentus, bent bow ;
cantus dulcis, sweet song ;
mānus pura, clean hand ;
lācus magnus, great lake ;
ornatus insōlens, unusual ornament ;
ācus aurea, golden needle.

CHAPTER IX.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 45.

THE nominative of the fifth declension ends in **ēs**.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	rēs ,	the thing.	<i>di-ēs</i> ,	the day.
Gen.	rēi ,	of the thing.	<i>di-ēi</i> ,	of the day.
Dat.	rēi ,	to the thing.	<i>di-ēi</i> ,	to the day.
Acc.	rēm ,	the thing.	<i>di-em</i> ,	the day.
Voc.	rēs ,	O thing !	<i>di-ēs</i> ,	O day !
Abl.	rē ,	from the thing.	<i>di-ē</i> ,	from the day.

PLURAL.

Nom.	rēs ,	the things.	<i>di-ēs</i> ,	the days.
Gen.	rērum ,	of the things.	<i>di-ērum</i> ,	of the days.
Dat.	rēbus ,	to the things.	<i>di-ēbus</i> ,	to the days.
Acc.	rēs ,	the things.	<i>di-ēs</i> ,	the days.
Voc.	rēs ,	O things !	<i>di-ēs</i> ,	O days !
Abl.	rēbus ,	from the things.	<i>di-ēbus</i> ,	from the days.

1. The other words of the fifth declension have no plural ; only the nom., acc., and voc. of some are found, especially of *species* and *spes* ; also of *acies*, *effigies*, *facies*, and *series*.

2. The genitive and dative **ēi** is sometimes contracted into **ē** or **i** ; as, *perniciē* or *pernicii*, instead of *pernicii*.

3. Some words of the fifth have a secondary form of the first declension ; as, *barbaries*, *ei*, and *barbaria*, *ae*, barbarity ; likewise *luxuries* and *luxuria*, luxury ; *segnities* and *segnitia*, sloth.

4. For the quantity in **rēi** and *diēi*, compare § 324, 2, note 1

§ 46.

RULES OF GENDERS.

Words of the fifth declension in **e-s** are feminine.

EXCEPTIONS.

Merīdies is masculine. *Dies* is masculine in the plural; in the singular, it is used in the masculine and feminine.

Merīdies, noon; *dies*, day.

Dies is feminine, especially in the meaning of time or term; **as**, *quod allatura est dies*; *praestituta die*.

WORDS FOR EXERCISE.

1. *Acies*, *ēi*, point, battle array; *fīdes*, *ēi*, faith;
effigies, image; *glācies*, ice;
mācies, leanness; *sēries*, row;
pernīcies, bane; *spēcies*, form, shape;
rābīes, rage; *spēs*, *ēi*, hope.
fācies, face;
2. *Planūties magna*, great plain;
effigies pulchra, beautiful image;
spes fallax, deceitful hope;
dies festus, feast-day.

CHAPTER X.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE DECLENSIONS.

§ 47.

DEFECTIVE AND REDUNDANT NOUNS.

(*Defectiva and Abundantia.*)

MANY words have no declension at all, or an incomplete one only; they are, therefore, called *defectiva* or defectives.

I. Words that are not declined at all, are called *indeclinabilia*. Indeclinables are:

1. Substantives: *fas*, right; *nefas*, wrong; *nihil*, nothing; *instar*, likeness; *mane*, dawn; *pondo*, weight.

Corona aurea libram pondo, a pound in weight; *corona pondo ducentum* (instead of *ducentorum*), of 200 pounds; *clarum mane*, bright morn; *multo mane* (as ablative) at early dawn; *mane*, early. *Instar veris*, like spring;

unus Plato mihi est millium instar, has with me the weight of thousands. Besides a few foreign words; as, *alpha, beta, gummi, epos, pascha, Bethle-hem, Abraham* (also *Abrahamus, i, o*, etc.).

2. Adjectives: *frugi*, honest; *nequam*, worthless; *quot*, how many (*tot, aliquot*); besides most of the cardinal numerals (§ 55). *Homo frugi*, an honest man; *frugi servum* (acc.), an honest slave; *homines nequam, hominum nequam, hominibus nequam*. Others are used only in connection with *esse*; as, *necesse est* and *opus est*, it is necessary; *praesto sum*, I am ready.

II. Words which have not all the cases, or only one case, are called *defectiva casibus*, defective in case.

1. Words with but one case (*monoptōta*): *dicis* and *nauci*, in *dicis causa*, for form's sake; *nauci non esse*, not to be worth a cent. *Derisui, despiciatui esse*, to be an object of derision, of contempt (with *esse*, § 208). *Venum*, for sale; and *peccum*, to destruction (with *ire* and *dare*, § 110; 1); *infittias ire*, to deny. *Natu*, by birth; as, *natu maior*, greater by birth, older; *noctu*, by night; *sponte*, freely, of one's own accord; as, *mea sponte feci*, I did it of my own accord; *tua sponte*, of thy own accord. *Jussu*, by order; as *iussu populū*, by order of the people; *iussu meo*, by my order; likewise *iniussu, monitu, rogatu* (§ 221; 2, 1).

2. *Diptōta* (with two cases) are *foras*, out (motion), and *foris*, without (place); *fors*, chance; and *forte*, by chance. *Triptōta* (three cases) are *nemo, nemini, neminem* (instead of the genitive, use *nullius*; instead of the ablative, *nullo*); also, *lues, luem, lue*, pestilence. *Tetraptōton* (four cases) is *dicionis, i, em, e* (from *dicio*, sway). Some are defective in the singular only; as, *compede, fauce, prece, verberare; opis, opem, ope; via, vim, vi* (with gen. and dat.), all with complete plural; *vicia, vicem, vice*, has only *vices, vicibus*, in the plural. Without nom. sing., otherwise complete, are *dapis* and *frugis* (*daps* and *frux* are wanting); single cases of other words do not occur; thus the gen. plur. of *luz, ōs (ōris), sol*. The genitive of *plerique*, most, is also wanting; instead of it, use *plurimorum, plurimarum*.

III. Some defectives have no plural, but only a singular (*singularia tantum*); as, *letum*, death; *meridies*, noon; *vesper*, evening; *ver*, spring; *virus*, poison; *vulgus*, people. As in English, a great many abstract and material nouns have no plural; as, *iuventus*, youth; *sapientia*, wisdom; *scientia*, science; *aurum*, gold; *sabulum*, sand; *cicer*, pease; *lac*, milk. *Faba abstinere*, to abstain from beans.

IV. Some defectives have no singular, but only the plural (*pluralia tantum*), especially:

1. *Deliciae*, delight;
divitiae, wealth;
indutiae, truce;
inimicitiae, enmity;

insidiae, ambush;
minae, threats;
mundinae, market-day;
nuptiae, wedding;

- reliquiae*, relics ;
tenēbrae, darkness ;
valvae, folding-door ;
Athēnae, Athens ;
Thebae, Thebes.
2. *Gemini*, twins ;
libēri, children ;
infērī, the dead ;
supērī, the gods ;
postērī, descendants ;
Fastī, calendar ;
Delphī, Delphi ;
Veī, Veji ;
arma, *ōrum*, arms ;
- asta*, bowels ;
spolia, spoils ;
Leuctra, Leuctra ;
Susa, Susa.
3. *Maiōres*, ancestors ;
optimātes, the aristocrats ;
penātes, the household gods ;
moenia, the walls ;
Saturnalia, the Saturnalia ;
Alpes, ium, the Alps ;
Gades, Cadiz ;
Sardes, Sardis ;
4. *artus, uum*, limbs.

V. Some words take a new meaning in the plural.

SINGULAR.

aedes, temple ;
aqua, water ;
auxilium, help ;
carcer, prison ;
castrum, castle, fort ;
copia, abundance, provision ;
finis, end, limit ;
fortuna, luck ;
impedimentum, obstacle ;
littera, letter (of alphabet) ;
(ops), help ;
rostrum, beak ;
sals, salt.

PLURAL.

aedes, ium, (1) temple, (2) house.
aquae, (1) waters, (2) baths. [*troopa*,
auxilia, (1) resources, (2) auxiliary
carceres, (1) prisons, (2) goal.
castra, camp.
copiae, (1) provisions, (2) troops.
fines, (1) limits, (2) territory.
fortuna, goods, possessions.
impedimenta, (1) obstacles, (2) baggage.
litterae, (1) letters, (2) writing, epistle.
opes, resources, wealth, influence.
rostra, (1) beaks, (2) tribuna.
sales, wit.

Opposed to the defectives (*defectiva*) are those which have an abundance of forms (*abundantia*), viz. :

VI. Words which follow partly one declension, partly another (*heteroclitā*—cf. § 32, 6 ; § 41 and 42, 2) ; thus, *vesper*, evening, is declined after the second ; but the abl. is *vespere* and *vesperī*, in the evening ; *vas*, vase, follows the third in the sing. ; *vasis*, *vasī*, *vas*, *vase*, whilst in the plural, it is of the second, *vasa*, *vasorum*, *vasis*. *Requies* (§ 34, 5) makes the acc. *requiētem* and *requiem*, abl. *requiētē* and *requiē*.

VII. Words which, in the plural, take a new gender (*heterogenēa*) ; as, *iocus*, jest, plur. *iocī* (masc.) and *ioca* (neut.), jests ; *locus*, place, plur. *locī*, passages (in books), and *loca*, places ; *frenum*, bridle, plur. *freni* and *frena*, bit ; *Tartārus, ī*, (masc.) ; plur. *Tartāra, orum*, (neut.), hell.

VIII. A number of words have, in the nom. sing., already, different forms, and are partly *heteroclitā*, partly *heterogenea*, partly both at the same time.

1. Only *heteroclitā* (the first form used in prose, the second in poetry) : *colluvio, onis*, and *colluvies, ei*, f., offscourings; *elephantus, i*, and *elephas, antis*, m., elephant; *iuventus, utis*, and *iuventa, ae*, f., youth; *paupertas, atis*, and *pauperies, ei*, f., poverty; *senectus, utis*, and *senecta, ae*, old age (cf. § 45, 3).

2. Only *heterogenea* : *baculum, i*, n., stick, (rarely *baculus*); *clipeus*, shield (rarely *elipeum*); *cubitus* and *cubitum*, elbow, ell; *pilleus* and *pilleum*, hat.

3. Both *heteroclitā* and *heterogenea* : *alimonia, ae*, f., and *alimonium, i*, n., food; *pecus, ūlis*, f., a head of cattle, and *pecu, n.*, from which *pecus* and *pecubus* (§ 40), also *pecus, ōris*, n., a herd of cattle; *conatus, us*, m., and *conatum, i*, n., undertaking; *praetextus, us*, m., and *praetextum, i*, n., pretext. Sometimes the meaning also changes: *epulum, i*, n., a (religious) banquet; *epulae, arum*, f., meal; *balneum, i*, n., bath; *balneae, arum*, f., baths, bath-house.

CHAPTER XI.

THE ADJECTIVE (ADJECTIVUM).

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 48.

THE adjectives (and participles) have either, 1, for each of the three genders a special termination (adjectives of three terminations); or, 2, for the masculine and feminine, one, and for the neuter, another termination (adjectives of two terminations); or, 3, for all three genders, only one termination (adjectives of one termination).

I. The adjectives of three terminations have the following endings :

1. **Us, a, um** ; as, *bonus, bona, bonum,*
amatus, amata, amatum.
2. **Er, a, um** ; as, *ruber, rubra, rubrum,*
asper, aspera, asperum.

The latter, except those mentioned in § 19, drop the **e** before **r**.

3. One adjective in **ur**, viz., *satur, satūra, satūrum, sated, filled*.
 4. **Er, is, e**; as, *acer, acris, acre*;
celer, celēris, celēre.

Of this last kind there are thirteen altogether, six of them in **ster**;
campester, campestris, e, belonging to *pedester*, belonging to the infantry,
 the field, flat; on foot;
equester, belonging to cavalry, on *silvester*, belonging to the wood,
 horseback; woody;
paluster, belonging to a swamp, *terrester*, belonging to the earth,
 swampy; earthy.

For the others, see § 28, 3, note.

The names of the months, September, October, November, and December, are also used as adjectives of three terminations of the third declension.

Some of the adjectives just mentioned have, in the masculine gender, sometimes the termination **is**; as, *equestris tumultus* and *equester tumultus*.

II. The adjectives of two terminations have the following endings:

1. **Is** (masc. and fem.); **e** (neut.); as,
facilis, facilis, facile;
suavis, suavis, suave.
 2. **Or** (masc. and fem.); **us** (neut.); as,
clarior, clarior, clarius;
maior, maior, maius;

and all comparative forms (§ 50).

Some adjectives have a double form, in **us, a, um**, and in **is, is, e**; as, *hilarus, a, um*, and *hilaris, is, e*, cheerful. Likewise some compound adjectives; as, *semiermus* and *semiermis*, half-armed; *exanimus* and *exanimis*, lifeless. They are consequently *abundantia* and *heteroclita* (§ 47, vi.).

III. The adjectives of one termination have the following endings:

1. In **s**, with a consonant preceding (and omitted *t*), as *constans*, constant; *prudens*, wise; *iners*, slothful; *biceps*, two-headed. (§ 27, 17 to 19), and all participles in **ns**.
 2. In **x**, (i. e., *cs*), as *audax*, bold; *supplex*, suppliant; *felix*, happy; *atrox*, fierce; *trux*, savage, (§27, 20 to 23).

3. In **es**, (*t* or *d* having been rejected); as *sospes, sospitiā*, safe; *teres, terētis*, round, cylindrical; *deses, desidis*, inactive, (§ 27, 12). In **os**: *compos, (impos), compōtis*, (§ 27, 14).

4. In **us**, only *vetus*, § 27, 15; all other adjectives in **us** have *us, a, um*.

5. In **er**, only four: *degener (congener), pauper, puber* and *uber*, (§ 28); in **or**, only one, *memor, (immemor, § 27, 9)*; in **ar**, only one, *par (impar, dispar, § 27, 7)*; in **ur**, only one, *cicur, tame*; in **l**, only one, *vigil, watchful*.

1. *Victor* may be used as an adjective; as, *victor exercitus*, the victorious army; *victrices litterae*, tidings of victory; *victricia arma*, victorious arms.

2. Besides the indeclinable adjectives (§ 47, I, 2), some others are defective. Thus, the nom. sing. mas. of *cetera, ceterum*; of *ludiora, ludiorum*; of *pleraque, plerumque*, is wanting. Of *caepes*, only the nom. sing. is found; of *pernox*, only nom. and abl. sing. (*pernocte*). Of some, the nom. plur. neut. (§ 82, 4, note) is wanting, others are *pluralia tantum*; as, *singuli, bini*; generally, also *pauoi* and *plerique*.

§ 49.

The adjectives, in Latin as in English, are compared by means of three degrees (*gradus*).

1. Positive degree (*gradus positivus*); fair, strong, fast.

2. Comparative degree (*gradus comparativus*); fairer, stronger, faster.

3. Superlative degree (*gradus superlativus*); fairest, strongest, fastest.

§ 50.

GENERAL RULE.

The comparative degree is formed by adding the termination **ior**, neut. **ius**, to the root of the adjective; the superlative is formed by adding **issimus** to the root.

The root of the adjective is found by dropping the case-ending of the genitive; thus, *clarus*, gen. *clar-i*, root *clar*; comp. *clarior, clar-ius*; sup. *clar-issimus (a, um)*; *prudens*, gen. *prudēt-is*, root *prudēt*, comp. *prudētior, sup. prudētissimus*.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>aptus</i> , fit ;	<i>aptior</i> , fitter ;	<i>aptissimus</i> , fittest ;
<i>dignus</i> , worthy ;	<i>dignior</i> , worthier ;	<i>dignissimus</i> , worthiest.
<i>firmus</i> , fast ;	<i>firmior</i> , faster ;	<i>firmissimus</i> , fastest.
<i>grāvis</i> , heavy ;	<i>gravior</i> , heavier ;	<i>gravissimus</i> , heaviest.
<i>nobilis</i> , noble ;	<i>nobilior</i> , nobler ;	<i>nobilissimus</i> , noblest.
<i>audax</i> , bold ;	<i>audacior</i> , bolder ;	<i>audacissimus</i> , boldest.
<i>fērox</i> , wild ;	<i>ferocior</i> , wilder ;	<i>ferocissimus</i> , wildest.
<i>diligens</i> , diligent ;	<i>diligentior</i> , more diligent ;	<i>diligentissimus</i> , most diligent.
<i>locuples</i> , rich ;	<i>locupletior</i> , richer ;	<i>locupletissimus</i> , richest
<i>dāves</i> , } rich.	<i>divitior</i> , } richer.	<i>divitissimus</i> , } richest.
(<i>dīs</i>), }	<i>ditior</i> , }	<i>ditissimus</i> , }

§ 51.

To the above principal rule remark the following exceptions :

1. The adjectives in **er** form the comparative according to the general rule ; but the superlative, by adding the ending **rimus** to the nominative sing. masc.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>crēber</i> , frequent ;	<i>crēbrior</i> , more frequent ;	<i>crēberrimus</i> , most frequent.
<i>niger</i> , black ;	<i>nigrior</i> , blacker ;	<i>nigerrimus</i> , blackest.
<i>asper</i> , rough ;	<i>aspērior</i> , rougher ;	<i>asperrimus</i> , roughest.
<i>liber</i> , free ;	<i>libērior</i> , freer ;	<i>liberrimus</i> , freest.
<i>acer</i> , sharp ;	<i>acrior</i> , sharper ;	<i>acerrimus</i> , sharpest.
<i>cēler</i> , swift.	<i>celērior</i> , swifter.	<i>celerrimus</i> , swiftest.

In like manner *vetus* forms the superlative *veterrimus* ; moreover, *nuper*, lately, adv., *nuperrime*. *Maturus*, ripe, makes *maturrimus* and *matursissimus*.

Of *dexter*, a comparative *dexterior*, more right, is found ; likewise, of *sinister*, *sinisterior* (retaining the *e*, though it is dropped in the gen.), more left.

2. Six adjectives in **ilis**, viz. :

Dissimilis, *similis*, *fācilis*,
Diffīcilis, *hūmilis*, *grācilis*,

form the comparative after the general rule ; the superlative, by changing the termination **ilis** into **illimus**.

<i>Dissimilis</i> , unlike ;	<i>dissimilior</i> , more unlike ;	<i>dissimillimus</i> , most unlike.
<i>similis</i> , like ;	<i>similior</i> , more like ;	<i>simillimus</i> , most like.
<i>facilis</i> , easy ;	<i>facilior</i> , easier ;	<i>facillimus</i> , easiest.
<i>difficilis</i> , difficult ;	<i>difficilior</i> , more difficult ;	<i>difficillimus</i> , most difficult.
<i>humilis</i> , low ;	<i>humilior</i> , lower ;	<i>humillimus</i> , lowest.
<i>gracilis</i> , slender.	<i>gracilior</i> , more slender.	<i>gracillimus</i> , most slender.

3. The compound adjectives in **dīcus**, **ficus**, and **vōlus**, make the comparative in **entior**, the superlative in **entissimus**.

<i>Maledīcus</i> , slanderous ;	<i>maledīcentior</i> ,	<i>maledīcentissimus</i> ,
<i>magnīficus</i> , magnificent ;	<i>magnificentior</i> ,	<i>magnificentissimus</i> ,
<i>benevōlus</i> , benevolent ;	<i>benevolentior</i> ,	<i>benevolentissimus</i> .

These forms must be traced from the words *maledicens*, *benevōlens*, and an imaginary form, *magnificens* (*faciens*). Compare in the same way *beneficus*, *maleficus*, *honorificus*, *malevolus*. *Egēnus*, needy, makes *egentior*, *egentissimus* ; *provīdus*, provident, *provīdentior*, *provīdentissimus* ; *validus*, strong, *valentior*, *valentissimus* (from *egens*, *provīdens*, *valens*).

§ 52.

The following adjectives contain greater irregularities :

1. Degrees from various stems.

<i>bōnus</i> , good ;	<i>mēlior</i> , better ;	<i>optīmus</i> , best.
<i>mālus</i> , bad ;	<i>pēior</i> , worse ;	<i>pessimus</i> , worst.
<i>magnus</i> , great ;	<i>māior</i> , greater ;	<i>maximus</i> , greatest.
<i>parvus</i> , small ;	<i>mīnor</i> , smaller ;	<i>mīnimus</i> , smallest.
<i>multus</i> , much.	<i>plūs</i> , more ;	<i>plūrimus</i> , most.

Plus is in the sing. always a substantive, neuter and defective, as the dat. and abl. are wanting. In the plur., *plures*, *plura*, *plurium*, *pluribus* are used as substantive and adjective. *Plures* has also a comparative meaning : i. e., more than : the compound *complures* means several ; it is never used in a comparative sense, and hence it can never be followed by *quam*.

2. Degrees from indeclinable words :

frūgi, (indecl.), honest; *frugalior*, *frugalissimus*;
nēquam, (indecl.), worthless; *nequior*, *nequissimus*.

3. Local adjectives with two irregular superlatives :

<i>extērus</i> , outward;	<i>extērior</i> , exterior;	<i>extrēmus</i> (rarely <i>extimū</i>), extreme;
<i>infērus</i> , below;	<i>inferior</i> , inferior;	<i>infimus</i> or <i>imus</i> , lower- most;
<i>postērus</i> , following;	<i>posterior</i> , posterior;	<i>postremus</i> , (<i>postūmus</i>), last, latest;
<i>supērus</i> , above;	<i>superior</i> , superior;	<i>supremus</i> , supreme, and <i>summus</i> , highest.

4. Degrees which have for their positive a preposition :

<i>citra</i> , on this side;	<i>citērior</i> , more on this side;	<i>citimus</i> , most on this side,
<i>intra</i> , inside;	<i>intērior</i> , inner;	<i>intimus</i> , innermost, inti- mate.
<i>prae</i> , before;	<i>prior</i> , prior, former;	<i>primus</i> , foremost, first.
<i>prope</i> , near;	<i>proprior</i> , nearer;	<i>proximus</i> , nearest.
<i>ultra</i> , beyond;	<i>ultērior</i> , ulterior, fur- ther;	<i>ultimus</i> , furthest, last.

5. Degrees with obsolete positive :

<i>detērior</i> , worse;	<i>deterrimus</i> , worst;	(positive <i>detor</i>).
<i>ocior</i> , swifter;	<i>ocissimus</i> , swiftest;	(positive <i>ocys</i>).
<i>potior</i> , preferable;	<i>potissimus</i> , most impor- tant;	(positive <i>potis</i>).

Instead of the superlative ending **Imus**, we find **ūmus**; as, *aptissimus*, *optumus*, etc. (cf. § 1, 6).

§ 53.

The adjectives in which the termination **us** is preceded by a vowel, form their degrees of comparison by means of the adverbs *magis*, more, and *maxime*, most, placed before the adjective.

<i>idonēus</i> , apt;	magis idoneus , more apt;	maxime idoneus , most apt.
<i>dūbīus</i> , doubtful;	<i>magis dubius</i> ,	<i>maxime dubius</i> .
<i>vācūus</i> , empty;	<i>magis vacuus</i> ,	<i>maxime vacuus</i> .

Those in **quus**, however, remain regular; as, *aequus*, just, *aequior*, *aequissimus*; *antiquus*, old, *antiquior*, *antiquissimus*.

As an exceptional case, note *assiduus*, *assiduior*, *assiduissimus*; also, *piissimus*, from *pius*.

1. Some adjectives have a superlative, but no comparative; as, *diversus*, different, *diversissimus*; *falsus*, false, *falsissimus*; *inclitus*, illustrious, *inclitissimus*; *meritus*, deserving, *meritissimus*; *novus*, new, *novissimus*, last; *sacer*, sacred, *sacerrimus*; *vetus*, old, *veterrimus*.

2. The substantive *senex*, old man, makes a comparative, *senior*, older; *adolescens*, young, and *iuvenis*, young man, *adulescentior* and *tunior* (from *iuvenior*); these have no superlative.

3. Many adjectives have neither comparative nor superlative, partly on account of their meaning; as, *Latinus*, *aureus*, *peregrinus*; partly for other reasons; as, in the compounds of **fer** and **ger** (§ 19), also, *vivus*, *merus*, *claudus*, *praeditus*, *inops*, *magnanimus*, *modicus*, *sonorus*, *crinitus*, etc. However, these also, when necessary, can be compared by means of *magis* and *maxime*; as, *magis Latinus*, more Latin; *maxime Latinus*, most Latin. Thus also, *magis diversus*, *magis falsus*, etc.

§ 54.

1. The comparative may be rendered by the positive with *too*; or sometimes by *somewhat*, *rather*, and the positive; in which latter instance *paulo* may be prefixed or omitted. Thus, *maior*, greater, and *too great*. *Senectus est paulo morosior*, old age is somewhat (rather) peevish. The superlative may be translated by the positive with *very*; as, *doctissimus*, most learned, *very* learned.

2. The English *than*, after the comparative, is expressed by *quam*; e. g., *praeceptor doctior est, quam discipulus*, than the pupil.

3. The English *still*, before the comparative, is omitted in Latin; as, *filius maior est, quam pater*, the son is still greater than the father. Sometimes it is translated by *etiam*.

4. *Much*, *far*, *by far*, before the comparative, is *multo*; e. g., *multo melior*, much better, *by far* better, *far* better.

5. *By far*, before the superlative, is *longe*, sometimes *multo*; as, *longe minimus* (*multo minimus*), *by far* the smallest.

6. *Even*, with the comparative and superlative, is translated by *vel*; as, *vel maior*, even greater, still greater even; *vel maximus*, even the greatest, the very greatest.

7. *As much as possible*, with the positive (*much*), is expressed in Latin *by quam*, with the superlative; as, *quam maximus*, as great as possible.

CHAPTER XII.

THE NUMERAL (NUMERALE).

§ 55.

I. CARDINAL NUMBERS.

Numeralia cardinalia.

(How many? Quot?)

1. I. *ūnus, a, um, one.*
2. II. *duo, duae, duo, two.*
3. III. *trēs, tria, three.*
4. IV. *quattuor (quatuor), four.*
5. V. *quinque, five.*
6. VI. *sex, six.*
7. VII. *septem, seven.*
8. VIII. *octo, eight.*
9. IX. *nōvem, nine.*
10. X. *dēcem, ten.*
11. XI. *undēcim, eleven.*
12. XII. *duōdēcim, twelve.*
13. XIII. *trēdēcim, thirteen.*
14. XIV. *quattuordēcim, fourteen.*
15. XV. *quindēcim, fifteen.*
16. XVI. *sēdēcim, sixteen.*
17. XVII. *septēdēcim, seventeen.*
18. XVIII. *duodeviginti, eighteen.*
19. XIX. *undeviginti, nineteen.*
20. XX. *vīginti, twenty.*
21. XXI. *viginti unus, or unus et viginti, twenty-one.*

II. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

Numeralia ordinalia.

(Which, or what in number, order? Quotus, a, um?)

- prīmus, a, um, first.*
- secundus, second.*
- tertius, third.*
- quartus, fourth.*
- quintus, fifth.*
- sextus, sixth.*
- septīmus, seventh.*
- octāvus, eighth.*
- nōnus, ninth.*
- dēcīmus, tenth.*
- undēcīmus, eleventh.*
- duodecīmus, twelfth.*
- tertius decimus, thirteenth.*
- quartus decimus, fourteenth.*
- quintus decimus, fifteenth.*
- sextus decimus, sixteenth.*
- septīmus decimus, seventeenth.*
- duodevicesīmus, eighteenth.*
- undevicesīmus, nineteenth.*
- vicesīmus (vigesīmus), twentieth.*
- unus et vicesīmus, or vicesīmus primus, twenty-first.*

22. XXII.	<i>viginti duo, or duo et viginti.</i>	<i>alter et vicesimus, or vicesimus alter.</i>
23. XXIII.	<i>viginti tres (tria), etc.</i>	<i>tertius et vicesimus, etc.</i>
28. XXVIII.	<i>duodetriginta.</i>	<i>duodetricesimus.</i>
29. XXIX.	<i>undetriginta.</i>	<i>undetricesimus.</i>
30. XXX.	<i>trīginta.</i>	<i>tricesimus (trigesimus).</i>
31. XXXI	<i>trīginta unus or unus et trīginta, etc.</i>	<i>unus et tricesimus, or tricesimus primus.</i>
40. XL.	<i>quadrāginta.</i>	<i>quadragesimus.</i>
50. L.	<i>quinguāginta.</i>	<i>quingagesimus.</i>
60. LX.	<i>sexāginta.</i>	<i>sexagesimus.</i>
70. LXX.	<i>septuāginta.</i>	<i>septuagesimus.</i>
80. LXXX.	<i>octōginta.</i>	<i>octogesimus.</i>
90. XC.	<i>nonāginta.</i>	<i>nonagesimus.</i>
98. XCVIII.	<i>octo et nonaginta, or nonaginta octo.</i>	<i>nonagesimus octavus.</i>
99. XCIX.	<i>novem et nonaginta, or nonaginta novem.</i>	<i>nonagesimus nonus, or undecentesimus.</i>
100. C.	<i>centum.</i>	<i>centesimus.</i>
101. CI.	<i>centum et unus, or centum unus.</i>	<i>centesimus primus.</i>
102. CII.	<i>centum et duo (ae, o), etc.</i>	<i>centesimus secundus, etc.</i>
200. CC.	<i>dūcenti, ae, a.</i>	<i>ducentesimus.</i>
300. CCC.	<i>trēcenti, ae, a.</i>	<i>trecentesimus.</i>
400. CCCC.	<i>quadrīngenti, ae, a.</i>	<i>quadrīngentesimus.</i>
500. ID or D.	<i>quīngenti, ae, a.</i>	<i>quīngentesimus.</i>
600. DC.	<i>sexcenti, ae, a (sescenti).</i>	<i>sexcentesimus.</i>
700. DCC.	<i>septīngenti, ae, a.</i>	<i>septīngentesimus.</i>
800. DCCC.	<i>octīngenti, ae, a.</i>	<i>octīngentesimus.</i>
900. DCCCC.	<i>nongenti, ae, a.</i>	<i>nongentesimus.</i>
1000. M.	<i>mille.</i>	<i>millesimus.</i>
2000. MM.	<i>duo millia (milia).</i>	<i>bis millesimus.</i>
3000. MMM.	<i>tria millia, etc.</i>	<i>ter millesimus.</i>
100000. CCCIDDD.	<i>centum millia.</i>	<i>centies millesimus.</i>

1. *Decem et sex* is sometimes used instead of *sedecim*; likewise, *decem et septem*, *decem et octo*, *decem et novem*, etc.

2. Higher numbers are: *ducenta millia*, etc. A million is *decies centena millia*; 1,100,000, *undecies centena millia*; 2,000,000, *vicies centena millia*.

§ 56.

All these numerals are adjectives. All the ordinal numbers are declined; of the cardinal numbers, only the first three are declined, and from *ducenti, trecenti, etc.*, to *nongenti*.

1. Nom.	<i>unus,</i>	<i>ūna,</i>	<i>unum,</i>	one.
Gen.	unius,	unius,	unius,	of one.
Dat.	uni,	uni,	uni,	to one.
Acc.	<i>unum,</i>	<i>unam,</i>	<i>unum,</i>	one.
Abl.	<i>unō,</i>	<i>unā,</i>	<i>unō,</i>	from, by, with one (cfr. § 25, 1).

2. Nom.	<i>duo,</i>	<i>duae,</i>	<i>duo,</i>	two.
Gen.	<i>duōrum,</i>	<i>duārum,</i>	<i>duōrum,</i>	(<i>duum</i> , § 25, 2), of two.
Dat.	<i>duōbus,</i>	<i>duābus,</i>	<i>duōbus,</i>	to two.
Acc.	<i>duos (duo),</i>	<i>duas,</i>	<i>duo,</i>	two.
Abl.	<i>duōbus,</i>	<i>duābus,</i>	<i>duōbus,</i>	from, by, with two.

Thus decline *ambo, ambae, ambo*, both.

3. Nom.	<i>trēs,</i>	<i>tres,</i>	<i>tria,</i>	three.
Gen.		<i>trium,</i>		of three.
Dat.		<i>tribus,</i>		to three.
Acc.	<i>tres,</i>	<i>tres,</i>	<i>tria,</i>	three.
Abl.		<i>tribus,</i>		from, by, with three

(After the third decl.)

4. *Ducenti, ae, a, etc.*, are regularly declined (after the second and first decl.).

§ 57.

1. *Mille* in the singular, is mostly used as an indeclinable adjective; as, nom. *mille equites*; gen. *mille equitum*; dat. *mille equitibus*; etc. The plural *millia* (after *maria*) is always a substantive and governs a genitive; as, *duo millia equitum*, two thousands of horsemen, 2,000 horsemen; *duobus millibus equitum*, to two thousands of horsemen, to 2,000 horsemen; but, *duo millia equitum et trecenti*, or *duo millia trecenti equites*, 2,300 horsemen.

NOTE 1.—From 20 to 100, either the smaller number with *et* is prefixed, or the larger without *et*. Above 100 the larger always precedes without *et*, or is followed immediately by *et*. But *et* is never put twice.

NOTE 2.—*Hundreds* or *thousands* is often used in English for a *great many*; in Latin, it is expressed by *sexcenti*, not *centum* or *mille*. *Sexcenti ceciderunt*, hundreds fell. When the ordinal number or the numeral adverb is used, *millesimus* and *millies* (not *sexcentessimus*, *sexcenties*) are the proper expressions.

2. Dates of years and hours of the day are, in Latin, expressed by ordinal numbers; *e. g.*, the year 1851 after the birth of Christ, *annus millesimus octingentesimus quinquagesimus primus post Christum natum*. In answer to the question, *When?* the ablative is used; in the year 1851, *anno millesimo octingentesimo quinquagesimo primo*. *Nonā horā*, at the ninth hour, at nine o'clock. *Quota hora est?* what o'clock is it? *Hora tertia*, three o'clock.

3. Twenty-one men is expressed by *unus et viginti homines*, or *homines viginti et unus* (very rarely *viginti unus homines* or *homo*).

§ 58.

III. DISTRIBUTIVE NUMBERS. IV. MULTIPLICATIVE NUMBERS.

Numeralia distributiva.

Numeralia multiplicantia.

(How many each time? *Quotēni?*)

(Numeral adverbs. How often? *Quoties?*)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Singūli</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>a</i> , one by one. | <i>sēmel</i> , once. |
| 2. <i>bīni</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>a</i> , two apiece,
two by two. | <i>bīs</i> , twice. |
| 3. <i>terni</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>a</i> , three apiece,
three by three. | <i>tēr</i> , thrice. |
| 4. <i>quāterni</i> . | <i>quāter</i> . |
| 5. <i>quīni</i> . | <i>quīnquēz</i> (<i>quīnquiens</i>). |
| 6. <i>sēni</i> . | <i>sexiēs</i> . |
| 7. <i>septēni</i> . | <i>septies</i> . |
| 8. <i>octōni</i> . | <i>octies</i> . |
| 9. <i>novēni</i> . | <i>nōvies</i> . |
| 10. <i>dēni</i> . | <i>dēcies</i> . |
| 11. <i>undēni</i> . | <i>undecies</i> . |
| 12. <i>duodēni</i> . | <i>duodecies</i> . |
| 13. <i>terni deni</i> . | <i>ter decies</i> , or <i>tredecies</i> . |
| 14. <i>quatēni deni</i> , etc. | <i>quater decies</i> , etc. |
| 20. <i>vicēni</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>a</i> . | <i>vicies</i> . |
| 21. <i>vicēni singūli</i> . | <i>semel et vicies</i> , or <i>vicies semel</i> |

22. <i>viceni bini.</i>	<i>bis et vicies, or vicies bis, etc.</i>
30. <i>tricēni.</i>	<i>trices.</i>
40. <i>quadragēni.</i>	<i>quadrages.</i>
50. <i>quingūgēni.</i>	<i>quingūgies.</i>
60. <i>sexagēni.</i>	<i>sexages.</i>
70. <i>septuagēni.</i>	<i>septuages.</i>
80. <i>octogēni.</i>	<i>octogies.</i>
90. <i>nonagēni.</i>	<i>nonages.</i>
100. <i>centēni, ae, a.</i>	<i>centies.</i>
101. <i>centēni singuli.</i>	<i>semel et centies.</i>
200. <i>ducentēni, ae, a.</i>	<i>ducenties.</i>
300. <i>treceni.</i>	<i>trecenties.</i>
400. <i>quadringeni.</i>	<i>quadringenties.</i>
500. <i>quingeni.</i>	<i>quingenties.</i>
600. <i>sexcenti.</i>	<i>sexcenties.</i>
700. <i>septingeni.</i>	<i>septingenties.</i>
800. <i>octingeni.</i>	<i>octingenties.</i>
900. <i>nongeni.</i>	<i>nongenties.</i>
1000. <i>singula millia.</i>	<i>millies.</i>
2000. <i>bina millia.</i>	<i>bis millies.</i>
3000. <i>terna millia, etc.</i>	<i>ter millies, etc.</i>
100,000. <i>centena millia.</i>	<i>centies millies.</i>

§ 59.

1. Form the Latin multiplication table thus: *bis bina sunt quattuor*, twice two are four; *bis terna sunt sex*, twice three are six; *septies novena sunt sexaginta tria*.

2. *Caesar et Ariovistus denos comites adduxerunt*, means Caesar and Ariovistus brought with them each ten companions. *Decem comites* would mean ten altogether.

3. Distributive numbers are further used with words that in Latin have no singular at all (§ 47, IV), or else have a different meaning in the singular. In English all such words are expressed in the singular, as *nuptiae, a*, the wedding; *castra, a*, the camp; hence, *binas nuptias*, two weddings, (not *duae*). Instead of *singuli* and *terni*, however, the Romans used, in this case, only *uni* (plural of *unus*) and *trini*; thus, *unae litterae*, one epistle (*singulae litterae*, single letters of the alphabet); *trinae aedes*, three houses (*tres aedes*, three temples). However, *duo liberi*, two children, because children is also plural in English (*bini liberi*, two children each; *terni liberi*, three children each).

4. The plural *binum, senum, denum*, is often used instead of *binorum, etc.* (§ 25, 2).

§ 60.

1. Multiplicatives (*multiplicativa*), answering to the question, *Quotūplex?* how many fold? *Simplex*, single; *duplex*, double; *triplex*, threefold; *quadrūplex*, fourfold; *multiplex*, manifold. Used always as adjectives and refer to numbers.

2. Proportionals (*proportionalia*), answering to the question, *Quotūplus?* how many times greater? *Simplum*, simple; *duplum*, twice as great; *tripulum*, three times as great; *quadruplum*, four times as great. Used mostly as substantives, and only in reference to the size.

Dimidius, a, um, half; *dimidia pars*, the half; *tertia pars*, one-third; *duae quintae*, two-fifths; *quattuor partes*, four-fifths (the denominator is not expressed, when it exceeds the numerator only by a unit).

§ 61.

1. *Primānus*, of the first division (class, legion); *secundānus*, of the second; *tertianus*, of the third. *Senarius*, containing six; *sexagenarius*, containing sixty (sixty years old).

2. *Primum*, first, for the first time; *secundo*, secondly; *iūrum*, the second time; *tertium*, thirdly, the third time; *quartum*, *quintum*, *sextum*, etc. More rare are *primo*, *tertio*, etc.

3. Remark also, 1) *bimus*, two years old; *trimus*, three years old; *quadrimus*, four years old. 2) Compounded with *annus*: *biennis*, of two years' continuance; likewise, *triennis*, *quadriennis*, *quinquennis*, (or rather *quinquennālis*), *sexennis*, *septennis*, and *decennis*; hence the substantives *biennium*, a period of two years; *triennium*, etc. 3) Compounded with *dies*: *biduum*, a period of two days; thus, *triduum* and *quadriduum*, and compounded with *mensis*: *bimestris*, of two months' duration; *trimestris*, *quadrimestris*, *quinquimestris*, *semestris*.

CHAPTER XIII.

THE PRONOUN (PRONOMEN).

§ 62.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

(Pronomina personalia.)

SINGULAR.

Nom.	<i>ĕgo</i> , I;	<i>tū</i> , thou;	—
Gen.	<i>meī</i> , of me;	<i>tuī</i> , of thee;	<i>suī</i> , of himself.
Dat.	<i>mīhi</i> , to me;	<i>tībi</i> , to thee;	<i>sībi</i> , to himself (herself, itself).
Acc.	<i>mē</i> , me;	<i>tē</i> , thee;	<i>sē</i> , himself.
Abl.	<i>mē</i> , with, from, &c., me.	<i>tē</i> , with thee.	<i>sē</i> , with himself (herself, itself).

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>nōs</i> , we;	<i>vōs</i> , you;	—
Gen.	{	<i>nostrī</i> , of us;	<i>vestrī</i> , of you;
		<i>nostrum</i> , among us;	<i>vestrum</i> , among you;
			<i>sui</i> , of themselves.
Dat.	<i>nōbīs</i> , to us;	<i>vōbīs</i> , to you;	<i>sībi</i> , to themselves.
Acc.	<i>nōs</i> , us;	<i>vōs</i> , you;	<i>sē</i> , themselves.
Abl.	<i>nōbīs</i> , with us;	<i>vōbīs</i> , with you;	<i>sē</i> , with themselves.

Nostrum, *vestrum* are the partitive genit. (§ 212) of *nos*, *vos*, and very rarely used for *nostrī*, *vestrī*.

§ 63.

1. The preposition *cum*, with, which governs the ablative, always follows the personal pronoun; thus, *mecum*, with me (not *cum me*); *tecum*, with thee; *secum*, with himself; *nobiscum*, with us; *vobiscum*, with you.

2. The syllable *met* may be joined for the sake of emphasis to all these forms, except *tu* and the gen. plur.; thus, *egomet*, *vosmet*, *sībimet* (*egomet ipse*, *vosmet ipsi*, *sībimet ipsi*), etc. *Tu* is strengthened by appending the syllable *te*, therefore, *tute*; but *tui**met*, *tībimet*, etc. In like manner,

the form *se* is often reduplicated for the sake of emphasis; *esse* for *se* (rarely *tete*, *meme*).

3. The poets often say *mi* instead of *mihī* (like *nīl* instead of *nīhī*).

4. The pronoun *sui*, *sibi*, *se*, is also called reflexive pronoun, because it *points back* to the subject of the sentence.

§ 64.

II. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

(*Pronomina demonstrativa.*)

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
Nom.	<i>hīc,</i>	<i>haec,</i>	<i>hōc,</i>	this.
Gen.		<i>hūius,</i>		of this.
Dat.		<i>hūic,</i>		to this.
Acc.	<i>hunc,</i>	<i>hanc,</i>	<i>hōc,</i>	this.
Abl.	<i>hōc,</i>	<i>hāc,</i>	<i>hōc,</i>	with, by, from this.

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>hī,</i>	<i>hae,</i>	<i>haec,</i>	these.
Gen.	<i>hōrum,</i>	<i>hārum,</i>	<i>hōrum,</i>	of these.
Dat.		<i>hīs,</i>		to these.
Acc.	<i>hōs,</i>	<i>hās,</i>	<i>haec,</i>	these.
Abl.		<i>hīs,</i>		with, by, from these.

Hīc is sometimes used instead of *hic*; likewise *hosce*, *haece*, *hisce*, *huiusce*, rarely *haece*, *horumce*, etc.; with the interrogative particle *ne* joined to it, *Hīcine?* this here?

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
1. Nom.	<i>istē,</i>	<i>istā,</i>	<i>istūd,</i>	that.
Gen.		<i>istūus,</i>		of that.
Dat.		<i>istī,</i>		to that.
Acc.	<i>istum,</i>	<i>istam,</i>	<i>istūd,</i>	that.
Abl.	<i>istō,</i>	<i>istā,</i>	<i>istō,</i>	with, from, by that.

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>istī,</i>	<i>istae,</i>	<i>istā,</i>	those.
Gen.	<i>istōrum,</i>	<i>istārum,</i>	<i>istōrum,</i>	of those.
Dat.		<i>istīs,</i>		to those.
Acc.	<i>istōs,</i>	<i>istās,</i>	<i>istā,</i>	those.
Abl.		<i>istīs.</i>		with, by, from those.

3. *Ille, illa, illud*, that, is exactly declined like *iste, ista, istud*; *olli* for *illi*, in Virgil.

1. The demonstrative *hic* mostly points to the speaker or the first person, and whatever is connected with it; *iste* to the second person, *ille* to the third.

2. From a combination of *iste* and *ille* with *hic*, are formed the compounds *istic, istaec, istoc*, or *istuc*, and *illie, illaec, illoc*, or *illuc*. They are declined like *hic*, with the exception of the gen. and dat., which are wanting; thus, acc. *istunc, istanc, istoc*, or *istuc*; abl. *istoc, istac, istoo*; in the plur. only *istaec* and *illaec*. Most of these forms are rarely used.

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
4. Nom.	<i>ipsē,</i>	<i>ipsā,</i>	<i>ipsum,</i>	I myself, thou thyself, he, himself, she herself, itself.
Gen.		<i>ipsius,</i>		of myself, thyself, &c.
Dat.		<i>ipsi,</i>		to myself, thyself, &c.
Acc.	<i>ipsum,</i>	<i>ipsam,</i>	<i>ipsum,</i>	myself, thyself, &c.
Abl.	<i>ipsō,</i>	<i>ipsā,</i>	<i>ipsō,</i>	by, with myself, thyself, &c.

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>ipsī,</i>	<i>ipsae,</i>	<i>ipsā.</i>
Gen.	<i>ipsōrum,</i>	<i>ipsārum,</i>	<i>ipsōrum.</i>
Dat.		<i>ipsis.</i>	
Acc.	<i>ipsōs,</i>	<i>ipsās,</i>	<i>ipsā.</i>
Abl.		<i>ipsis.</i>	

§ 65.

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
5. Nom.	<i>is,</i>	<i>ēa,</i>	<i>id,</i>	he, she, it, or that.
Gen.		<i>ēius,</i>		of him, his, her, its, &c.
Dat.		<i>ei,</i>		to him, &c.
Acc.	<i>eum,</i>	<i>eam,</i>	<i>id,</i>	him, &c.
Abl.	<i>eō,</i>	<i>eā,</i>	<i>eō,</i>	by, with him, &c.

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>ii (ei),</i>	<i>eae,</i>	<i>eā,</i>	they, those.
Gen.	<i>eōrum,</i>	<i>eārum,</i>	<i>eōrum,</i>	of them, their.
Dat.		<i>iīs</i> or <i>eīs,</i>		to them.
Acc.	<i>eōs,</i>	<i>eās,</i>	<i>eā,</i>	them, those.
Abl.		<i>iīs</i> or <i>eīs,</i>		by, with them.

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
6. Nom.	<i>īdem,</i>	<i>eādem,</i>	<i>īdem,</i>	the same.
Gen.		<i>eiusdem,</i>		of the same.
Dat.		<i>eīdem;</i>		to the same.
Acc.	<i>eundem,</i>	<i>eandem,</i>	<i>īdem,</i>	the same.
Abl.	<i>eōdem,</i>	<i>eādem,</i>	<i>eōdem,</i>	with, by, from the same.

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>īdem,</i>	<i>eaedem,</i>	<i>eādem,</i>	the same.
Gen.	<i>eorundem,</i>	<i>earundem,</i>	<i>eorundem,</i>	of the same.
Dat.		<i>iīdem</i> or <i>eīdem,</i>		to the same.
Acc.	<i>eōsdem,</i>	<i>eūsdem,</i>	<i>eādem,</i>	the same.
Abl.		<i>iīdem</i> or <i>eīdem,</i>		with, by, from the same.

īdem is formed from *is* and the strengthening suffix *dem*.

§ 66.

III. RELATIVE PRONOUN.

(*Pronomen relativum.*)

SINGULAR.

Nom.	<i>quī,</i>	<i>quae,</i>	<i>quōd,</i>	who, which, that.
Gen.		<i>cūius,</i>		of whom, whose.
Dat.		<i>cūi,</i>		to whom.
Acc.	<i>quem,</i>	<i>quam,</i>	<i>quōd,</i>	whom, which.
Abl.	<i>quō,</i>	<i>quā,</i>	<i>quō,</i>	by, with, from whom

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>quī,</i>	<i>quae,</i>	<i>quae,</i>	who, which.
Gen.	<i>quōrum,</i>	<i>quārum,</i>	<i>quōrum,</i>	of whom.
Dat.		<i>quībus,</i>		to whom.
Acc.	<i>quōs,</i>	<i>quās,</i>	<i>quae,</i>	whom.
Abl.		<i>quībus,</i>		by, from, with whom.

1. *Quoecum*, with whom, is generally used instead of *cum quo* (cfr. § 63); likewise *quacum*, *quibuscum*; however, *cum quo*, *cum qua*, *cum quibus*, are also used.

2. An old abl. sing. is *qui*; it is used 1) as interrogative adverb; e. g., *Qui fit?* how does it happen? 2) In *quicum*, instead of *quocum*. An old abl. plur. is *quis* for *quibus* (*quibus* and *quibus*, for *cuius* and *cui*, are antiquated).

§ 67.

IV. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

(*Pronomina interrogativa.*)

1. Masc. *Quis?* who? which? what? *Qui?* who? what?
Fem. *Quae?* Neut. *Quid?* *Quod?*

Quis is mostly substantive, *quid* always; *quod* is adjective. *Quis* inquires for the name, *qui* for the character or quality. *Quis vir?* *Caesar*. What is the man's name? *Caesar*. *Qui vir?* what kind of a man? *Bonus vir*, the good man.

They are declined like the relative; hence, gen. *cuius?* dat. *cui?* acc. *quem?* *quam?* *quid?* and *quod?* abl. *quo?* *qua?* *quo?* (*qui?*).

2. Also *numquis?* who? *numqui*, *numquae*, *numquid?* *numquod?* Moreover, *quisnam?* who? *quinam?* *quaenam?* *quidnam?* *quodnam?* Also *ecquis?* who? *ecquid?* what? They are declined like *quis*; *num*, *nam*, and *ec*, remaining unchanged; therefore, gen. *numcuius*, *cuiusnam*, *ecuius*, dat. *numcui*, *cui*, *ecui*, etc.

3. *Uter*, *utra*, *utrum?* which of the two? (§ 25, 1.) e. g., *uter oculus?* which eye? *utra manus?* which hand? but *quis discipulorum?*

§ 68.

V. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

(*Pronomina indefinita.*)

1. *Quicumque*, *quaecumque*, *quodcumque*, whatsoever. It is declined like *qui*, *quae*, *quod*; *cumque* is invariable; in the plural, *all who*.

2. *Quisquis*, whosoever; *quidquid*, whatsoever. Besides these two forms, only the abl. *quoquo* is used; as, *quoquo modo*, in whatsoever manner.

Quicumque is mostly adjective, *quisquis* is substantive.

3. *Quis* (*qui*), *quae* (*qua*), *quid* and *quod*, some one, something, any one; declined like *quis*? Plur. neut. mostly *qua*.

4. *Aliquis (aliqui), aliqua, aliquid, and aliquod, some one, something; like quis, except sing. fem. aliqua, and plur. neut. only aliqua.*

5. *Quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam, and quodpiam, some one, something; like quis.*

6. *Quidam, quaedam, quiddam, and quoddam, a certain one; like quis, but before d, an n instead of an m; hence, quendam, quandam, quorundam.*

7. *Quisquam, neut. quidquam (quicquam), some one, something; without feminine or plural, otherwise like quis.*

8. *Quisque, quaeque, quidque, and quodque, each one (among many).*

9. *Quivis, quaevis, quidvis, and quodvis, any one you please.*

10. *Quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet, and quodlibet, any one you please.*

11. *Unusquisque, unaquaeque, unumquidque, and unumquodque, each one.*

Both parts of the words are declined; hence, gen. *uniuscuiusque, dat. unicuique, acc. unumquemque, unamquamque, unumquidque, or unumquodque, abl. unoquoque, unaquaque.*

12. *Ullus, a, um, any, any one (§ 25, 1).*

13. *Uterque, utraque, utrumque, both one and the other, each of two.*

14. *Utervis, utravis, utrumvis, either one of the two, which you please.*

15. *Uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet, either of the two.*

16. *Utercunque, utracunque, utrumcunque, whichever of the two.*

17. *Alteruter, alterautra, alterumutrum, one of the two, either.*

Alter and *uter* are both declined; however, *alter* remains sometimes undeclined; hence, gen. *alteriusutrius* or *alterutrius, etc.*

18. Negative pronouns are *nemo* (§ 47, II, 2), nobody, opposed to *aliquis*, some one; *nilil*, nothing, opposed to *aliquid*, something; *nullus, a, um*, not any, opposed to *ullus*, any; *neuter, tra, trum*, neither of two, opposed to *alteruter* and *uterque*.

NOTES.—1. The neuters formed with *quid* are all substantives; those with *quod*, adjectives; thus, *aliquid ingenii*, but *aliquod ingenium*. The masculines formed with *quis* are mostly substantives; those with *qui*, adjectives. *Nemo* and *quisquam* are substantives; *nullus* and *ullus*, adjectives.

2. *Quis, qua, quid* (also *qui, quae, quod*), are mostly used instead of *aliquis* and *quisquam*, after *ne, num, si, nisi, quo* (§ 171, etc.), and sometimes also after other relatives; hence, *nequid nimis*; *si quis dubitat*; *num quas te vexat cura?* With emphasis, *si quisquam, num aliquid*.

3. *Aliquis, quispiam*, and *quidam*, are mostly used in affirmative sentences; *quisquam* and *ullus*, in negative sentences. *Dicet aliquis*. Yes, some one will say. *Quisquam hoc dicet?* requiring the answer, No one will say this. Hence, only *sine ulla spe*, without any hope, not *aliqua* (still less *omni*); *sine* has a negative power. Nevertheless, *non sine aliqua spe = cum aliqua spe*.

4. *Quisque* always follows an emphasized word as enclitic. This word is generally either, 1) a reflexive; *sum cuique* tribue; or 2) a relative; *quo quisque est ingeniosior, eo docet laboriosius*; or 3) a superlative; *optimus quisque gloria maxime ducitur*; or 4) an ordinal numeral; *decimum quemque securi percuti iussit*. *Quarto quoque anno*, every fourth year, every four years.

§ 69.

VI. ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

(*Adiectiva pronominalia*.)

1. The possessive pronouns, *pronomina possessiva*: *Meus, a, um*, my; *tuus, a, um*, thy; *suus, a, um*, his; *noster, nostra, nostrum*, our; *vester, vestra, vestrum*, your; *suus, a, um*, their.

1. From *noster* and *vester* are formed the *pronomina gentilitia*; *nostras*, of our country; *vestras*, of your country; as, *nostrates*, our countrymen; *nostratia verba*, words in use with us. From the gen. *cuius* is likewise formed *cuius*, from what country? The possessive, *cuius, cuia, cuium*, whose? is rare.

2. To *suo* and *sua* (abl.) is sometimes added, for the sake of emphasis, the syllable *pte*; as, *suopte pondere*, by his own weight; *suoapte manu*. In like manner, but rarely, *meamet, suamet* (neut. plur.).

2. THE CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS (*pronomina correlativa*):

INTERROGATORY AND RELATIVE.	DENOMINATIVE.	INDEFINITE.
a. <i>Quālis, e,</i> of which (what) kind ? such as.	<i>tālis, e,</i> of such kind.	
b. <i>Quantus, a, um,</i> (so great) how great.	<i>tantus, a, um,</i> so great.	<i>aliquantus, a, um,</i> of considerable size.
c. <i>Quōt (indecl.),</i> (so many) as, how many ?	<i>tōt (indecl.),</i> so many.	<i>ālīquot (indecl.),</i> a certain number, some.

1. Moreover, *qualiscunque*, of whatsoever kind; *quantuscunque*, how great soever; *quotcunque* and *quotquot*, how many soever; *totidem*, just as many; *quotus* and *quotusquisque*, which one, in number or rank ?

2. The interrogative correlatives are at the same time relatives, and then correspond to the English *as*. *Vir talis qualis Africanus*, a man such as Africanus; *exercitus tantus, quantus nunquam antea fuit*, such as; *tot victoriae, quot pugnae*, as many victories as battles (in such cases, never *et* or *quam*).

CHAPTER XIV.

§ 70.

THE VERB (VERBUM).

I. THE Latin language has three forms of the verb, *genera verbi*, viz.:

1. The **active form**, *genus actīvum*, which signifies an action; as, *laudo*, I praise.
2. The **passive form**, *genus passīvum*, which signifies suffering; as, *laudor*, I am praised.
3. The **deponent form**, *genus depōnens*, a middle form, a verb with passive form and active meaning; as, *hortor*, I exhort.

1. The expression, *genera verbi*, suggests the analogy with the genders of nouns; the active corresponds to the masculine, the passive to the feminine, the deponent (laying aside) to the neuter.

II. *Active* and *deponent* verbs are either :

1. Transitive (*transitīva*); as, *laudo* and *hortor*; e. g., *discipulum*, I praise or exhort the pupil; or,
2. Intransitive or Neuter (*intransitīva, neutra*); as, *dormio*, I sleep; *orior*, I rise. Transitive verbs can form a complete passive; not so, intransitives.

The semi-deponent (*semideponentia*), vide § 115; the neuter-passive (*neutropassiva*), § 144, 2, note 1.

§ 71.

To the conjugation or inflection of the verb belong :

I. THE MOODS (MODI) AND THE PARTICIPIALS.

- A. 1. The Indicative Mood (*modus indicatīvus*), asserts a fact; as, *laudat*, he praises.
2. The Subjunctive Mood (*modus coniunctīvus*) is the conditional or dependent mood; *laudet*, he may praise.
3. The Imperative Mood (*modus imperatīvus*) is the mood of command; *lauda*, praise thou.

B. Middle forms or participials (being partly verb, partly noun) :

1. Infinitive (*infinitīvus*); as, *laudare*, to praise.
2. Gerund (*gerundium*); as, *laudandi*, of praising.
3. Supine (*supīnum*); as, *laudātu*, to praise, to be praised.
4. Participle (*participium*); as, *laudans*, praising.

Indicative, subjunctive, and imperative are moods, and express a limited or finite action or condition of a subject (finite verb, *verbum finitum*); infinitive, gerund, supine, and participle are participials, and express no definite action or condition of the subject (*verbum infinitum*).

II. TENSES.

(*Tempora.*)

1. Present (*praesens*); *laudo*, I praise (now).
2. Imperfect (*imperfectum*); as, *laudābam*, I praised (then).

3. Future (*futurum*); as, *laudābo*, I shall praise (hereafter).
4. Perfect (*perfectum*); *laudāvi*, I have praised.
5. Pluperfect (*plusquamperfectum*); as, *laudavēram*, I had praised.
6. Future perfect (*futurum exactum*); as, *laudavēro*, I shall have praised.

The imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect are called past tenses (*tempora prætērīta*).

III. NUMBER.

(*Numērus*.)

The number is either singular or plural. In each number the verb has three persons, the first (the person who speaks); the second (the person spoken to); the third (the person spoken of).

The tense of the Latin verbs has personal terminations to express the different persons, sing. and plur., thus avoiding the use of the pronouns. In this point it differs from all modern languages; *laudo*, I praise; *laudas*, thou praisest, etc.

CHAPTER XV.

THE AUXILIARY VERB ESSE, TO BE.

§ 72.

A. INDICATIVE.

B. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

	<i>Am.</i>	<i>May or can be, that I be.</i>
S. 1st pers.	<i>sum</i> , I am.	<i>Sim</i> , I may or can be.
2d "	<i>ēs</i> , thou art (you are).	<i>sīs</i> , thou mayest be (you may be).
3d "	<i>est</i> , he, she, it is.	<i>sīt</i> , he may be.
P. 1st	<i>sūmus</i> , we are.	<i>sīmus</i> , we can be.
2d "	<i>estis</i> , you are.	<i>sītis</i> , you may be.
3d "	<i>sunt</i> , they are.	<i>sīnt</i> , they may be.

IMPERFECT.

Was, used to be.

Might be, that I were.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>S. 1. <i>Ēram</i>, I was.</p> <p>2. <i>ĕrās</i>, thou wast (you were).</p> <p>3. <i>ĕrāt</i>, he, she, it was.</p> <p>P. 1. <i>erāmus</i>, we were.</p> <p>2. <i>erātis</i>, you were.</p> <p>3. <i>ĕrant</i>, they were.</p> | <p><i>Ēssem</i>, I might be.</p> <p><i>essēs</i>, thou mightst be.</p> <p><i>essēt</i>, he might be.</p> <p><i>essēmus</i>, we might be.</p> <p><i>essētis</i>, you might be.</p> <p><i>essent</i>, they might be.</p> |
|--|--|

FUTURE.

Shall or will be.

May be about to be.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>S. 1. <i>Ero</i>, I shall be.</p> <p>2. <i>ĕris</i>, thou wilt be (you will be).</p> <p>3. <i>ĕrit</i>, he, she, it will be.</p> <p>P. 1. <i>erimus</i>, we shall be.</p> <p>2. <i>eritis</i>, you will be.</p> <p>3. <i>erunt</i>, they will be.</p> | <p><i>futurus</i> (<i>a, um</i>), <i>sim</i>, I may be about to be.</p> <p><i>futurus sis</i>, thou mayest, &c.</p> <p><i>futurus sit</i>, he may, &c.</p> <p><i>futuri</i> (<i>ae, a</i>) <i>simus</i>, we, &c.</p> <p><i>futuri sitis</i>, you may, &c.</p> <p><i>futuri sint</i>, they may, &c.</p> |
|--|--|

PERFECT.

Have been, was.

May have been, that I have been.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>S. 1. <i>Fuā</i>, I have been.</p> <p>2. <i>fuistā</i>, thou hast been (you have been).</p> <p>3. <i>fuīt</i>, he, she, it has been.</p> <p>P. 1. <i>fuimus</i>, we have been.</p> <p>2. <i>fuistis</i>, you have been.</p> <p>3. <i>fuērunt</i> (<i>fuēre</i>), they have been.</p> | <p><i>Fuērīm</i>, I may have been.</p> <p><i>fuērīs</i>, thou mayst have been.</p> <p><i>fuērīt</i>, he may have been.</p> <p><i>fuērīmus</i>, we may have been.</p> <p><i>fuērītis</i>, you may have been.</p> <p>fuērīnt, they may have been.</p> |
|---|--|

PLUPERFECT.

Had been.

Might have, that I had, been.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>S. 1. <i>Fuēram</i>, I had been.</p> <p>2. <i>fuērās</i>, thou hadst been.</p> <p>3. <i>fuērāt</i>, he had been.</p> | <p><i>fuīsem</i>, I might have been.</p> <p><i>fuīssēs</i>, thou mightst have been.</p> <p><i>fuīssēt</i>, he might have been.</p> |
|---|--|

- P.** 1. *fuerāmus*, we had been. *fuissēmus*, we might have been.
 2. *fuerātis*, you had been. *fuissētis*, you might have been.
 3. *fuērānt*, they had been. *fuissent*, they might have been.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Shall have been.

- S.** 1. *Fuēro*, I shall have been.
 2. *fuēris*, thou wilt have been.
 3. *fuērit*, he will have been.
P. 1. *fuērīmus*, we shall have been. Wanting.
 2. *fuērītis*, you will have been.
 3. *fuērīnt*, they will have been.

§ 73.

C. IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

- SING.** 2. *Es*, be thou.
 — —
PLUR. 2. *este*, be ye.
 — —

FUTURE.

- SING.** 2. *Esto*, thou shalt be.
 3. *esto*, he shall be.
PLUR. 2. *estōte*, ye shall be.
 3. *sunto*, they shall be.

D. INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Esse, to be.

FUTURE.

- SING.** *Futūrum*, (*am*, *um*) *esse*, } or *fore*, to be
PLUR. *futūros* (*as*, *a*), *esse*, } about to be.

PERFECT.

Fuisse, to have been.

E. PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT.

FUTURE.

(*Ens*), being.

Futurus (*a, um*), about to be.

F. SUPINE and G. GERUND of *esse* are wanting.

§ 74.

1. Like *sum* are conjugated its compounds, viz. :

desum, I am wanting in.

insum, I am in.

intersum, I am in the midst of.

praesum, I am at the head of.

subsum, I am under.

supersum, I am above.

The following have a slight change in the prefix :

absum, **afui** (**afuturus**, **afore**), **abesse**, I am away, absent.

adsum, **adfui**, and **affui**, **adesse**, I am present.

obsum, **ofui**, **obesse**, I am in the way, hurtful.

prosum, **profui**, **prodesse**, I am useful.

Wherever, in *prosum*, the verb *sum* begins with a vowel, the letter **d** is prefixed to the verb (§ 185, note, *a*); as,

Prosum, **prodes**, **prodest**, **prosumus**, **prodestis**, **prosunt**; also, **proderam**, **prodessem**, **prodero**, **prodes**, **prodesse**; but **profui**, **pro futurus**.

For *possum*, vide § 138.

2. Neither *sum* nor any of its compounds has a present participle, except *praesens*, present, and *absens*, absent.

3. The personal pronouns, I, thou (you), he, she, it, we, you, they, are expressed in Latin, or joined to the verb, only when they are emphasized; as, thou hast been present, not I, **tu adfuisti**, non **ego**.

Fore and *forem*, vide § 153. Antiquated forms, *siam*, *sies*, *siet*, *sient*, for *sum*, *sis*, etc. They may be used in the solemn style.

CHAPTER XVI.

THE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

§ 75.

THERE are in Latin four conjugations, distinguished by the endings of the infinitive present. They are :

FIRST CONJ.	SECOND CONJ.	THIRD CONJ.	FOURTH CONJ.
āre, laud-āre, to praise.	ēre, mon-ēre, to advise.	ēre, leg-ēre, to read.	īre, aud-īre, to hear.

2. In order to conjugate a verb, the four roots or principal parts of the verb must be known. These are, *Present Indicative*, *Perfect Indicative*, *Supine* and *Present Infinitive*. From these all the other tenses are formed.

The four endings are as follows :

PRESENT IND.	PERFECT IND.	SUPINE.	PRESENT INF.
I. ō (from ao), laud-ō.	āvī, laud-āvī.	ātum, laud-ātum.	āre, laud-āre.
II. eo, mōn-eo.	uī, mon-uī.	ītum, mon-ītum.	ēre, mon-ēre.
III. o, lēg-o.	ī, lēg-ī.	tum, lec-tum.	ēre, lēg-ēre.
IV. io, aud-io.	īvī, aud-īvī.	ītum, aud-ītum.	īre, aud-īre.

NOTE.—The first conjugation contains over 1000 verbs; the second about 150, the third 300, and the fourth 100.

§ 76.

I. There are four methods or rules for obtaining the perfect:

1. Formation by the characteristic **v** or **u** (**v** wherever a vowel, and **u** wherever a consonant precedes); as, *lauda-v-i*; *dele-v-i*; *audi-v-i*; *dom-u-i*; *doc-u-i*; *col-u-i*.

2. Formation by the characteristic **s**, (besides modifications produced on the consonants preceding; *cf.*, Note 2); as, *man-s-i*; *ar-s-i* (for *ard-s-i*); *di-x-i* (for *dic-s-i*); *te-x-i* (for *teg-s-i*); *mul-s-i* (for *mulc-s-i*).

3. Formation by lengthening the root-vowel; as, *adi-ū-vi*, from *adiūvo*; *vīdi* from *vīdeo*; *lēgi* from *lēgo*; *vēni* from *vēnio*.

4. Formation by reduplication; *i. e.*, repeating the first consonant and the vowel which follows it, (if this is **a** or **ae** then **e** is substituted); as, *tō-tondi* from *tondeo*; *ōū-curri* from *curro*; *ōš-čidi* from *cado*.

Spondeo has *spo-pondi*; *disco*, *dīdici*; *sto*, *stēti* (the last from *sta-o*, like *dēdi* from *da-o*; § 78, note 1, *d*). In the compounds, however, the reduplication disappears; as, *detondeo*, perf. *detondi*; but it is retained in the compounds of *do*, *sto*, *sisto*, *posco*, and *disco*; sometimes also in those of *curro*.

II. The supines formerly had only the ending **tum**, which has often been changed into **sum**.

1. The supines in all the conjugations end mostly, (and in the first without a single exception), in **tum**.

2. In the second and third conjugation, the supine usually ends in **sum**, when the verbal root terminates with **d**, **t**, **rg**; as, *ar-sum* from *ard-eo*; *mis-sum* from *mitt-o*; *ter-sum* from *terg-eo*; *mer-sum* from *merg-o*.

Changes from the *present-root* in the perfect and supine.

NOTE 1. In the perfects, with **v** or **u**, the verbal root remains unchanged; the characteristic of the conjugation is sometimes kept, sometimes rejected; as, *am-ū-vi*, *mon-ūi*.

NOTE 2. The following consonant-modifications take place in the perfects in **si**, and the supines in **sum** and **tum**:

1. The letter **b** before **s** or **t** becomes **p**; as, *scribo*, *scri-p-si*, *scri-p-tum*, *scribere*.

2. A guttural, followed by **s** becomes **x**; followed by **t**, it becomes **c**; as, *dico*, *di-x-i*, *dictum*, *dicere*; *te-g-o*, *te-x-i*, *te-c-tum*, *tegere*; *co-qu-o*, *co-x-i*, *co-c-tum*, *coquere*; so, also, *tra-ho*, *tra-x-i*, *tra-c-tum*, *trahere*; and *ve-ho*, *ve-x-i*, *ve-c-tum*, *vehere*. The same occurs in *vivo*, *vixi*, *victum*, *vivere*; *struo* (*struoo*), *struxi*, *structum*, *struere*; *fluo* (*fluoo*), *fluxi*, *fluxum*, *fluere*. But if the guttural **c** or **g** is preceded by **l** or **r**, then the guttural is dropped before **si**, **sum**, and **tum**; as, *fulcio*, *fulsi*, *fuitum*, *fulcire*; *mergo*, *mersi*, *mersum*, *mergere*.

3. A dental is rejected before **s**; as, *claudo*, *clausi*, *clausum*, *claudere*; the preceding vowel becomes long; as, *divido*, *divisi*, *divisum*, *dividere*; sometimes the **s** is doubled; as, *concutio*, *concutsi*, *concutsum*, *concutere*.

4. The letter **p** is often inserted after **m**, before **si** and **tum**; as, *sumo*, *sumpsi*, *sumptum*, *sumere*.

NOTE 3. When the present has been strengthened by the insertion of **n** (**m**), the perfect and the supine reject this letter which does not really belong to the root of the verb; as, *vinco*, *vici*, *victum*, *vincere*; *frango*, *fregi*, *fractum*, *frangere*; *fundo*, *fudi*, *fusum*, *fundere*; *relinquo*, *reliqui*, *relictum*, *relinquere*; (*rumpo*, *rupi*, *ruptum*, *rumpere*).

§ 77.

From the four principal parts (primary tenses) all the other tenses are formed in the following manner:

I. From the present indicative are formed five tenses:

	I.	II.	III. IV.
	by changing <i>ō</i> into		
1) Imperfect indicative,	<i>ābam</i> ,	<i>bam</i> ,	<i>ēbam</i> .
2) First future indicative,	<i>ābo</i> ,	<i>bo</i> ,	<i>am</i> .
3) Present subjunctive,	<i>em</i> ,	<i>am</i> ,	<i>am</i> .
4) Present participle,	<i>ans</i> ,	<i>ns</i> ,	<i>ens</i> .
5) Gerund (fut. part. pass.),	<i>andi</i> ,	<i>ndi</i> ,	<i>endi</i> .

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
Thus, 1) <i>laud-ābam</i> ,	<i>monē-bam</i> ,	<i>leg-ēbam</i> ,	<i>audi-ēbam</i> .	
2) <i>laud-ābo</i> ,	<i>monē-bo</i> ,	<i>leg-am</i> ,	<i>audi-am</i> .	
3) <i>laud-em</i> ,	<i>monē-am</i> ,	<i>leg-am</i> ,	<i>audi-am</i> .	
4) <i>laud-ans</i> ,	<i>mone-ns</i> ,	<i>leg-ens</i> ,	<i>audi-ens</i> .	
5) <i>laud-andi</i>	<i>mone-ndi</i>	<i>leg-endi</i>	<i>audi-endi</i>	
	(<i>andus</i>),	(<i>ndus</i>),	(<i>endus</i>),	(<i>endus</i>)

II. From the perfect indicative active are formed five tenses :

- 1) Pluperfect indicative active, by changing **I** into **eram**.
- 2) Future perfect, " " **ero**.
- 3) Perfect subjunctive, " " **erim**.
- 4) Pluperfect subjunctive, " " **issem**.
- 5) Perfect infinitive, " " **isse**.

I II III IV.

- Thus, 1) *laudav-eram*, *monu-eram*, *leg-eram*, *audiv-eram*.
 2) *laudav-ero*, *monu-ero*, *leg-ero*, *audiv-ero*.
 3) *laudav-erim*, *monu-erim*, *leg-erim*, *audiv-erim*.
 4) *laudav-issem*, *monu-issem*, *leg-issem*, *audiv-issem*.
 5) *laudav-isse*, *monu-isse*, *leg-isse*, *audiv-isse*.

III. From the supine are formed three tenses :

1. The future participle active by changing **m** into **rus**; as, *laudatū-rus* (*a, um*), *monitū-rus*, *lectū-rus*, *auditū-rus*.

NOTE.—The following future participles are formed not from the existing, but from a supposed regular supine: as, *luvaturus*, *secaturus*, *sonaturus*, *luiturus*, *abnuiturus*, *partiturus*, *ruiturus*, *moriturus*, *nasciturus*, and *oriturus*; from *lavo* only *lavaturus*, and *fruo*, *fruiturus*; cfr. § 108.

2. The perfect participle by changing **m** into **s**; as, *laudatus*, *a, um*, *monitus*, *lectus*, *auditus*.

NOTE.—The perf. and pluper. ind. and subj. and fut. perf. are formed by adding to the perfect participle the tenses of **esse**; as, *laudatus* (*a, um*) *sum*, *sim*, *eram*, *essem*, *ero*, etc.

3. The future infinitive passive is formed by adding to the supine **iri** [pass. inf. of *ire*, to go]; as, *laudatum iri*, *monitum iri*, *lectum iri*, *auditum iri*.

IV. From the pres. infinitive are formed four tenses :

1. The present imperative active by dropping **re**; as *laudā*, *monē*, *legē*, *audī*.

2. The imperfect subjunctive active by adding **m**; as, *laudārem*, *monērem*, *legērem*, *audīrem*.

3. The present infinitive passive by changing **e** into **i**, except for the third conjugation, where **ere** is changed into **i**; as, *laudāri*, *monēri*, *legi*, *audīri*.

4. The imperative present passive, which is simply the form of the present infinitive active; as, *laudāre, monēre, legēre, audīre.*

V. The active tenses, ending in **o**, become passive by adding **r**, those in **m** by changing this letter into **r**. The compound tenses are excepted.

SYNOPSIS.

<i>Laudo (laudor),</i>	<i>laudavi,</i>	<i>laudatum,</i>	<i>laudare.</i>
<i>laudem (lauder),</i>	<i>laudaverim,</i>	<i>laudaturus,</i>	<i>lauda.</i>
<i>laudabam (laudabar),</i>	<i>laudaveram,</i>	<i>laudatus,</i>	<i>laudarem.</i>
<i>laudabo (laudabor),</i>	<i>laudavisse,</i>	<i>laudatus sum,</i>	<i>(laudarer.)</i>
<i>laudans,</i>	<i>laudavero,</i>	<i>(eram, ero),</i>	<i>laudari.</i>
<i>laudandus,</i>	<i>laudavisse,</i>	<i>laudatum iri,</i>	<i>laudare.</i>

§78.

PERSONAL TERMINATIONS.

I. INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE.

	FIRST PERSON.	SECOND PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.
SING.	o, m, i,	(i)s (sti),	(i)t.
PLUR.	(i)mus,	(i)tis (stis),	(u)nt (erunt).

II. INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE.

	FIRST PERSON.	SECOND PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.
SING.	r,	(ē)ris,	(i)tur.
PLUR.	(i)mur,	(i)mini,	(u)ntur.

III. IMPERATIVE.

A. ACTIVE.		B. PASSIVE.		
	SECOND PER.	THIRD PER.	SECOND PER.	THIRD PER.
SING	Pres., ā, ē, ē, i,	—	(ē)re,	—
	Fut., (i)to,	(i)to,	(i)tor,	(i)tor.
PLUR.	Pres., (i)te,	—	(i)mini,	—
	Fut., (i)tōte,	(u)nto,	—	(u)ntor.

1. In the inflection of the verb, distinguish the following elements or parts :

a) The *root* of the verb ; **laud**, root of *laudo* ; **mon**, root of *moneo*.

b) The *characteristic* of the verb, which in the first conjugation is **a** ; in the second, **e** ; in the fourth, **i** ; the third has none.

c) The *connecting vowel* is a short vowel which serves as a link between the root and the termination. It is mostly **i**, sometimes **e** ; and before **nt**, **u**. This is pointed out above in the paradigm by the parentheses.

d) The *termination*. The termination and connecting vowel remain unchanged only in the third conjugation. In *leg-ē-re*, the root is **leg** ; the connecting-vowel, **e** ; and the termination, **re**. In the other conjugations, the connecting-vowel is blended with the characteristic, except the **u** after **i**. Thus, *amāre* from *ama-ēre*, *amo* from *ama-o*, *amas* from *ama-is*, *amāt* from *ama-it*, etc. ; likewise, *monēmus* from *mone-imus*, *audi-mus* from *audi-imus*, *monent* from *mone-unt* ; but *audiunt*, *legunt*.

e) The *tense-sign*, by which the tense is known. Thus *laudabam* is recognized as the imperfect indicative from **ba** ; *laudavi* as perfect from **v**.

Hence in *aud-i-o-i-t*, the root is **aud** ; the characteristic of the fourth conj., **i** ; the tense-sign of the perfect, **v** ; the connecting vowel, **i** ; and the third personal ending **t**.

2. In parsing a verb, proceed in this manner : 1, person ; 2, number ; 3, tense ; 4, mood ; 5, voice ; as, *laudaremini*, second person, plural, imperfect, subjunctive, passive.

CHAP.

VIEW OF THE FOUR

I. AC-

§

A. INDI

PRESENT.

First Conjugation.

- S. 1. *laud-o*, I praise.
 2. *laud-ās*,
 3. *laud-at*,
 P. 1. *laud-āmus*,
 2. *laud-ātis*,
 3. *laud-ant*.

Second Conjugation.

- mōn-ĕo*, I advise.
mōn-ēs,
mōn-et,
mon-ēmus,
mon-ētis,
mōn-ent.

IMPERFECT.

- S. 1. *laud-ābam*, I was praising, I praised. *mōn-ēbam*, I was advising, I advised.
 2. *laud-ābas*, *mon-ēbas*,
 3. *laud-ābat*, *mon-ēbat*,
 P. 1. *laud-abāmus*, *mon-ebāmus*,
 2. *laud-abātis*, *mon-ebātis*,
 3. *laud-ābant*. *mon-ēbant*.

FUTURE.

- S. 1. *laud-ābo*, I shall praise. *mōn-ēbo*, I shall advise.
 2. *laud-ābis*, *mon-ēbis*,
 3. *laud-ābit*, *mon-ēbit*,
 P. 1. *laud-ābimus*, *mon-ēbimus*,
 2. *laud-ābītis*, *mon-ēbītis*,
 3. *laud-ābunt*. *mon-ēbunt*.

PERFECT.

- S. 1. *laud-āvī*, I have praised. *mōn-ūī*, I have advised.
 2. *laud-āvīstī*, *mon-uīstī*,
 3. *laud-āvīt*, *mōn-ūīt*,
 P. 1. *laud-āvīmus*, *mon-uīmus*,
 2. *laud-āvīstis*, *mon-uīstis*,
 3. *laud-āvērunt*. *mon-uērunt*.

TER XVII.

CONJUGATIONS.

TIVE.

79.

CATIVE.

PRESENT.

Third Conjugation.

lĕg-o, I read.

lĕg-is,

lĕg-it,

lĕg-ĭmus,

lĕg-ĭtis,

lĕg-unt.

Fourth Conjugation.

aud-ĭo, I hear.

aud-is,

aud-it,

aud-ĭmus,

aud-ĭtis,

aud-iunt.

IMPERFECT.

lĕg-ĕbam, I was reading, I read. *aud-iĕbam*, I was hearing, I heard.

lĕg-ĕbas,

lĕg-ĕbat,

lĕg-ĕbāmus,

lĕg-ĕbātis,

lĕg-ĕbant.

aud-iĕbas,

aud-iĕbat,

aud-iĕbāmus,

aud-iĕbātis,

aud-iĕbant.

FUTURE.

lĕg-am, I shall read.

lĕg-ēs,

lĕg-ēt,

lĕg-ĕmus,

lĕg-ĕtis,

lĕg-ent.

aud-ĭam, I shall hear.

aud-ĭēs,

aud-ĭet,

aud-ĭĕmus,

aud-ĭētis,

aud-ĭent.

PERFECT.

lĕg-i, I have read.

lĕg-isti,

lĕg-it,

lĕg-ĭmus,

lĕg-ĭtis,

lĕg-ērunt.

aud-ivĭ, I have heard.

aud-ivisti,

aud-ivit,

aud-ivĭmus,

aud-ivĭtis,

aud-ivērunt.

PLUPERFECT.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| S. 1. <i>laud-āvēram</i> , I had | <i>mon-uēram</i> , I had advised. |
| 2. <i>laud-āvēras</i> , [praised. | <i>mon-uēras</i> , |
| 3. <i>laud-āvērat</i> , | <i>mon-uērat</i> , |
| P. 1. <i>laud-āvērāmus</i> , | <i>mon-uērāmus</i> , |
| 2. <i>laud-āvērātis</i> , | <i>mon-uērātis</i> , |
| 3. <i>laud-āvērānt</i> . | <i>mon-uērānt</i> . |

FUTURE PERFECT.

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| S. 1. <i>laud-āvēro</i> , I shall have | <i>mon-uēro</i> , I shall have ad- |
| 2. <i>laud-āvēris</i> , [praised. | <i>mon-uēris</i> , [vised. |
| 3. <i>laud-āvērit</i> , | <i>mon-uērit</i> , |
| P. 1. <i>laud-āvērīmus</i> , | <i>mon-uērīmus</i> , |
| 2. <i>laud-āvērītis</i> , | <i>mon-uērītis</i> , |
| 3. <i>laud-āvērīnt</i> . | <i>mon-uērīnt</i> . |

§

B. SUB-

PRESENT.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| S. 1. <i>laud-em</i> , I may praise. | <i>mōn-ēam</i> , I may advise. |
| 2. <i>laud-ēs</i> , | <i>mōn-eās</i> , |
| 3. <i>laud-et</i> , | <i>mōn-ēat</i> , |
| P. 1. <i>laud-ēmus</i> , | <i>mon-eāmus</i> , |
| 2. <i>laud-ētis</i> , | <i>mon-eātis</i> , |
| 3. <i>laud-ent</i> . | <i>mōn-ēant</i> . |

IMPERFECT.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| S. 1. <i>laud-ārem</i> , I might praise. | <i>mōn-ārem</i> , I might advise. |
| 2. <i>laud-āres</i> , | <i>mon-āres</i> , |
| 3. <i>laud-āret</i> , | <i>mon-āret</i> , |
| P. 1. <i>laud-arēmus</i> , | <i>mon-erēmus</i> , |
| 2. <i>laud-arētis</i> , | <i>mon-erētis</i> , |
| 3. <i>laud-ārent</i> . | <i>mon-ārent</i> . |

PERFECT.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| S. 1. <i>laud-āvērī</i> , I may have | <i>mōn-uērī</i> , I may have ad |
| 2. <i>laud-āvērīs</i> , [praised. | <i>mon-uērīs</i> , [vised |
| 3. <i>laud-āvērīt</i> , | <i>mon-uērīt</i> , |
| P. 1. <i>laud-āvērīm</i> , | <i>mon-uērīm</i> , |
| 2. <i>laud-āvērītis</i> , | <i>mon-uērītis</i> , |
| 3. <i>laud-āvērīnt</i> . | <i>mon-uērīnt</i> . |

PLUPERFECT.

lĕg-ĕram, I had read.
lĕg-ĕras,
lĕg-ĕrat,
lĕg-erāmus,
lĕg-erātis,
lĕg-ĕrant.

aud-ivĕram, I had heard.
aud-ivĕras,
aud-ivĕrat,
aud-iverāmus,
aud-iverātis,
aud-ivĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

lĕg-ĕro, I shall have read.
lĕg-ĕris,
lĕg-ĕrit,
lĕg-ĕrĭmus,
lĕg-ĕrĭtis,
lĕg-ĕrint.

aud-ivĕro, I shall have heard.
aud-ivĕris,
aud-ivĕrit,
aud-ivĕrĭmus,
aud-ivĕrĭtis,
aud-ivĕrint.

80.

JUNCTIVE.

lĕg-am, I may read.
lĕg-ās,
lĕg-at,
leg-āmus,
leg-ātis,
lĕg-ant.

PRESENT.

aud-ĭam, I may hear.
aud-ĭās,
aud-ĭat,
aud-ĭāmus,
aud-ĭātis,
aud-ĭant.

IMPERFECT.

lĕg-ĕrem, I might read.
lĕg-ĕres,
lĕg-ĕret,
leg-erĕmus,
leg-erĕtis,
lĕg-ĕrent.

aud-ĭrem, I might hear.
aud-ĭres,
aud-ĭret,
aud-irĕmus,
aud-irĕtis,
aud-ĭrent,

PERFECT.

lĕg-ĕrim, I may have read.
leg-ĕris,
leg-ĕrit,
leg-ĕrĭmus,
leg-ĕrĭtis,
leg-ĕrint.

aud-ivĕrim, I may have
aud-ivĕris, [heard]
aud-ivĕrit,
aud-ivĕrĭmus,
aud-ivĕrĭtis,
aud-ivĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

- S. 1. *laud-avisse*m, I might have *mōn-uiss*e, I might have
 2. *laud-aviss*ēs, [praised. *mon-uiss*ēs, [advised.
 3. *laud-aviss*et, *mon-uiss*et,
 P. 1. *laud-aviss*ēmus, *mon-uiss*ēmus,
 2. *laud-aviss*ētis, *mon-uiss*ētis,
 3. *laud-aviss*ent. *mon-uiss*ent.

FUTURE.

- S. 1. } *laud-āt*urus { *sim*, I may be *mōn-īt*urus { *sim*, I may be
 2. } (*a, um*) { *sis*, [about to (*a, um*) { *sis*, [about to
 3. } { *sit*, [praise. } { *sit*, [advise.
 P. 1. } *laud-āt*uri { *simus*, *mon-īt*uri { *simus*,
 2. } (*ae, a*) { *sitis*, (*ae, a*) { *sitis*,
 3. } { *sint*. } { *sint*.

FUTURE PERFECT

§

C. IMPER-

PRESENT.

- S. 2. *laud-ā*, praise thou. *mōn-ē*, advise thou.
 P. 2. *laud-āte*, praise ye. *mon-ēte*, advise ye.

FUTURE.

- S. 2. *laud-āto*, thou shalt pr. *mon-ēto*, thou shalt advise.
 3. *laud-āto*, he shall praise. *mon-ēto*, he shall advise.
 P. 2. *laud-atōte*, ye shall pr. *mon-etōte*, ye shall advise.
 3. *laud-anto*, they shall pr. *mon-ento*, they shall advise.

§

D. INFIN.

PRESENT.

- aud-āre*, to praise. *mōn-ēre*, to advise.

PERFECT.

- aud-āvise*, to have praised. *mon-uisse*, to have advised.

FUTURE.

- S. *laud-āt*urum (*am, um*) *esse*, *mōn-īt*urum (*am, um*) *esse*,
 to be about to praise. to be about to advise.
 P. *laud-at*uros (*as, a*) *esse*. *mon-it*uros (*as, a*) *esse*.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>lēg-isse</i> m, I might have read.	<i>aud-ivisse</i> m, I might have
<i>lēg-issēs</i> ,	<i>aud-ivissēs</i> , [heard.
<i>lēg-isset</i> ,	<i>aud-ivisset</i> ,
<i>lēg-issēm</i> us,	<i>aud-ivissēm</i> us,
<i>lēg-issētis</i> ,	<i>aud-ivissētis</i> ,
<i>lēg-issent</i> .	<i>aud-ivissent</i> .

FUTURE.

<i>lec-tū</i> rus { <i>sim</i> , I may be about (<i>a, um</i>) { <i>sīs</i> , [read. <i>aud-itū</i> rus { <i>sim</i> , I may be	
{ <i>sīt</i> ,	{ <i>sīs</i> , [about to
<i>lec-tū</i> ri { <i>sim</i> us,	<i>aud-itū</i> ri { <i>sim</i> us,
(<i>ae, a</i>) { <i>sītis</i> ,	(<i>ae, a</i>) { <i>sītis</i> ,
{ <i>sint</i> .	{ <i>sint</i> .

is wanting.

81.

ACTIVE.

lēg-ēs, read thou.
lēg-ite, read ye.

PRESENT.

aud-i, hear thou.
aud-ite, hear ye.

FUTURE.

lēg-ito, thou shalt read.
lēg-ito, he shall read.
lēg-itōte, ye shall read.
lēg-unto, they shall read.

aud-ito, thou shalt hear.
aud-ito, he shall hear.
aud-itōte, ye shall hear.
aud-iunto, they shall hear.

82.

ITIVE.

lēg-ēre, to read.

PRESENT.

aud-ire, to hear.

PERFECT.

lēg-isse, to have read.

aud-ivisse, to have heard.

FUTURE.

<i>lec-tūrum</i> (<i>am, um</i>) <i>esse</i> , to be about to read.	<i>aud-itūrum</i> (<i>am, um</i>) <i>esse</i> , to be about to hear.
<i>lec-turos</i> (<i>as, a</i>) <i>esse</i> ,	<i>aud-ituros</i> (<i>as, a</i>) <i>esse</i> .

§

E. PAR-

PRESENT.

laud-ans, praising.*mön-ens*, advising.

FUTURE.

laud-äturus (*a, um*), about to
praise.*mön-üturus* (*a, um*), about to
advise.

§

F. GE-

Nom. *laud-andum est*, it must be praised, it is necessary to praiseGen. *laud-andi*, of praising. *mön-endi*, of advising.Dat. *laud-ando*, to praising. *mön-endo*, to advising.Acc. (*ad*) *laud-andum*, praising. (*ad*) *mön-endum*, advising.Abl. *laud-ando*, by praising. *mön-endo*, by advising.

§

G. SU-

laud-ätum, to praise.*mön-ütum*, to advise.*laud-ätu*, to praise, to be praised.*mön-ütu*, to advise, to be adv.

II. PAS-

§

A. INDI-

PRESENT.

*First Conjugation.**Second Conjugation.*S. 1. *laud-or*, I am praised.*mön-ör*, I am advised.2. *laud-äris*,*mön-öris*,3. *laud-ätur*,*mön-ötur*,P. 1. *laud-ämur*,*mön-ömur*,2. *laud-ämni*,*mön-ömi*,3. *laud-antur*.*mön-öntur*.

83.

TICIPLES.

PRESENT.

lĕg-ĕns, reading.

aud-iĕns, hearing.

FUTURE.

lĕc-tĕrus (*a, um*), about to read. *aud-itĕrus* (*a, um*), about to hear.

84.

RUND.

(§ 107, note 1).

lĕg-ĕndi, of reading.

aud-iĕndi, of hearing.

lĕg-ĕndo, to reading.

aud-iĕndo, to hearing.

(*ad*) *lĕg-ĕndum*, reading.

(*ad*) *aud-iĕndum*, hearing.

lĕg-ĕndo, by reading.

aud-iĕndo, by hearing.

85.

PINE.

lĕc-tum, to read.

aud-itum, to hear.

lĕc-tu, to read, to be read.

aud-itu, to hear, to be heard.

SIVE.

86.

CATIVE

PRESENT.

Third Conjugation.

Fourth Conjugation.

lĕg-or, I am read.

aud-ior, I am heard

lĕg-ĕris,

aud-iris,

lĕg-itur,

aud-itur,

lĕg-imur,

aud-imur,

lĕg-imini,

aud-imini,

lĕg-untur.

aud-iuntur.

IMPERFECT.

S. 1.	<i>laud-ābar</i> , I was praised.	<i>mon-ēbar</i> , I was advised.
2.	<i>laud-abāris</i> ,	<i>mon-ebāris</i> ,
3.	<i>laud-abātur</i> ,	<i>mon-ebātur</i> ,
P. 1.	<i>laud-abāmur</i> ,	<i>mon-ebāmur</i> ,
2.	<i>laud-abāmini</i> ,	<i>mon-ebāmini</i> ,
3.	<i>laud-abantur</i> .	<i>mon-ebantur</i> .

FUTURE.

S. 1.	<i>laud-abor</i> , I shall be	<i>mon-ēbor</i> , I shall be advised.
2.	<i>laud-āberis</i> , [praised.	<i>mon-ēberis</i> ,
3.	<i>laud-ābitur</i> ,	<i>mon-ēbitur</i> ,
P. 1.	<i>laud-ābimur</i> ,	<i>mon-ēbimur</i> ,
2.	<i>laud-abimīni</i> ,	<i>mon-ebimīni</i> ,
3.	<i>laud-abuntur</i> .	<i>mon-ebuntur</i> .

PERFECT.

S. 1.	<i>laud-ātus</i> { <i>sum</i> , I have	<i>mōn-ītus</i> { <i>sum</i> , I have been
2.	{ (<i>a, um</i>) { <i>es</i> , [been	{ (<i>a, um</i>) { <i>es</i> , [advised.
3.	{ <i>est</i> , [praised.	{ <i>est</i> ,
P. 1.	<i>laud-āti</i> { <i>sumus</i> ,	<i>mōn-īti</i> { <i>sumus</i> ,
2.	{ (<i>ae, a</i>) { <i>estis</i> ,	{ (<i>ae, a</i>) { <i>estis</i> ,
3.	{ <i>sunt</i> ,	{ <i>sunt</i> .

PLUPERFECT.

S. 1.	<i>laud-ātus</i> { <i>eram</i> , I had	<i>mōn-ītus</i> { <i>eram</i> , I had been
2.	{ (<i>a, um</i>) { <i>eras</i> , [been	{ (<i>a, um</i>) { <i>eras</i> , [advised.
3.	{ <i>erat</i> , [praised.	{ <i>erat</i> ,
P. 1.	<i>laud-āti</i> { <i>eramus</i> ,	<i>mōn-īti</i> { <i>eramus</i> ,
2.	{ (<i>ae, a</i>) { <i>eratis</i> ,	{ (<i>ae, a</i>) { <i>eratis</i> ,
3.	{ <i>erant</i> .	{ <i>erant</i> ,

FUTURE PERFECT.

S. 1.	<i>laud-ātus</i> { <i>ero</i> , I shall have	<i>mōn-ītus</i> { <i>ero</i> , I shall have
2.	{ (<i>a, um</i>) { <i>eris</i> , [been	{ (<i>a, um</i>) { <i>eris</i> , [been ad-
3.	{ <i>erit</i> , [praised.	{ <i>erit</i> , [vised.
P. 1.	<i>laud-āti</i> { <i>erimus</i> ,	<i>mōn-īti</i> { <i>erimus</i> ,
2.	{ (<i>ae, a</i>) { <i>eritis</i> ,	{ (<i>ae, a</i>) { <i>eritis</i> ,
3.	{ <i>erunt</i> .	{ <i>erunt</i> .

IMPERFECT.

leg-ēbar, I was read.
leg-ebāris,
leg-ebātur,
leg-ebāmur,
leg-ebāmini,
leg-ebantur.

aud-iēbar, I was heard.
aud-iebāris,
aud-iebātur,
aud-iebāmur,
aud-iebāmini,
aud-iebantur.

FUTURE.

lēg-ar, I shall be read.
leg-ēris,
leg-ētur,
leg-ēmur,
leg-ēmīni,
leg-entur.

aud-īar, I shall be heard.
aud-iēris,
aud-iētur,
aud-iēmur,
aud-iēmīni,
aud-ientur.

PERFECT.

<i>lec-tus</i>	{	<i>sum</i> , I have been read.	<i>aud-itus</i>	{	<i>sum</i> , I have been
(<i>a, um</i>)	{	<i>es</i> ,	(<i>a, um</i>)	{	<i>es</i> , [heard.
	{	<i>est</i> ,		{	<i>est</i> ,
<i>lec-ti</i>	{	<i>sumus</i> ,	<i>aud-iti</i>	{	<i>sumus</i> ,
(<i>ae, a</i>)	{	<i>estis</i> ,	(<i>ae, a</i>)	{	<i>estis</i> ,
	{	<i>sunt</i> .		{	<i>sunt</i> .

PLUPERFECT.

<i>lec-tus</i>	{	<i>eram</i> , I had been read.	<i>aud-itus</i>	{	<i>eram</i> , I had been
(<i>a, um</i>)	{	<i>eras</i> ,	(<i>a, um</i>)	{	<i>eras</i> , [heard.
	{	<i>erat</i> ,		{	<i>erat</i> .
<i>lec-ti</i>	{	<i>eramus</i> ,	<i>aud-iti</i>	{	<i>eramus</i> ,
(<i>ae, a</i>)	{	<i>eratis</i> ,	(<i>ae, a</i>)	{	<i>eratis</i> ,
	{	<i>erant</i> .		{	<i>erant</i> .

FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>lec-tus</i>	{	<i>ero</i> , I shall have been	<i>aud-itus</i>	{	<i>ero</i> , I shall have
(<i>a, um</i>)	{	<i>eris</i> , [read.	(<i>a, um</i>)	{	<i>eris</i> , [been heard.
	{	<i>erit</i> ,		{	<i>erit</i> ,
<i>lec-ti</i>	{	<i>erimus</i> ,	<i>aud-iti</i>	{	<i>erimus</i> ,
(<i>ae, a</i>)	{	<i>eritis</i> ,	(<i>ae, a</i>)	{	<i>eritis</i> ,
	{	<i>erunt</i> .		{	<i>erunt</i> .

§

B. SUB-

PRESENT.

S. 1.	<i>laud-er</i> , I may be praised	<i>mon-ēar</i> , I may be advised.
2.	<i>laud-ēris</i> ,	<i>mon-eāris</i> ,
3.	<i>laud-ētur</i> ,	<i>mon-eātur</i> ,
P. 1.	<i>laud-ēmur</i> ,	<i>mon-eāmur</i> ,
2.	<i>laud-ēmīni</i> ,	<i>mon-eāmīni</i> ,
3.	<i>laud-entur</i> .	<i>mon-eantur</i> .

IMPERFECT.

S. 1.	<i>laud-ārer</i> , I might be	<i>mon-ārer</i> , I might be advised.
2.	<i>laud-arēris</i> , [praised.	<i>mon-erāris</i> ,
3.	<i>laud-arētur</i> ,	<i>mon-erētur</i> ,
P. 1.	<i>laud-arēmur</i> ,	<i>mon-erēmur</i> ,
2.	<i>laud-arēmīni</i> ,	<i>mon-erēmīni</i> ,
3.	<i>laud-arentur</i> .	<i>mon-erentur</i> .

PERFECT.

S. 1.	} <i>laud-ātus</i> { <i>sim</i> , I may have	} <i>mōn-ītus</i> { <i>sim</i> , I may have		
2.			(<i>a, um</i>) { <i>sis</i> , [been	(<i>a, um</i>) { <i>sis</i> , [been advised.
3.			{ <i>sit</i> , [praised.	{ <i>sit</i> ,
P. 1.	} <i>laud-āti</i> { <i>simus</i> ,	} <i>mōn-īti</i> { <i>simus</i> ,		
2.			(<i>ae, a</i>) { <i>sitis</i> ,	(<i>ae, a</i>) { <i>sitis</i> ,
3.			{ <i>sint</i> ,	{ <i>sint</i> .

PLUPERFECT.

S. 1.	} <i>laud-ātus</i> { <i>essem</i> , I might	} <i>mōn-ītus</i> { <i>essem</i> , I might have		
2.			(<i>a, um</i>) { <i>esses</i> , [have been	(<i>a, um</i>) { <i>esses</i> , [been ad-
3.			{ <i>esset</i> , [praised.	{ <i>esset</i> , [vised.
P. 1.	} <i>laud-āti</i> { <i>essemus</i> ,	} <i>mōn-īti</i> { <i>essemus</i> ,		
2.			(<i>ae, a</i>) { <i>essetis</i> ,	(<i>ae, a</i>) { <i>essetis</i> ,
3.			{ <i>essent</i> .	{ <i>essent</i> .

FUTURE and FUTURE

87.

JUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

lĕg-ar, I may be read.
lĕg-āris,
lĕg-ātur,
lĕg-āmur,
lĕg-āmini,
lĕg-antur.

aud-īar, I may be heard.
aud-īāris,
aud-īātur,
aud-īāmur,
aud-īāmini,
aud-īantur.

IMPERFECT.

lĕg-ērer, I might be read.
lĕg-ērēris,
lĕg-ērētur,
lĕg-ērēmur,
lĕg-ērēmīni,
lĕg-erentur.

aud-īrer, I might be heard.
aud-īrēris,
aud-īrētur,
aud-īrēmur,
aud-īrēmīni,
aud-irentur.

PERFECT.

<i>lĕc-tus</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{sim}, \text{ I may have been} \\ \textit{sis}, \\ \textit{sit}, \end{array} \right.$	[read.]	<i>aud-ītus</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{sim}, \text{ I may have} \\ \textit{sis}, \text{ [been heard.} \\ \textit{sit}, \end{array} \right.$
(<i>a, um</i>)			(<i>a, um</i>)	
<i>lĕc-ti</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{simus}, \\ \textit{sitis}, \\ \textit{sint.} \end{array} \right.$		<i>aud-īti</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{simus}, \\ \textit{sitis}, \\ \textit{sint.} \end{array} \right.$
(<i>ae, a</i>)			(<i>ae, a</i>)	

PLUPERFECT.

<i>lĕc-tus</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{essem}, \text{ I might have} \\ \textit{esses}, \text{ [been read.} \\ \textit{esset}, \end{array} \right.$	<i>aud-ītus</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{essem}, \text{ I might have} \\ \textit{esses}, \text{ [been heard.} \\ \textit{esset}, \end{array} \right.$
(<i>a, um</i>)		(<i>a, um</i>)	
<i>lĕc-ti</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{essemus}, \\ \textit{essetis}, \\ \textit{essent.} \end{array} \right.$	<i>aud-īti</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{essemus}, \\ \textit{essetis}, \\ \textit{essent.} \end{array} \right.$
(<i>ae, a</i>)		(<i>ae, a</i>)	

PERFECT are wanting.

§

C. IMPER.

PRESENT.

- S. 2. *laud-āre*, be thou praised. *mon-ēre*, be thou advised.
 P. 2. *laud-āmini*, be ye praised. *mon-ēmini*, be ye advised.

FUTURE.

- S. 2. *laud-ātor*, thou shalt be praised. *mon-ētor*, thou shalt be advised.
 3. *laud-ātor*, he shall be praised. *mon-ētor*, he shall be advised.
 P. 2. — instead: *laudabimīni*. — instead: *monebimīni*.
 3. *laud-antor*, they shall be praised. *mon-entor*, they shall be advised.

§

D. INFIN-

PRESENT.

- laud-āri*, to be praised. *mon-ēri*, to be advised.

PERFECT.

- S. *laud-ātum* (*am, um*) *esse*, *mon-ītum* (*am, um*) *esse*, to have been praised. have been advised.
 P. *laud-ātos* (*as, a*) *esse*. *mon-ītos* (*as, a*) *esse*.

FUTURE.

- laud-ātum iri*, to be about to be praised. *mon-ītum iri*, to be about to be advised.

§

E. PARTI-

PERFECT.

- laud-ātus* (*a, um*), praised, having been praised. *mōn-ītus* (*a, um*), advised, having been advised.

FUTURE.

- laud-andus* (*a, um*), to be praised. *mon-endus* (*a, um*), to be advised.

88.

ACTIVE.

lĕg-ĕre, be thou read.
lĕg-ĭmĭni, be ye read.

PRESENT.

aud-ĭre, be thou heard.
aud-ĭmĭni, be ye heard.

FUTURE.

lĕg-ĭtor, thou shalt be read
lĕg-itor, he shall be read.

aud-itor, thou shalt be heard.
aud-itor, he shall be heard.

— instead: *lĕgĕmĭni*.
lĕg-untor, they shall be read.

— instead: *audiĕmĭni*.
aud-iuntor, they shall be heard.

89.

ITIVE.

lĕg-I, to be read.

PRESENT.

aud-iri, to be heard.

PERFECT.

lĕc-tum (*um, um*) *esse*, to have been read.

aud-ĭtum (*am, um*) *esse*, to have been heard.

lĕc-tos (*as, a*) *esse*.

aud-ĭtos (*as, a*) *esse*.

FUTURE.

lĕc-tum iri, to be about to be read.

aud-ĭtum iri, to be about to be heard.

90.

CIPLES.

PERFECT.

lĕc-tus (*a, um*), read, having been read.

aud-ĭtus (*a, um*), heard, having been heard.

FUTURE.

lĕg-endus (*a, um*), to be read.

aud-iendus (*a, um*), to be heard.

§ 91.

WORDS FOR EXERCISE.

First Conjugation.

- | | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Aestimo</i> , I value. | <i>dōno</i> , present. | <i>vulnĕro</i> , wound. |
| <i>āmo</i> , love. | <i>ĕmendo</i> , improve. | 3. <i>Aegrōto</i> , I am sick. |
| <i>āro</i> , plough. | <i>formo</i> , shape, prepare. | <i>aequo</i> , make equal, compare. |
| <i>certo</i> , struggle. | <i>fugo</i> , put to flight. | <i>caeco</i> , blind, make dark. |
| <i>clāmo</i> , shout. | <i>hōnōro</i> , honor. | <i>caeco</i> , blind, make dark. |
| <i>creo</i> , create, elect. | <i>hūmo</i> , inter. | <i>cĕlēbro</i> , celebrate. |
| <i>dico</i> , dedicate. | <i>īndico</i> , disclose, show. | <i>debilito</i> , weaken, maim. |
| <i>erro</i> , mistake, err. | <i>iūdico</i> , decide, hold. | <i>declāro</i> , declare. |
| <i>flagro</i> , burn. | <i>iūro</i> , swear, take an oath. | <i>dūbito</i> , doubt, hesitate. |
| <i>flo</i> , blow. | <i>lābōro</i> , toil, suffer. | <i>dūro</i> , harden, last. |
| <i>lānio</i> , mangle. | <i>lāorimo</i> , weep, lament. | <i>evacĕro</i> , provoke. |
| <i>lātro</i> , bark. | <i>lōco</i> , place, put. | <i>festino</i> , hasten. |
| <i>lēgo</i> , send. | <i>mācūlo</i> , stain. | <i>firmo</i> , strengthen. |
| <i>mando</i> , enjoin. | <i>mēdicō</i> , beg. | <i>foedo</i> , deform, disfigure. |
| <i>migro</i> , wander. | <i>mīlito</i> , am a soldier. | <i>freguento</i> , visit often. |
| <i>narro</i> , tell, relate. | <i>mēnistro</i> , serve, provide. | <i>gĕmino</i> , double, pair. |
| <i>nĕgo</i> , deny, refuse. | <i>monstro</i> , show, point out. | <i>ignōro</i> , am ignorant. |
| <i>no</i> , swim. | <i>nĕco</i> , kill. | <i>lācĕro</i> , tear in pieces. |
| <i>opto</i> , desire. | <i>nōmino</i> , call, name. | <i>libĕro</i> , set free. |
| <i>orno</i> , adorn. | <i>nūmĕro</i> , count. | <i>mātūro</i> , make ripe, hasten. |
| <i>pāro</i> , prepare. | <i>nuntio</i> , report, announce. | <i>nūdo</i> , bare, uncover. |
| <i>pecco</i> , sin, fail. | <i>ordīno</i> , arrange. | <i>orbo</i> , bereave, rob. |
| <i>plōro</i> , weep. | <i>ōnĕro</i> , burden, load. | <i>prōbo</i> , examine, approve. |
| <i>porto</i> , carry. | <i>ōro</i> , pray, beseech. | <i>purgo</i> , clean. |
| <i>pūto</i> , think, judge. | <i>pugno</i> , fight, combat. | <i>saoro</i> , devota. |
| <i>rōgo</i> , ask, beseech. | <i>regno</i> , reign. | <i>sāno</i> , cure. |
| <i>servo</i> , save, protect, observe. | <i>sĕlūto</i> , greet. | <i>sollicito</i> , disturb. |
| <i>sūdo</i> , sweat. | <i>spĕro</i> , hope. | <i>sūpĕro</i> , surpass, overtop. |
| <i>vōlo</i> , fly. | <i>tempĕro</i> , govern, moderate. | <i>vasto</i> , devastate. |
| <i>vōro</i> , devour. | <i>vĕlo</i> , cover, veil. | <i>vigilo</i> , watch. |
| 2. <i>Accūso</i> , I accuse. | <i>vōco</i> , call, name. | 4. <i>Appello</i> , address, call. |
| <i>armo</i> , arm, equip. | <i>vilgo</i> , publish, make known. | <i>canto</i> , sing. |
| <i>considĕro</i> , look at carefully. | | |
| <i>corōna</i> , crown, wreath. | | |
| <i>orūcio</i> , torment. | | |
| <i>cūro</i> , take care of, care. | | |
| <i>damno</i> , condemn. | | |

<i>oġito</i> , think.	<i>ŭcto</i> , throw, hurl.	<i>ŭpecto</i> , behold, gaze at.
<i>conŭlto</i> , consult.	<i>mŭto</i> , change, barter.	<i>tento</i> , attempt, instigate.
<i>delecto</i> , amuse.	<i>nŭto</i> , swim.	
<i>edŭco</i> , educate.	<i>occŭpo</i> , occupy, seize.	<i>tŭlŕo</i> , tolerate.
<i>exercito</i> , exercise diligently.	<i>ŭlto</i> , dance.	<i>tracto</i> , manage.
	<i>ŭdo</i> , quiet, calm.	<i>vezo</i> , torment, injure.

§ 92.

Second Conjugation.

1. <i>Ooġreo</i> , I restrain. check.	2. <i>Oŭleo</i> , I am warm. <i>oġreo</i> , am deprived of.	<i>pġreo</i> , obey, submit to.
<i>exercito</i> , exercise, drill.	<i>dŭleo</i> , feel pain, grieve over.	<i>plŭceo</i> , please.
<i>hŕeo</i> , have, hold.	<i>iŕeo</i> , lie down,	<i>tŭceo</i> , am silent.
<i>dŕeo</i> , owe, am bound, must.	<i>mŕeo</i> , gain, deserve.	<i>terreo</i> , frighten.
<i>prŕeo</i> , offer, grant.	<i>nŕeo</i> , hurt.	<i>vŕeo</i> , am strong, well, able.

(Chap. xx.)

§ 93.

Third Conjugation.

<i>Emo</i> , <i>emi</i> , <i>emptum</i> , <i>emĕre</i> , I buy.	
<i>ŕgo</i> , <i>ĕgi</i> , <i>actum</i> , <i>agĕre</i> , drive, lead, do.	
<i>dico</i> , <i>dixi</i> , <i>dictum</i> , <i>dicĕre</i> , say, proclaim.	
<i>tĕgo</i> , <i>texi</i> , <i>tectum</i> , <i>tegĕre</i> , cover.	(Chap. xxi.)

§ 94.

Fourth Conjugation.

1. <i>Conŕio</i> , I season, embalm.	<i>lŕnio</i> , render gentle.	<i>ĕŕurio</i> , am hungry.
<i>cuŕtŕio</i> , watch over, protect.	<i>mollio</i> , soften.	<i>grunnio</i> , grunt.
<i>erudŕio</i> , educate, instruct.	<i>mŕnio</i> , fortify.	<i>innio</i> , neigh.
<i>impĕdŕio</i> , hinder.	<i>nutrio</i> , nourish.	<i>innio</i> , low, bellow.
<i>finio</i> , end, finish.	<i>pŕlio</i> , polish.	<i>ŕerio</i> , serve, am subject to.
<i>irrĕtio</i> , ensnare.	<i>pinio</i> , punish.	<i>innio</i> , jingle, tinkle.
	<i>ŕcio</i> , know.	<i>vagio</i> , whine, bleat.
	<i>veŕtio</i> , dress, clothe.	(Chap. xxii.)
	2. <i>Dormio</i> , I sleep.	

III. DEPO-

The DEPONENT VERB has the *passive form*, but everywhere an *active* like the passive verb. It has, however, besides these
2) the *supine*; 3) the

A. INDI-

PRESENT.

First Conjugation.

Hortor, exactly like *laudor*.

- S. 1. *hort-or*, I exhort.
 2. *hort-āris*,
 3. *hort-ātur*,
 P. 1. *hort-āmur*,
 2. *hort-āmīni*,
 3. *hort-antur*.

Second Conjugation.

Vereor, exactly like *moneor*

- vēr-ēor*, I fear.
ver-ēris,
ver-ētur,
ver-ēmur,
ver-ēmīni,
ver-entur.

IMPERFECT.

- S. 1. *hort-ābar*, I was exhort-
 ing, I exhorted. *ver-ēbar*, I was fearing, I
 feared.
 2. *hort-abāris*, *ver-ebāris*,
 3. *hort-abātur*, *ver-ebātur*,
 P. 1. *hort-abāmur*, *ver-ebāmur*,
 2. *hort-abāmīni*, *ver-ebāmīni*,
 3. *hort-abantur*. *ver-ebantur*.

FUTURE.

- S. 1. *hort-ābor*, I shall exhort. *ver-ēbor*, I shall fear.
 2. *hort-abēris*, *ver-ebēris*,
 3. *hort-abītur*, *ver-ebītur*,
 P. 1. *hort-abīmur*, *ver-ebīmur*,
 2. *hort-abīmīni*, *ver-ebīmīni*,
 3. *hort-abuntur*. *ver-ebuntur*.

PERFECT.

- S. 1. *hort-ātus* (*a, um*) *sum*, I have exhorted. *vēr-ītus* (*a, um*) *sum*, I have
 have exhorted. feared.
 P. 1. *hortati* (*ae, a*) *sumus*, we have exhorted. *verīti*, (*ae, a*) *sumus*, we have
 have exhorted. feared.

95.

NENT VERBS.

meaning, except for the *participle* in *ndus* (§ 99): it is conjugated exactly forms, 1) the *participles* of the *actives* in *ns* and *urus* ;
gerund (cf. § 104).

CATIVE.

PRESENT.

Third Conjugation.

Fungor, exactly like *legor*.

fung-or, I perform.
fung-ōris,
fung-itur,
fung-imur,
fung-imīni,
fung-untur.

Fourth Conjugation.

Partior, exactly like *audior*.

part-i-or, I divide.
part-iris,
part-itur,
part-imur,
part-imīni,
part-iuntur.

IMPERFECT.

fung-ēbar, I was performing, I performed. *part-iēbar*, I was dividing, I divided.

fung-ebāris,
fung-ebātur,
fung-ebāmur,
fung-ebāmīni,
fung-ebantur.
part-iebāris,
part-iebātur,
part-iebāmur,
part-iebāmīni,
part-iebantur.

FUTURE.

fung-ar, I shall perform. *part-iar*, I shall divide.
fung-ōris,
fung-ētur,
fung-ēmur,
fung-ēmīni,
fung-entur.
part-iōris,
part-iētur,
part-iēmur,
part-iēmīni,
part-ientur.

PERFECT.

func-tus (*a, um*) *sum*, I have performed. *part-itus* (*a, um*) *sum*, I have divided.
functi (*ae, a*) *sumus*, we have performed. *partiti* (*ae, a*) *sumus*, we have divided.

PLUPERFECT.

- S. 1. *hort-atus (a, um) eram, ver-itus (a, um) eram*, I had exhorted, etc. feared, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

- S. 1. *hort-atus (a, um) ero, ver-itus (a, um) ero*, I shall have exhorted, etc. have feared, etc.

§

B. SUB.

PRESENT.

- S. 1. *hort-er, ver-ear*, I may exhort. I may fear.
2. *hort-eris, ver-eris*,
3. *hort-etur, ver-etur*, etc.

IMPERFECT.

- S. 1. *hort-arer, ver-arer*, I might ex., etc. I might fear, etc.

PERFECT.

- S. 1. *hort-atus (a, um) sim, sis, ver-itus (a, um) sim, sis, sit*, I may have exhorted, etc. may have feared, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

- S. 1. *hort-atus (a, um) essem, ver-itus (a, um) essem*, I might have exhorted, etc. might have feared, etc.

FUTURE.

- S. 1. *hort-aturus (a, um) sim, ver-iturus (a, um) sim*, I may be about to exhort, etc. be about to fear, etc.

§

C. IMPER.

PRESENT.

- S. 2. *hort-are, ver-are*, exhort thou. fear thou.
P. 2. *hort-amini, ver-amini*, exhort ye. fear ye.

FUTURE.

- S. 2. *hort-ator, ver-ator*, thou shalt exh. thou shalt fear.
3. *hort-ator, ver-ator*, he shall exhort. he shall fear.
P. 2. — instead: *hortabimini*. — instead: *verebimini*.
3. *hort-antor, ver-antor*, they shall exhort. they shall fear.

PLUPERFECT.

func-tus (*a, um*) **eram**, I had performed, etc. *part-itus* (*a, um*) **eram**, I had divided, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

func-tus (*a, um*) **ero**, I shall have performed, etc. *part-itus* (*a, um*) **ero**, I shall have divided, etc.

96.

JUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

fung-ar, I may perform. *part-iar*, I may divide.
fung-āris, *part-iāris*,
fung-ātur. *part-iātur*.

IMPERFECT.

fung-ērer, I might perform, etc. *part-irer*, I might divide, etc.

PERFECT.

func-tus (*a, um*) **sim, sis, sit**, I may have performed, etc. *part-itus* (*a, um*) **sim, sis, sit**, I may have divided, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

func-tus (*a, um*) **essem**, I might have performed, etc. *part-itus* (*a, um*) **essem**, I might have divided, etc.

FUTURE.

func-tūrus (*a, um*) **sim**, I may be about to perform, etc. *part-itūrus* (*a, um*) **sim**, I may be about to divide, etc.

97.

ATIVE.

PRESENT.

fung-ere, perform thou. *part-ire*, divide thou.
fung-imini, perform ye. *part-imini*, divide ye.

FUTURE.

fung-itor, thou shalt perform. *part-itor*, thou shalt divide.
fung-itor, he shall perform. *part-itor*, he shall divide.
— instead: *fungemini*. — instead: *partiemini*.
fung-untor, they shall perform. *part-iuntor*, they shall divide.

§

D. INFIN-

PRESENT.

hort-āri, to exhort. *ver-ēri*, to fear.

PERFECT.

S. *hort-ātum* (*am, um*) **esse**, to *ver-ītum* (*am, um*) **esse**, to
have exhorted. have feared.

P. *hort-ātos* (*as, a*) **esse**. *ver-ītos* (*as, a*) **esse**.

FUTURE.

S. *hort-atūrum* (*am, um*) **esse**, *ver-itūrum* (*am, um*) **esse**, to
to be about to exhort. be about to fear.

P. *hort-aturos* (*as, a*) **esse**. *ver-itueros* (*as, a*) **esse**.

§

E. PARTI

PRESENT.

hort-ans, exhorting. *vēr-ens*, fearing.

PERFECT.

hort-ātus (*a, um*), having ex- *vēr-ītus* (*a, um*), having
horted. feared.

FUTURE (ACTIVE).

hort-atūrus (*a, um*), about to *ver-itūrus* (*a, um*), about to
exhort. fear.

FUTURE (PASSIVE).

hort-andus (*a, um*), to be ex- *ver-endus* (*a, um*), to be
horted. feared.

§

F. GE-

Nom. *hortandum est*, it must be exhorted, it is necessary to exhort.

Gen. *hort-andi*, of exhorting. *ver-endi*, of fearing.

Dat. *hort-ando*, to exhorting. *ver-endo*, to fearing.

Acc. (*ad*) *hort-andum*, exhorting. (*ad*) *ver-endum*, fearing.

Abl. *hort-ando*, by exhorting. *ver-endo*, by fearing.

§

G. SU-

hort-ātum, to exhort.

vēr-ītum, to fear.

hort-ātu, to exhort.

vēr-ītu, to fear.

98.

ITIVE.

PRESENT.

fung-i, to perform.

part-iri, to divide.

PERFECT.

func-tum (*am, um*) **esse**, to have performed. *part-itum* (*am, um*) **esse**, to have divided.

runc-tos (*as, a*) **esse**.

part-itos (*as, a*) **esse**.

FUTURE.

func-tūrum (*am, um*) **esse**, to be about to perform. *part-itūrum* (*am, um*) **esse**, to be about to divide.

func-turos (*as, a*) **esse**.

part-ituros (*as, a*) **esse**.

99.

CIPLES.

PRESENT.

fung-ens, performing.

part-iens, dividing.

PERFECT.

func-tus (*a, um*), having performed. *part-itus* (*a, um*), having divided.

FUTURE (ACTIVE).

func-tūrus (*a, um*), about to perform. *part-itūrus* (*a, um*), about to divide.

FUTURE (PASSIVE).

fung-endus (*a, um*), to be performed.

part-iendus (*a, um*), to be divided.

100.

RUND.

fung-endi, of performing.

part-iendi, of dividing.

fung-endo, to performing.

part-iendo, to dividing.

(*ad*) *fung-endum*, performing.

(*ad*) *part-iendum*, dividing.

fung-endo, by performing.

part-iendo, by dividing.

101.

PINE.

func-tum, to perform.

part-itum, to divide.

func-tu, to perform.

part-itu, to divide.

§ 102.

WORDS FOR EXERCISE.

First Conjugation.

<i>Adūlor</i> , I flatter.	<i>imitor</i> , imitate.	<i>pālor</i> , struggle.
<i>æmūlor</i> , emulate, am envious of.	<i>interpretor</i> , explain.	<i>piscor</i> , fish.
<i>arbitror</i> , think, suppose.	<i>iōcor</i> , jest.	<i>pōpūlor</i> , ravage.
<i>calumniōr</i> , slander.	<i>laetor</i> , rejoice.	<i>praedor</i> , plunder.
<i>cōmitor</i> , accompany.	<i>lāmentor</i> , moan.	<i>precor</i> , ask, pray.
<i>cōnor</i> , venture, dare.	<i>lucror</i> , gain.	<i>rēcōrdor</i> , call to mind.
<i>consōlor</i> , comfort.	<i>luctor</i> , wrestle.	<i>ricor</i> , wrangle.
<i>conspicor</i> , descry.	<i>mēdicor</i> , heal.	<i>suspīcor</i> , mistrust, sus- pect.
<i>contemplor</i> , consider.	<i>mēditōr</i> , reflect, muse.	<i>testor</i> , witness, prove.
<i>cunctor</i> , linger, hesitate.	<i>minor</i> , threaten.	<i>tūtor</i> , guard, watch.
<i>frustror</i> , deceive.	<i>miror</i> , admire, wonder.	<i>vāgor</i> , ramble about.
<i>fūrōr</i> , steal.	<i>misērōr</i> , deplore.	<i>vēnērōr</i> , revere, venerata
<i>glōriōr</i> , glory, boast.	<i>mōrōr</i> , delay, wait.	<i>vēnor</i> , hunt.
<i>grātūlor</i> , congratulate.	<i>opinor</i> , conjecture, think.	<i>versor</i> , dwell.

§ 103.

Second Conjugation.

<i>Pollīcor</i> , promise.	<i>tueor</i> , protect.	§ 184j.
----------------------------	-------------------------	---------

Third Conjugation.

<i>Fruor</i> , <i>fructus sum</i> , enjoy.	<i>nascor</i> , <i>nātus sum</i> , am born	(§ 185).
<i>lōquor</i> , <i>locūtus sum</i> , speak, talk.		

Fourth Conjugation.

<i>Blandīor</i> , flatter.	<i>mōlior</i> , undertake.
<i>largior</i> , bestow, grant.	<i>sortior</i> , cast lots.
<i>mentior</i> , tell a lie.	<i>pōtior</i> , take possession of. (§ 186).

§ 104.

The deponent verb is originally always a passive verb.

This appears sometimes very clearly; as, in *nascor*, I am born; sometimes the active form of the deponent is still used; as, *veho* (trans.), I ride; *vehor* (intrans.), I ride; *pasco*, I drive to the pasture; *pascor*, I feed, graze (cfr. § 185). Both the passive and the deponent often partake of the reflexive meaning, like the Middle in Greek; e. g., *nitōr*, I rest upon; *vescor*, I feed on something, I eat; *proficīscor*, I set out, I travel. In the same manner, the passives: *delector*, I am pleased (= *me delecto*); *accīngor*, I gird myself; *fallor*, I am mistaken; *moveor*, I bestir myself; *inclīnor*, I am disposed; *mutor*, I am changed; *recreor*, I become refreshed. But the present participle is *me recreans*, *me delectans*, etc.

CHAPTER XVIII.

REMARKS ON THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

§ 105.

VERBS IN **IO** OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

1. In the third conjugation there are fifteen verbs (with their compounds) that have a short **i** before the termination. This **i** is dropped whenever followed by a second **i**, or by a syllable beginning with a short **ě**.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1) <i>căpio</i> , § 120, 2. | 2) <i>căpio</i> , § 118, 47. | 3) <i>făcio</i> , § 120, 8. |
| 4) <i>fădio</i> , § 120, 15. | 5) <i>făgio</i> , § 120, 6. | 6) <i>iăcio</i> , § 120, 4. |
| 7) (<i>lăcio</i>), § 119, 16. | 8) <i>părio</i> , § 121, 2. | 9) <i>răpio</i> , § 118, 6. |
| 10) <i>quătio</i> , § 119, 54. | 11) (<i>spēcio</i>) § 119, 17. | 12) <i>săpio</i> , § 118, 53. |
| 13) <i>grădiŏr</i> , § 135, 9. | 14) <i>pătior</i> , § 135, 13. | 15) <i>mŏrior</i> , § 135, 5. |
- and partly, also *ŏrior*, § 136, 11.

2.

ACTIVE.**PASSIVE.****PRESENT.**

<i>căp-i-o</i> ,	<i>căp-i-am</i> ,	<i>căp-i-or</i> ,	<i>căp-i-ar</i> ,
<i>căpis</i> ,	<i>căp-i-as</i> ,	<i>căp-ĕris</i> ,	<i>căp-i-aris</i> ,
<i>căpit</i> ,	etc.	<i>căp-ĭtur</i> ,	etc.
<i>căplmus</i> ,		<i>căplmur</i> ,	
<i>căpltis</i> ,		<i>căplmĭnĭ</i> ,	
<i>căp-i-unt</i> ,		<i>căp-i-untur</i> ,	

IMPERFECT.

<i>căp-i-ĕbam</i> ,	<i>căp-ĕrem</i> ,	<i>căp-i-ĕbar</i> ,	<i>căp-ĕrer</i> ,
<i>căp-i-ĕbas</i> ,	<i>căp-ĕres</i> ,	<i>căp-i-ĕbaris</i> ,	<i>căp-ĕreris</i> ,
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

FUTURE.

<i>căp-i-am</i> ,	<i>căp-i-ar</i> ,
<i>căp-i-es</i> ,	<i>căp-i-ĕris</i> .

IMPERATIVE.**INFINITIVE.**

ACT.	PASS.	ACT.	PASS.
<i>căpe</i> ,	<i>căp-ĕre</i> ,	<i>căp-ĕre</i> .	<i>căpi</i> .
<i>căplĕ</i> ,	<i>căpimĭnĭ</i> ,		
<i>căplĭ</i> ,	<i>căpĭtor</i> ,		
<i>căplĭ</i> ,	<i>căpĭtor</i> ,	PARTICIPLE.	GERUND.
<i>căplĭtĕ</i> ,	—	<i>căplĕnă</i> .	<i>căplĕndĭ</i> .
<i>căp-i-untŏ</i> ,	<i>căp-i-untŏr</i> .		

The deponents are conjugated like the passive of *capio*; thus, *mortor*, *mor-eris*, *mortur*, *morimur*, *morimini*, *moriuntur*; *moriar*, *moriaris*, &c.; *moriebar*; *morerer*; *moriar*, *moriēris*; *morēre*, die; *mori*, to die; *moriens*, *moriendū*.

§ 106.

TWFOLD FORMS OF CONJUGATIONS.

1. In the perfects in **avi** of the first conjugation, and the tenses formed from them, **avi** when followed by **s**, and **ave** followed by **r**, are contracted into **ā**; as, *laud-āsti*, *laud-āssem*, *laud-āsse*; *laud-ārunt*, *laud-ārim*, *laud-āram*, *laud-āro*, for *laudavisti*, *laudaverunt*, etc.

2. Perfects in **ivi** and the tenses derived from them, may always drop the **v**; as, *aud-iisti*, *aud-iisse*, *aud-iissem*, and more frequently still, be contracted thus: *aud-īsti*, *aud-īsse*, *aud-īsem*; similarly, *aud-iērunt*, *aud-īrim*, *aud-īram*, *aud-īro*. But the uncontracted forms *audivi*, *audivit*, and *audivimus* are more usual than *audii*, *audiiit*, *audivimus*.

3. Perfects in **ēvi** and **ōvi** of the second and third conjugations, sometimes admit a like contraction: thus, *quies-erunt*, *quies-erunt*, they have reposed; *consue-eram*, and *consue-eram*, I had been accustomed; *no-eram*, and *no-eram*, I knew; *consue-issem*, and *consue-issem*; *no-isti*, and *no-isti*; *mo-isti*, though rarely *mo-isti*, thou hast moved.

4. In the third pers. plur. perf. ind. act. the abbreviated form **ēre** for **ērunt** is common; as *laudav-ēre* for *laudavērunt*; *monu-ēre*, *leg-ēre*, *audiv-ēre*. The form in **ēre** does not drop the **v**, hence never *audi-ēre* for *audivēre*.

5. In the second pers. sing. pass. the form **rē** is often used for **ris**; thus, *laud-ēre* for *laudēris*; *moneb-ēre* for *monebēris*; *leg-āre* for *legārīs*; *audieb-āre* for *audiebārīs*. But **re** for **ris** in the pres. ind. is rare: *laudārīs*, rarely *laudāre*.

6. **Undus** for **endus** occurs as ending of the fut. part. pass. in the third and fourth conj. Always write *eundus* and *oriundus*. You may say *potiundus* or *potiendus* (*potiri*). Technical expressions: *in jure dicundo* for *dicendo*; *repet-undarum* or *de repetundis*, on account of extortions, instead of *repetendarum* (*peculiarum*.)

7. Four verbs, *dūcere*, *dūcere*, *fācere* and *ferre* (for *ferere*) have the imperative **dūo**, say; **dūo**, lead; **fac**, do; **fer**, bear.

The compounds follow the same rule, except those of *facio*, which have **flecto** instead of *facio*: as, *benedic, calefac, educ, refer; confiteor, perfice*. (§ 144, 2.)

8. Some ancient forms of conjugation occur in a few verbs; *a*) the subjunctive **im**: *duim, duint*, for *dem, dent*; *edim* for *edam* (*cf.* § 141). *b*) the infinitive passive **ier**: *laudatier, videtier, dicier, mollietier*; also *labier, nitier*; *c*) the imperfect, **ibam**, and future, **ibo**, of the fourth conj. instead of *iebam*, and *iam*; as, *audibam, audibo*, for *audiebam, audiam*, (§ 142); *d*) the future perfect **asso** and **esso**, for *avero* and *uero* as *levasso, prohibesso*, in place of *levavero, prohibuero*; *e*) syncope (rejection of syllables); as, *diati* for *dixisti*; likewise *fazim* for *fecerim*; *ausim* for *ausus sim*.

§ 107.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

The participles joined to the tenses of **sum** give rise to the periphrastic conjugation. Some of these forms are used in the regular inflection of the verb, to supply the tenses wanting there. Only those formed with the future part. act. and pass. (**rus** and **rus**) are considered really periphrastic.

2. The future part. in this conjugation always retains its native meaning; thus, *laudaturus sum*, I am about to praise, I am on the point of praising; *i. e.*, I will praise; *laudaturus eram*, I was about to praise. Pass. *laudandus sum*, I am to be praised, *i. e.*, I must be praised; *laudandus eram*, I was to be praised.

3. Conjugate thus:

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

S. <i>Laudaturus</i> (a, um)	{ <i>sum</i> , I will praise. <i>es</i> , thou wilt praise. <i>est</i> , he will praise,	{ <i>laudaturus</i> (a, um),	{ <i>sim</i> , I may be about to <i>sis</i> , [praise. <i>sit</i> ,
P. <i>laudaturi</i> (ae, a)	{ <i>sumus</i> , we will praise. <i>estis</i> , ye will praise. <i>sunt</i> , they will praise.	{ <i>laudaturi</i> (ae, a).	{ <i>simus</i> , <i>sitis</i> , <i>sint</i> .

IMPERFECT.

S. <i>laudaturus eram</i> , I was about to praise.	<i>laudaturus essem</i> , I might be about to praise.
P. <i>laudaturi eramus</i> .	<i>laudaturi essemus</i> .

INDICATIVE.

FUTURE.

8. *laudaturus ero*, I shall be about to praise.

wanting.

PERFECT.

8. *laudaturus fui*, I have been about to praise.

laudaturus fuerim, I may have been about to praise.

PLUPEFECT.

8. *laudaturus fueram*, I had been about to praise.

laudaturus fuisset, I might have been about to praise.

FUTURE PERFECT.

8. *laudaturus fuero* (rare) I shall have been about to praise.

wanting.

INFINITIVE.

PRÆS. *laudaturum (am, um) esse*, to be about to praise.

PERF. *laudaturum (am, um) fuisse*, to have been about to praise.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

8. *laudandus sum*, I am to be praised. I must be praised.

laudandus sim, if I must be praised.

IMPERFECT.

8. *laudandus eram*, I was to be praised.

laudandus essem, if I were to be praised.

FUTURE.

8. *laudandus ero*, I shall be about to be praised.

wanting.

PERFECT.

8. *laudandus fui*, I have to be praised.

laudandus fuerim, I may have to be praised.

PLUPERFECT.

8. *laudandus fueram*, I had to be praised.

laudandus fuisset, I might have to be praised.

FUTURE PERFECT.

8. *laudandus fuero*, I shall have been about to be praised.

wanting.

INFINITIVE.

PRÆS. *laudandum (am, um) esse*, necessary to be praised.

PERF. *laudandum (am, um) fuisse*, necessary to have been praised.

NOTE 1.—*Laudandum est*, it must be praised, it is necessary to praise. In like manner the deponents: *hortandum est*, it must be exhorted. *Virtus colenda est*, virtue must be cherished. *Maiores natu vorendi sunt*, elders must be respected. *Mihi laudandum est*, I must praise (it must be praised by me); *tibi laudandum est*, you must praise; *ei laudandum est*, he must praise; *nobis, vobis, patri laudandum est*. *Virtus nobis colenda est*, we must cherish virtue. Cfr. § 209.

NOTE 2.—The part. in *ndus* of the periphrastic conj. expresses necessity (must): *Hoc non ferendum est*, this must not be suffered. It must not be confounded with *can*: *Hoc ferri non potest*, this cannot be suffered.

CHAPTER XIX.

IRREGULAR PERFECTS AND SUPINES.

First Conjugation.

§ 108.

PERFECTS WITH THE CHARACTERISTIC *u*, (*v*), 11.

I. SUPINE IN *itum*, 6:

1. *Crēpo, crepui, crepītum, crepāre*, I creak.
Compounds: *discrēpo, avi, ui*, jar, differ; *incrēpo*, chide.
2. *cūbo, cubui, cubītum, cubāre*, lie.
accūbo, lie near; *incūbo*, lie upon (cfr. § 118, 20.)
3. *dōmo, domui, domītum, domāre*, tame, check.
edōmo, perdomo, subdue.
4. *sōno, sonui, sonītum, sonāre*, sound, ring (§ 77, note).
consōno, resound, accord, (*resono, resonavi*.)
5. *tōno, tonui, tonītum, tonāre*, thunder.
attōno, thunder at, stun.
6. *vēto, vetui, vetītum, vetāre*, forbid.

II. VARIOUS SUPINES, 4:

7. *Fricō, fricui, frictum* (for *fricitum*), and *fricātum, fricāre*, rub.
infrico, rub in; *perfrico*, rub through.
8. *secō, secui, sectum* (for *secitum*), *secāre*, cut (§ 77, note).
desēco, cut off; *insēco*, cut into.
9. *enēco, enecui, enectum, enecāre*, kill.
nēco, kill, has always, and *enēco* sometimes, *āvī, ātum*.
10. *mīco, micui* (no supine), *micāre*, shine forth.
emīco, emicui, emicātum, shine forth.
dīmīco, āvī, ātum, āre, fight, struggle, (regular).

III. PERFECTS IN *avi* AND *ui*, SUPINES IN *atum* AND *itum*, 1:

11. *Plico, plicāvi, plicātum*, and *plīcui, plīcitur, plīcāre*, fold.

applicō, attach; *explīcō*, unfold;
complīcō, fold together; *implīcō*, involve.

The others in *plico* are derived from the adjectives in *plex*, and have only *avi, atum*; as, *multiplīcō, duplīcō, supplīcō*.

§ 109.

PERFECTS WITH LENGTHENED ROOT-VOWELS.

SUPINES IN *tum*, 2:

1. *Iūvo, iūvi, iūtum, iuvāre*, help, assist (§ 97, note).

adiūvo, adiūvi, adiūtum, adiuvāre, help.

2. *lāvo, lāvi, lavātum, lautum* or *lōtum, lavāre* (obsolete, *lavēre* after the third), wash, bathe (§ 77, note).

The compounds have *luo* (cfr. § 118, 28).

§ 110.

PERFECTS WITH REDUPLICATION; SUPINES IN *tum*, 3:

1. *Do, dēdi, dātum, dāre*, give.

circumdo, surround;

satisdo, I give bail;

pessumdo, ruin;

venumdo, sell.

The other compounds of **do**, all dissyllables, belong to the third conjugation, and have *didi, ditum* (cfr. § 121, 17).

2. *sto, stēti, stātum, stāre*, stand.

Of the compounds of **sto**, the trisyllables have, in the perfect, *stēti*; the dissyllables, *stīti*. *Praesto* alone has a supine. However, the future part. act. of several occurs; as, *constāturus, instaturus, obstaturus*, and only *praestaturus*.

antesto, antestēti, antestāre, excel.

circumsto, circumstēti, circumstāre, stand around.

praesto, praestīti, praestitum, praestāre, execute, surpass.

consto, constīti, constāre, consist, cost.

insto, urge, press upon; *obsto*, hinder, stand against;

persto, persist; *resto*, remain, am left.

Disto, am distant, and *exsto*, exist, want also the perfect.

NOTE.—*Iuro*, I swear; *ceno*, I dine; *potō*, I drink, are regular. But the perfect part. pass. has also an active meaning; thus, *iuratus*, one who has sworn; *cenatus*, having dined, one who has dined; for *potatus*, the form *potus* is used, having drunk (§ 114, 5).

CHAPTER XX.

IRREGULAR PERFECTS AND SUPINES.

Second Conjugation.

§ 111.

PERFECTS WITH CHARACTERISTIC *v*, 5.

I. SUPINES IN *ētum*, 4:

1. *Dēleo*, *delēvi*, *delētum*, *delēre*, destroy, blot out.
2. *fleo*, *flēvi*, *flētum*, *flēre*, weep (*defleo*, weep over).
3. *neo*, *nēvi*, *nētum*, *nēre*, spin.
4. From the obsolete *plēo*, *plēvi*, *plētum*, *plēre*, fill:

<i>compleo</i> , fill up;	<i>impleo</i> , fill in;
<i>expleo</i> , fill out;	<i>suppleo</i> , supply.

II. SUPINE IN *itum*, 1:

5. *Abōleo*, *abolēvi*, *abolitum*, *abolēre*, utterly remove (§ 129).

§ 112.

PERFECTS WITH THE CHARACTERISTIC *s*, 20.

I. SUPINES IN *tum*, 3:

1. *Indulgeo*, *indulsi*, *indultum*, *indulgēre*, yield.
2. *torqueo*, *torsi*, *tortum*, *torquēre*, twist, torture.
contorqueo, turn round; *extorqueo*, wrest away.
3. *Augeo*, *auxi* (for *augsi*), *auctum*, *augēre*, enlarge.

II. SUPINES IN *sum*, 9:

4. *Ardeo*, *arsti*, *arsum*, *ardēre*, burn.
5. *haereo*, *haesti*, *haesum*, *haerēre*, cling, hang.
adhaereo, cleave to; *cohaereo*, hold together.
6. *iūbeo*, *iussi*, *iussum*, *iubēre*, command, bid.

7. *māneo, mansi, mansum, manēre, remain.*
permāneo, hold out; remaneo, stay behind.
8. *mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, mulcēre, caress, fondle.*
9. *mulgeo, mulsi, mulsum, mulgēre, milk (§ 76, note 2).*
10. *rīdeo, rīsi, rīsum, rīdēre, laugh.*
arrideo, smile at; irrideo, laugh at; subrideo, smile.
11. *suādeo, suāsi, suāsum, suadēre, advise.*
dissuādeo, advise against; persuadeo, induce, convince.
12. *tergeo, tersi, tersum, tergēre, wipe (also tergo, § 119, 57).*
abstergeo, wipe off; detergeo, wipe away.

III. NO SUPINE, 8:

13. *Algeo, alsi, algēre, feel cold.*
14. *fulgeo, fulsi, fulgēre, shine.*
15. *turgeo, tursi, turgēre, swell.*
16. *urgeo, ursi, urgēre, urge.*
17. *frīgeo, frīxi, frīgēre, am cold.*
18. *lūceo, luxi, lucēre, light (elūceo, shine forth).*
19. *lūgeo, luxi, lugēre, mourn, bewail.*
20. *connīceo, connīxi (and connīxi), connīvēre, wink at.*

§ 113.

PERFECTS BY LENGTHENING THE ROOT-VOWELS, 8:

I. SUPINES IN **tum**, 5:

1. *Cāveo, cāvi, cautum, cavēre, take care.*
2. *fāveo, fāvi, fautum, favēre, favor.*
3. *fōveo, fōvi, fōtum, fovēre, warm, cherish.*
4. *mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, movēre, move.*
admōveo, bring to; commoveo, stir up.
5. *vōveo, vōvi, vōtum, vovēre, vow.*
devōveo, curse, consecrate.
Citeo, civi, citum, ciēre, rouse (§ 127).

II. SUPINES IN **sum**, 2:

6. *Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, sedēre, sit.*
assideo, assēdi, assessum, assidēre, sit by.
obsideo, besiege; possideo, possess; circumsēdeo, invest.
supersēdeo, forbear.
7. *vīdeo, vīdi, visum, vidēre, see.*
invidéo, envy; providéo, foresee, provide.

III. No SUPINE, 1:

8. *Pāveo, pāvī, pavēre*, tremble, am afraid.

§ 114.

PERFECTS WITH REDUPLICATION, SUPINES IN *sum*, 5 (6):

I. THE COMPOUNDS DO NOT TAKE THE REDUPLICATION, 4:

1. *Mordeo, mōmordi, morsum, mordēre*, bite.
2. *pendeo, pēpendi (pensum), pendēre*, hang.
dependeo (neither perfect nor supine), hang down.
impendeo (neither perfect nor supine), overhang, threaten.
3. *spondeo, spōpondi, sponsum, spondēre*, promise.
respondeo, respondi, responsum, respondēre, answer.
4. *tondeo, tōtondi, tonsum, tondēre*, shear.
attondeo, clip, shorten.

II. WITHOUT REDUPLICATION, 2:

5. *Prandeo, prandi, pransum, prandēre*, breakfast.

The perf. part. pass. *pransus* also has an active meaning: having breakfasted, one who has breakfasted (§ 110, 2, note).

6. *strīdeo, strīdi*, (no supine), *stridēre*, hiss.

§ 115.

PERFECTS WITH PASSIVE FORM, 3:

1. *Audeo, ausus sum, audēre, dare (ausim = audeam)*.
2. *gaudeo, gavīsus sum, gaudēre*, rejoice.
3. *sōleo, solītus sum, solēre*, am used (to do).

These three verbs, as also *ſido* (§ 122, 20), on account of their partial passive inflection and active meaning, are called semi-deponenta.

§ 116.

PERFECTS REGULAR IN *ui*, SUPINE SHORTENED (BY THROWING OUT THE SHORT *i*, &c.), 5:

1. *Dōceo, docui, doctum, docēre*, teach.
dedocēo, unteach; *edocēo*, teach thoroughly.
2. *miscēo, miscui, mixtum and mīstum, miscēre, mix*.
demiscēo, mix with: *dermiscēo* confound.

3. *tēneo, tenui, tentum, tenēre*, hold.
abstineo, abstinui, abstentum, abstinēre, refrain.
attineo, pertain; *contineo*, keep together; *obtimeo*, maintain;
retineo, keep back; *portineo*, belong to; *sustineo*, bear up.
4. *torreo, torruī, tostum, torrēre*, scorch, roast.
5. *censeo, censui, censum, censēre*, value, deem.
recenseo, review, (supine: *recensum* and *recensitum*).
succenseo, am angry (for *suscenseo*).

§ 117.

1. PERFECTS REGULAR, NO SUPINE.

<i>Arceo</i> , keep off.	<i>nūleo</i> , glisten.
<i>coerceo, ui, itum</i> , restrain.	<i>pāleo, am</i> open.
<i>exerceo, ui, itum</i> , exercise.	<i>sīleo, am</i> silent.
<i>ēyco</i> , am destitute.	<i>sorbeo</i> , swallow.
<i>indigeo</i> , need.	<i>splendeo</i> , glitter.
<i>emūneo</i> , stand out.	<i>stūdeo</i> , apply oneself.
<i>flōreo</i> , blossom.	<i>tīmeo</i> , fear.
<i>horreo</i> , shudder.	<i>vīgeo, am</i> vigorous.
<i>abhorreo</i> , shudder at.	<i>vīreo, am</i> fresh, et.
<i>lāteo, am</i> concealed.	

2. NEITHER PERFECT NOR SUPINE.

<i>Aveo</i> , crave.	<i>languéo, am</i> faint.
<i>calveo, am</i> bald.	<i>maereo, am</i> in mourning.
<i>cāneo, am</i> gray.	<i>polleo, am</i> powerful.
<i>immūneo</i> , hang over, menace.	<i>squaleo, am</i> filthy.

3. DOUBLE PERFECT, NO SUPINE.

Ferveo, ferui and *ferbui, fervēre*, boil, glow.
liqueo, liqui and *licui, liquēre*, am liquid, clear.

CHAPTER XXI

PERFECTS AND SUPINES.

Third Conjugation.

§ 118.

PERFECTS WITH THE CHARACTERISTIC **u** or **v**, 59:I. SUPINES IN **tum**, 8:

1. *Alō, alui, altum*, (also *alītum*), *alēre*, nourish.
2. *cōlo, colui, cultum, colēre*, honor, till (the soil).
excōlo, perfect; *incolo*, dwell in.
3. *consūlo, consului, consultura, consulēre*, consult, take
counsel, care for (with dative).
4. *depso, depsui, depstum, depsēre*, knead.
5. *occūlo, occului, occultum, occulēre*, conceal.
6. *rāpio, rapui, raptum, rapēre*, seize, rob.
abripio, abripui, abreptum, abripēre, tear away.
arripio, snatch; *diripio*, tear asunder, plunder.
corripio, carry off; *eripio*, pull out.
7. *sēro, serui, sertum, serēre*, contrive, bind, entwine (§ 118,
56).
consēro, connect; *dissēro*, discourse, speak about;
desēro, abandon; *insēro*, engraft.
8. *texo, texui, textum, texēre*, weave.
contexo, braid; *retexo*, reverse, unweave.

II. SUPINES IN **ītum**, 7:

9. *Elicio, elicui, elicītum, elicēre*, lure forth.
compound of *lacio* (cfr. § 119, 16).
10. *frēmo, fremui, fremūtum, fremēre*, growl, grumble.
11. *gēmo, gemui, gemūtum, gemēre*, sigh.
12. *mōlo, molui, molītum, molēre*, grind.
13. *pinso, pinsui, pinsitum* (also *pinsi, pinsum* and *pistum*),
pinsēre, crush, pound.
14. *strēpo, strepui, strepītum, strepēre*, make noise, roar.
15. *vōmo, vomui, vomītum, vomēre*, spew.

III. No SUPINE, 4:

16. *Compesco, compescui, compescēre*, curb, repress.
 17. *sterto, stertui, stertēre*, snore.
 18. *tremo, tremui, tremēre*, tremble.
 19. *vōlo, volui, velle*, will (§ 141).
 mālo, mālui, malle, choose rather (§ 141).
 nōlo, nōlui, nolle, will not (§ 141).

NOTE.—The compounds of *cano* belong to this class; cfr. § 121, 1.

IV. CHANGE OF THE PRESENT STEM; SUPINES IN *ītum*, 3:

20. *Accumbo, accubui, accubitum, accumbēre*, lay myself down.
 incumbo, lie upon; *occumbo*, yield, die (§ 108, 2).
 21. *gigno, gēnui, genitum, gignēre*, beget.
 22. *pōno, pōsui, pōsitum, pōnēre*, place, put.
 antepōno, prefer; *expōno*, explain; *compōno*, bring together;
 oppōno, set against; *dispōno*, set in order; *propōno*, set forth.

V. SUPINE IN *ūtum*, 14:

23. *Acio, ācui* (for *acui*), *acūtum, acuēre*, sharpen.
 24. *arguo, argui, argūtum, arguēre*, charge with.
 coarguo, convict; *redarguo*, disprove.
 25. *exuo, exui, exūtum, exuēre*, pull off.
 26. *imbuo, imbui, imbūtum, imbuēre*, soak.
 27. *induo, indui, indūtum, induēre*, put on.
 28. *luo, lui, lūtum, luēre*, expiate (wash, § 109, 2, and 77, note).
 abluo, wash away; *eluo*, wash out; *diluo*, dissolve; *polluo*, soil.
 29. *minuo, minui, minūtum, minuēre*, diminish.
 30. *nuo, nui, nūtum, nuēre*, nod (§ 77, note).
 abnuo, refuse; *adnuo*, nod to.
 31. *spuo, spui, spūtum, spuēre*, spit.
 32. *stātuo, statui, statūtum, statuēre*, fix, determine.
 constituo, constitui, constitūtum, constituēre, arrange, resolve.
 instituo, establish; *destituo*, forsake; *restituo*, restore.
 33. *suo, sui, sūtum, suēre*, sew.
 34. *tribuo, tribui, tribūtum, tribuēre*, grant.
 contribuo, contribute; *distribuo*, divide.
 35. *solvo, solvi* (for *solvui*), *solūtum, solvēre*, loose.
 absolvo, acquit; *dissolvo*, dissolve.

36. *volvo, volvi, volūtum, volvēre, roll.*
convolvo, roll up; involvo, wrap up.

VI. NO SUPINE, 5:

37. *Batuo, batui, batuēre, fence, strike.*
 38. *congruo, congrui, congruēre, coincide.*
 39. *mētuo, metui, metuēre, fear.*
 40. *pluo, (pluit, it rains), plui (and plūvi), pluēre, rain.*
 41. *sternuo, sternui, sternuēre, sneeze.*

VII. SUPINE IN ūTUM, 1:

42. *Ruo, rui, rūtum, ruēre, fall (§ 77, note).*
corruo, fall down; irruo, rush into;
dīruo, destroy; obruo, overwhelm.

VIII. PERFECTS IN IVI, SUPINES IN ITUM, 9:

43. *Arcesso, arcessīvi, arcessītum, arcessēre, summon.*
 44. *capesso, capessīvi, capessītum, capessēre, seize.*
 45. *facesso, facessīvi, facessītum, facessēre, execute, perform.*
 46. *lacesso, lacessīvi, lacessītum, lacessēre, excite, provoke.*
 47. *cūpio, cupīvi, cupītum, cupēre, long for, desire.*
 48. *pēto, petīvi, petītum, petēre, seek after, attack.*
appēto, strive; repēto, demand back.
 49. *quaero (quaeso, § 152), quaesīvi, quaesītum, quaerēre, ask.*
aequiro, adquisiui, adquisītum, acquirēre, acquire.
inquiro, search into; requiro, inquire, miss.
 50. *rūdo, ructīvi, rudītum, rudēre, bray.*
 51. *tēro, trīvi (for terīvi, syncope), trītum, terēre, rub.*
contēro, grind; detēro, rub away.

IX. PERFECTS IN IVI, NO SUPINE, 2:

52. *Incesso, incessīvi and incessi, incessēre, assail.*
 53. *sāpio (sapīvi and sapui), sapēre, taste, am wise.*

X. PERFECTS IN VI, BY REJECTING A CONSONANT FROM THE PRESENT, SUPINES IN TUM, 6:

54. *Līno, lēvi, and līvi, lītum, linēre, rub over, besmear.*
 55. *šīno, šīvi, šītum, sinēre, allow.*
desīno, cease; desīvi or desii, desītum, desinēre (desītum est, only with the infinitive passive, instead of desīit, § 146, note).

56. *sĕro, sĕvi, sĕtum, serĕre*, sow, plant (§ 118, 7).
insĕro, insĕvi, insĕtum, inserĕre, put in, implant; *obĕro*, sow about.
57. *cerno (crĕvi, crĕtum), cernĕre*, see, separate.
decerno, decide; *discerno*, distinguish.
58. *spĕrno, sprĕvi, sprĕtum, spĕrnĕre*, despise.
59. *stĕrno, strĕvi, strĕtum, stĕrnĕre*, spread out. stretch out.
constĕrno, cover; *prostĕrno*, overthrow.

XI. INCHOATIVES IN *sco* (cfr. § 129).

§ 119.

PERFECTS WITH THE CHARACTERISTIC *s, es*.

I. SUPINES IN *tum*, 41:

a. Present in *po*, 5:

1. *Carpo, carpsi, carptum, carpĕre*, pluck.
concerpo, carpsi, cerptum, carpĕre, tear in pieces,
decerpo, pluck off; *discerpo*, rend.
2. *rĕpo, repsi, reptum, repĕre*, creep.
arrĕpo, creep to; *obrĕpo*, steal upon.
3. *serpo, serpsi, serptum, serpĕre*, glide, crawl.
4. *scalpo, scalpsi, scalptum, scalpĕre*, scrape, scratch.
5. *sculpo, sculpsi, sculptum, sculpĕre*, carve, chisel.

b. Present in *bo*, 3:

6. *Glŭbo, glupsi (for glubsi), gluptum, glubĕre*, peel.
7. *nŭbo, nupsi, nuptum, nubĕre*, take a husband (*viro*, marry a husband).
8. *scribo, scripsi, scriptum, scribĕre*, write.
adscribo, ascribe; *praescribo*, dictate;
inscribo, write in; *proscribo*, outlaw.

c. Present in *mo (mno)*, 4 (5):

9. *Cōmo, compsi, comptum* (§ 76, note 2), *comĕre*, adorn.
10. *dĕmo, dempsi, demptum, demĕre*, take away.
11. *prōmo, prompsi, promptum, promĕre*, take out.
12. *sŭmo, sumpsi, sumptum, sumĕre*, take.
absŭmo, waste; *consŭmo*, spend.
13. *contemno, contempsi, contemptum, contemnĕre*, despise.

d. Present in co (cio, quo), 2 (5):

14. *Dico, dixi* (for *dicsi*), *dictum, dicere*, say.

edico, declare; *praedico*, foretell.

15. *dūco, duxi, ductum, ducere*, lead.

addūco, lead to; *obdūco*, veil;

edūco, lead forth; *subdūco*, withdraw.

16. (*lacio, laxi, lactum, lacere*, entice, is obsolete).

The compounds have *licio, lexi, lectum*; as,

allicio, allure; *pellicio*, decoy;

illicio, seduce; (*elicio* has **ui, itum**, § 118, 9).

17. (*spicio, spexi, spectum, specere*, catch a sight of).

adspicio, adspexi, adspectum, adspicere, look on;

conspicio, look at; *prospicio*, look forward;

respicio, look back; *despicio*, disdain;

perspicio, see through; *suspicio*, look upward.

18. *Cōquo, coxi, coctum, coquere*, cook.

concoquo, digest; *decoquo*, boil down.

e. Present in go, 14:

19. *Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, cingere*, gird, surround.

20. (*figo, fixi, flictum, figere*, strike).

affligo, strike down; *confligo*, combat; *infligo, inflicto*.

(*profligo*, cast down; like *laudo*).

21. *frigo, frixi, frictum, frigere*, roast.

22. *iungo, iunxi, iunctum, iungere*, join, unite.

adiungo, add; *disiungo*, part;

coniungo, join together; *subiungo*, annex.

23. *lingo, linxi, linctum, lingere*, lick.

24. *mungo* (*emungo*), *munxi, munctum, mungere*, blow the nose.

25. *plango, plansi, planctum, plangere*, strike, lament.

26. *rego, rexi, rectum, regere*, govern, guide.

arrigo, arrazi, arrectum, arrigere, raise.

corrigo, improve; *erigo*, erect;

dirigo, direct; *porrigo*, stretch out.

Pergo (for *perrigo*), *perrazi, perrectum, pergere*, pass on.

surgo (for *surrigo*) *surrexi, surrectum, surgere*, rise.

27. *Diligo, dilexi, dilectum, diligere*, love.

intelligo (*intelligo*), understand; *negligo*, neglect.

These are compounds of *lego*; cfr. § 120, 7.

28. (*stinguo, stinxi, stinctum, stinguere*, quench).
distinguo, distinguish; *extinguo*, put out.
29. *sūgo, suxi, suctum, sugere*, suck.
30. *tēgo, texi, tectum, tegere*, cover.
contēgo, cover up; *obtēgo*, screen;
detēgo, reveal; *protēgo*, defend.
31. *tīngo, tinxi, tinctum, tingere*, soak, dye.
32. *ungo, unxi, unctum, ungere*, anoint.
- The compounds of *pungo* belong to this class; § 121, 5.

f. Present in *ho*, 2:

33. *Trāho, traxi, tractum, trahere*, draw.
contrāho, draw together; *distrāho*, pull asunder.
34. *vēho, vexi, vectum, vehere*, carry (transitive).
advēho, carry to; *transvēho*, carry across.
 (*Vehor*, I am carried, I ride; neuter (cfr. § 104), *invēhor*, I scold.)

g. Present *ngo*; Supine rejects the *n*, 3:

35. *Fingo, finxi, fictum, fingere*, frame, imagine.
36. *pingo, pinxi, pictum, pingere*, paint.
37. *stringo, strinxi, strictum, stringere*, pull, graze.
adstringo, tighten; *obstringo*, pledge;
destringo, strip; *perstringo*, draw through, reprove.

h. Present in *uo* (*vo*), 2:

38. *Struo, struxi, structum, struere*, build, pile up.
construo, construct; *exstruo*, build up;
destruo, destroy, pull down; *instruo*, arrange, teach.
39. *vīvo, vixi, victum, vivere*, live.

i. Present in *ro*, 2:

40. *Gēro, gessi, gestum, gerere*, bear, conduct.
congēro, carry on; *digēro*, dispose.
41. *ūro, ussi, ustum, urere*, burn (transitive).
combūro, consume; *inuro*, brand.

II. SUPINES IN *sum*, 27:

a. Present in *do*, 10:

42. *Claudo, clausi, clausum, claudere*, close.
conclūdo, *conclūsi, conclūsum, conclūdere*, shut up.
inclūdo, confine; *reclūdo*, unlock.
43. *dīvido, divisi, divisum, dividere*, divide.

44. *laedo, laesi, laesum, laedēre*, dash against, hurt.
allido, allisi, allisum, allidēre, strike against.
collido, strike together; *elido*, strike out.
45. *lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, ludēre*, play.
allūdo, sport with; *illūdo*, jeer.
46. *plaudo, plausi, plausum, plaudēre*, clap.
applaudo, applaud; *explōdo*, hoot off.
47. *rādo, rāsi, rāsum, radēre*, scrape, shave.
48. *rōdo, rōsi, rōsum, rodēre*, gnaw.
arrōdo, nibble; *corrōdo*, eat away.
49. *trūdo, trūsi, trūsum, trudēre*, jostle, push.
abstrūdo, conceal; *intrūdo*, obtrude.
50. *vādo (vāsi, vāsum), vadēre*, go.
evādo, escape; *invādo*, assault.
51. *cēdo, cessi, cessum, cedēre*, give way.
accēdo, approach; *praecēdo*, go before; *antecēdo*, excel;
procēdo, advance; *concedo*, yield; *recēdo*, retreat.

b. Present in to (tio), 3:

52. *Mēto, messui, messum, metēre*, mow.
demēto, cut, reap.
53. *mīto, mīsi, missum, mīllēre*, send.
admitto, allow; *omitto*, pass over; *amitto*, lose; *permitto*, let;
committo, trust, commit; *promitto*, promise;
intermitto, leave off; *remitto*, send back.
54. *quātio, quāssi, quassum, quātēre*, shake.
concūtio, concussī, concussum, concutēre, shake violently;
excūtio, shake out, search; *percutio*, pierce.

c. Present in rgo, 3:

55. *Mergo, mersi, mersum, mergere*, plunge (§ 76, note 2).
demergo, sink down; *submergo*, plunge under.
56. *spargo, sparsi, sparsum, spargēre*, scatter.
aspergo, aspersi, aspersum, aspergēre, sprinkle.
conspargo, besprinkle; *dispargo*, scatter about.
57. *tergo, tersi, tersum, tergēre*, wipe.
 (The compounds fall under the second conjugation, § 112, 9).

d. Perfects in xi, Supines in xum, 5:

58. *Figo, fixi, fixum, figēre*, fasten.
affigo, attach; *transfigo*, pierce through.
59. *fluo, fluxi, fluxum, fluēre*, flow.
confluo, flow together; *praeterfluo*, flow by.

60. *flecto, flexi, flexum, flectĕre*, bend.

deflecto, turn aside; *reflecto*, turn back.

61. *pecto, pexi, pexum, pectĕre*, comb.

62. *necto, nexi and nexui, nexum, nectĕre*, tie, bind.

The compounds have always *ui* in the perfect; thus,
annecto, annexui, annexum, annectĕre, tie to.

connecto, connectui, connectum, connectĕre, tie together.

e. Anomalous, 2:

63. *Prĕmo, pressi, pressum, premĕre*, press, squeeze.

comprĕmo, compressi, compressum, comprimĕre, press together.
exprĕmo, squeeze out; *opprimĕre*, bear down.

64. *Vello, vuli (velli is preferable, § 122, 13), vulsum, vellĕre*, pluck.

f. Defectives, without Supine or without Perfect, 4:

65. *Ango, anxi, angĕre*, alarm.

66. *ningo (ningit, it snows), ninxi, ningĕre*, snow.

67. *Frendo, sup. frĕsum or fressum, frendĕre*, gnash, bruise.

68. *Plecto, sup. plectum, plectĕre*, braid (cfr. § 185, 12).

§ 120.

PERFECTS BY LENGTHENING THE ROOT-VOWEL, 16:

I. SUPINES IN **tum**, 12:

a. Changing ă into ĕ, 4:

1. *Ago, ĕgi, actum, agĕre*, drive, do.

circumăgo, drive round; *perăgo*, to lead through.

Abigo, abĕgi, abactum, abigĕre, drive away;

adigo, drive to;

redigo, drive back;

exigo, complete, pass by;

subigo, subject.

Cogō (coigo), coĕgi, coactum, cogĕre, collect, force.

dĕgo, dĕgi, no supine, *degĕre*, spend (*vitam*).

2. *căpio, cĕpi, captum, capĕre*, take, seize, catch.

accipio, accĕpi, acceptum, accipĕre, get;

decipio, cheat;

percipio, conceive;

incipio, begin;

praecipio, enjoin, order.

3. *făcio, fĕci, factum, facĕre*, do, make.

patefăcio, open; *satisfăcio*, satisfy.

Afficio, affĕci, affectum, afficĕre, affect.

conficio, accomplish;

interficio, kill.

desficio, forsake;

proficio, contribute;

efficio, bring about;

reficio, mend, cfr. § 144, 2.

4. *iācio, iēcī, iactum, iacēre*, throw ;
abiicio, abiēcī, abiectum, abiicēre, throw away ;
adiicio, add ; *subiicio*, subject ;
deicio, cast down ; *traicio*, cross.

b. Retaining the Vowel of the Present, 3 :

5. *Ēmo, ēmi, emptum, ěmēre*, buy (originally, take) ;
adimo, adēmi, adeptum, adimēre, take away ;
dirimo, part ; *interimo*, slay.
6. *fūgio, fūgi, fugitum, fugēre*, flee.
aufugio, fly from ; *confugio*, take refuge.
effugio, escape ; *profugio*, run away.
7. *lēgo, lēgi, lectum, legēre*, read.
perlēgo, read through ; *relēgo*, read again.
Colligo, collēgi, collectum, colligēre, gather.
deligo, choose ; *eligo*, select.
- (Three compounds of *lēgo* have the perfect in **ex1**, § 119, 27.)

c. Dropping the n (m) of the Present, 5 :

8. *Frango, frēgi, fractum, frangēre*, break.
defringo, defrēgi, defractum, defringēre, break off.
infringo, impair ; *refringo*, break open.
9. *linquo, liqui, lictum, linquēre*, leave.
relinquo, leave behind, abandon.
10. *pango, pēgi, pactum, pangēre*, fasten (§ 121, 4).
compingo, pēgi, pactum, compingēre, compose.
11. *vinco, vīci, victum, vincēre*, conquer, vanquish.
convinco, prove ; *devinco*, subdue.
12. *rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, rumpēre*, rend, break.
corrumpo, spoil ; *erumpo*, burst forth.

II. SUPINES IN **sum**, 3 :

13. *Fundo, fūdi, fūsum, fundēre*, pour.
confundo, disturb ; *profundo*, spill.
14. *ēdo, ēdi, ēsum, edēre*, eat (cfr. § 139).
15. *fōdio, fōdi, fōssum, fodēre*, dig.
confōdio, stab ; *effōdio*, dig out.

NO SUPINE :

16. *Scābo, scābi, scabēre*, scrape, scratch.

§ 121.

PERFECTS FORMED BY REDUPLICATION, 20:

I. SUPINES IN **tum**, 6:

1. *Cāno, cēcīni, cantum, canēre*, sing.
(*concino, agree, concinui, concentum*).
2. *pārio, pēpēri, partum, parēre*, bear, bring forth (§ 77, note).
3. *tendo, tetēdi, tentum (tensum), tendēre*, stretch.
(The compounds take no reduplication):
attēdo, attēdi, attentum, attēdēre, apply, give heed.
contēdo, exert; ostēdo, show.
4. *pango, pēpēgi, pactum, pangēre*, contract (cfr. § 120, 10, and 135, 24).
5. *tango, tētēgi, tactum, tangēre*, touch.
(Compounds without reduplication):
attēgo, attēgi, attactum, attēgēre, touch upon.
(*Contēgit, contigit* and *obtingit, obigit*, it happens.)
6. *pungo, pūpūgi, punctum, pungēre*, sting.
The compounds have only *punxi* in the perfect:
compungo, compunxi, compunctum, compungēre, sting sharply.
interpungo, interpunxi, interpunctum, interpungēre, punctuate

II. SUPINES IN **sum**, 10:

7. *Cūdo, cēcūdi, cāsūm, cadēre*, fall.
(Compounds without reduplication):
occido, occidi, occisum, occidēre, go down, perish.
incido, fall into; recido, fall back;
accidit, it happens.
8. *caedo, cēcūdi, caesum, caedēre*, hew.
(Compounds without reduplication, supine *isum*):
abscido, abscidi, abscisum, abscidēre, cut off;
conscido, cut to pieces; incido, cut into;
occido, kill; praecido, cut away.
9. (*cello, ceculi, culsum, cellēre*, impel);
percello, percūli, percūsum, percellēre, smite, beat down.
antecello and *praecello*, surpass, and *excello*, am eminent, have no perfect nor supine.
10. *curro, cucurri, cursum, currēre*, run.
(The compounds have generally no reduplication):
concurro, run together; occurro, meet;
discurro, run about; succurro, aid.

11. *fallo, fēfelli, falsum, fallēre*, deceive.
refello, refelli, no supine, *refellēre*, rebut.
12. *pello, pēpūli, pulsum, pellēre*, drive, rout.
 (The compounds without reduplication):
compello, compūli, compulsum, compellēre, force;
expello, drive out; *repello*, drive back.
13. *pendo, pēpendi, pensum, pendēre*, hang, weigh, pay.
 (Compounds without reduplication):
expendo, expēdi, expensum, expendēre, spend;
impendo, devote; *rependo*, repay;
perpendo, consider; *suspendo*, hang up;
14. *parco, pēperci, parsum, parcēre*, spare.
15. *tundo, tūtūdi, tūsum (tunsum), tundēre*, beat, bruise.
 (Compounds without reduplication):
contundo, contūdi, contūsum, contundēre, grind.
obtundo, blunt; *retundo*, beat back.
16. (*fendo, fēfendi, fensum, fendēre*, strike, is found only in the compounds; the perfects admit no reduplication).
defendo, defendi, defensum, defendēre, protect;
offendo, offēdi, offensum, offendēre, strike against, displease.

III. PERFECTS WHICH DOUBLE THE FINAL SYLLABLE;

SUPINES IN **tum**, 2:

17. *Crēdo, crēdīdi, crēdītum, credēre*, believe, trust.
 Thus all dissyllables derived from *dare* (110, 1):
abdo, remove, hide; *prōdo*, betray;
addo, add; *reddo*, return, render;
condo, found, build; *trādo*, surrender;
perdo, destroy; *vendo*, sell.
18. *Sisto, stīti* (for *sistīti*), *stātum, sistēre*, place.
 (The compounds have *stīti* in the perfect, *stītum* in the supine).
desisto, leave off; *persisto*, persevere.
exsisto, come forth; *resisto*, oppose.
circumsisto, surround, has *circumstēti* in the perfect, from *circumsto*; but no supine.

IV. PERFECTS BY REDUPLICATION;

SUPINE WANTING, 2:

19. *Disco, dīdīci, discēre*, learn.
 (The compounds keep the reduplication);
addisco, addīdīci, addiscēre, learn more;
dedisco, unlearn; *edisco*, learn by heart.

20. *posco, pōposci, pōscēre*, demand.
 (Compounds keep the reduplication);
deposco, depoposci, deposcēre, require;
exposco, entreat; *reposco*, claim.

§ 122.

PERFECTS WITHOUT definite TENSE CHARACTERISTIC, 19

I. SUPINES IN *tum*, 4:

1. *Bībo, bibi, pōtum, bibēre*, drink.
 Instead of *bībitum*, etc., *potum, potus* and *poturus* are used.
ēbībo, drain; *imbībo*, drink in.
2. *īco, īci, ictum, icēre*, strike (*icere foedus*, strike a bargain).
3. *lāmo, lāmbi, lāmbitum, lāmbēre*, lick.
4. *fēro, tūli* (for *tetuli*), *lātum, ferre*, carry (§ 140).

II. SUPINES IN *sum*, 12:

5. *Fīndo, fīdi, fissum, findēre*, split.
diffīndo, diffīdi, diffissum, diffindēre, divide.
6. *scīndo, scīdi, scissum, scindēre*, tear, cut,
abscīndo, abscīdi, abscissum, abscindēre, cut off;
conscīndo, tear to pieces; *rescīndo*, tear away, annul.
7. *Accendo, accendi, accensum, accendēre*, kindle.
incendo, fire; *succendo*, kindle.
8. *cūdo, cūdi, cūsum, cudēre*, beat, forge, stamp.
9. *mando, mandī, mansum, mandēre*, chew.
10. *pādo, pādi, passum (pansum), pandēre*, spread out.
11. *prēhendo, prehendi, prehensum,prehendēre*, seize, catch
comprehendo, understand; *reprehendo*, rebuke.
12. *scādo, scādi, scansum, scandēre*, climb.
ascendo, ascendi, ascensum, ascendēre, mount;
conscendo, embark; *transcendo*, overstep.
13. *Vello, velli, vulsum, vellēre*, pluck (§ 119, 64).
divello, tear asunder; *evello*, pluck out.
14. *verro, verri, versum, verrēre*, scour, sweep.
15. *verto, verti, versum, vertēre*, turn.
averto, turn away; *evertō*, destroy;
converto, turn to; *revertō*, turn round (§ 135, 15).
16. *sīdo, sēdi (sīdi), sessum, sidēre*, sit down (§ 113, 6).
consido, settle; *subsido*, abide.

III. NO SUPINE, 3:

17. *Strīdo, strīdi, stridēre*, hiss (§ 114, 6).
18. *vīso, vīsi, visere*, visit (§ 113, 7).
19. *psallo, psalli, psallēre*, play on the lyre.

V. SEMIDEFONENT (cfr. § 115)

Fīdo, fīsus sum, fidēre, trust.

confīdo, rely upon; *diffīdo*, mistrust.

NOTE.—Without perfect and supine: *ambigo, ambigere*, doubt; *clango*, I sound; *furo*, I rave; *glisco*, I glow; *hisco*, I yawn; *vergo*, I am turned towards.

CHAPTER XXII.

IRREGULAR PERFECTS AND SUPINES.

Fourth Conjugation.

§ 123.

PERFECTS IN **ui**, SUPINES IN **tum**, 4:

1. *Ap̄erio, aperui, apertum, aperire*, open.
2. *ōp̄erio, operui, opertum, operire*, cover, hide.
3. *sāl̄io, salui (salii), (saltum), salire*, spring, leap.
assilio, assilui (assili), assultum, assilire, spring upon.
desilio, leap down; *transilio*, leap over.
4. *sār̄io, sarui (or sarivi), saritum, sarire*, hoe, weed.

§ 124.

PERFECTS WITH THE CHARACTERISTIC **s**, 9:I. SUPINES IN **tum**, 8:

1. *Farcio, farsis, fartum, farcire*, stuff (§ 76, note 2).
refercio, referis, refertum, referire, fill up.
2. *fulcio, fulsi, fultum, fulcire*, prop.
3. *sarcio, sarsis, sartum, sarcire*, patch, mend.
4. *haurio, hausis, haustum, haurire*, draw.
5. *saepio, saepis, saeptum, saepire*, fence in.
6. *sancio, sanxis, (sanctum and) sancitum, sancire*, enact, ratify.

7. *vincio, vinxi, vinctum, vincĭre*, bind.
8. *amicio (amixi), amictum, amicĭre*, clothe.

II. SUPINE IN **sum**, 1:

9. *Sentio, sensi, sensum, sentĭre*, feel, think.
consentio, agree; dissentio, differ.

§ 125.

PERFECTS LENGTHENING THE ROOT-VOWEL:

SUPINE IN **tum**, 1:

- Vĕnio, vĕni, ventum, venĭre*, come.
advĕnio, arrive; *invĕnio*, find,
evĕnio, result; *subvĕnio*, assist.

§ 126.

PERFECTS WITH SUPPRESSED REDUPLICATIONS.

SUPINES IN **tum**, 2:

1. *Compĕrio (pario, § 121, 2), compĕri, compertum, compĕrĭre*, ascertain.
2. *repĕrio, repĕri (reppĕri), repertum, reperĭre*, find, discover.

§ 127.

REGULAR PERFECTS, BUT VARYING SUPINES, 4:

1. *Cio, cĭvi, cĭtum, cĭre*, rouse (mostly *cĭeo, cĭĕre*, § 113, 5).
concio, stir up, assemble (participle, *concitus* and *concitus*).
2. *eo, ĩvi, ĩtum, ĩre*, go (irregular, § 142).
3. *queo, quĭvi, quĭtum, quĭre*, can (§ 143).
4. *sĕpĕlio, sĕpĕlĭvi, sepultum, sĕpelĭre*, bury.

§ 128.

Some have neither perfect nor supine.

1. *fĕrio, ferire*, smite, form (as *foedus*, an alliance).
2. *superbio, superbire*, am haughty.
3. *parturio*, am in labor. Thus all desideratives in **ũrio** (§ 183, 2).

CHAPTER XXIII.

PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF THE
INCHOATIVE VERBS.

§ 129.

The inchoative verbs (*i. e.*, such as denote a beginning or growing, § 183, 3) end in **scō**. This syllable however always vanishes in the perfect and supine.

VERBAL INCHOATIVES FROM OBSOLETE ROOT-VERBS, 10:

1. *Adōlesco, adolēvi, adultum, adolescēre*, grow up.
2. *abolesco, abolēvi (abolitum), abolescēre*, vanish (cfr. 111, 5).
3. *exolesco, exolēvi, exolētum, exolescēre*, grow out of use.
4. *obsolesco, obsolēvi, obsolētum, obolescēre*, grow out of use.
5. *cresco, crēvi, crētum, crescēre*, grow.
decreasco, wane; *inresco*, increase.
6. *nosco, nōvi, nōtum, noscēre*, learn to know (§ 146).
ignosco, forgive.
agnosco, agnōvi, agnitum, agnoscēre, acknowledge.
cognosco, cognōvi, cognitum, cognoscēre, perceive
7. *quiesco, quīēvi, quīētum, quiescēre*, repose.
8. (*suesco, suēvi*), *suētum (suescēre)* am used to.
assuesco, have the habit; *consuesco*, am wont.
9. *Pasco, pāvi, pastum, pascēre*, pasture (as shepherd),
(*pascor*, browse, intransitive, § 104); *depasco*, feed on.
10. *Conquinisco, conquasi* (no Supine), cower down.

§ 130.

VERBAL INCHOATIVES WITH THE PERFECT (AND SUPINE)
OF THEIR STILL CURRENT PRIMITIVES, 8 (14):

1. *Inveterasco, inveterāvi, inveterātum, inveterascēre (inveterārē)*, grow old (*inveterātus*, rooted).
2. *convalesco, convālui, convālītum, convalescēre (valēre)*, grow strong, healthy.
3. *exardesco, exarsi, exarsum, exardescēre (ardēre)*, am inflamed.
4. *coalesco, coālui, coalītum, coalescēre (alēre)*, grow together, become firm.

5. *concupisco, concupīvi, concupītum, concupiscēre (cupēre)*, strive after, long for.
 6. *revivisco, revixi, revictum, reviviscēre, (vivēre)*, to come to life again, awake.
 7. *obdormisco, obdormīvi, obdormītum, obdormiscēre, (dormīre)*, fall asleep.
 8. *scisco, scīvi, scītum, sciscēre (scire)*, decree.
conscisco, inflict, e. g., mīhi mortem; descisco, fall away; rescisco, find out.
- WITHOUT SUPINE.
9. *āresco, arui, arescēre (arēre)*, to dry.
exaresco, dry up.
 10. *indōlesco, indolui, indolescēre (dolēre)*, feel pain.
 11. *pūtesco, putui, putescēre (pūtēre)*, decay.
 12. *rūbesco, rubui, rubescēre (rubēre)*, redden.
erubescō, blush.
 13. *ingēmisco, ingemui, ingemiscēre (gemēre)*, sigh.
 14. *resipisco, resipīvi, and resipui, resipiscere (sapēre)*, become reasonable again.

§ 131.

DENOMINATIVE INCHOATIVES FROM ADJECTIVES; PERFECTS IN **ui**, NO SUPINE.

1. *Crēbresco, crebrui, crebrescēre (creber)*, become frequent.
inorebresco and perorebresco, spread abroad (rumors).
2. *evānesco, evanui, evanescēre (vanus, vain)*, vanish.
3. *innōtesco, innotui, innotescēre (notus)*, become known.
4. *mātūresco, maturui, maturescēre (maturus)*, ripen.
5. *obdūresco, obdurui, obdurescēre (durus)*, harden.
6. *obmūtesco, obmutui, obmutescēre (mutus, dumb)*, grow dumb.
7. *recrūdesco, recrudui, recrudescēre (crudus)*, bleed afresh, break out again.

Other substantive inchoatives have neither perfect nor supine; as, *ditasco, I grow rich; puerasco, I become a boy; etc.*

§ 132.

I. THE FOLLOWING FIVE VERBS HAVE THE PERFECT AND SUPINE ALIKE:

1. *Cerno, see, and cresco, grow* (§ 118, 57, and 129, 5).
2. *cubo, lie, and cumbo, lay myself* (§ 108, 2, and 118, 20).

3. *mulceo*, caress, and *mulgeo*, milk (§ 112, 8 and 9).
4. *pendeo*, hang, and *pendo*, hang (§114, 2, and 121, 18).
5. *sedeo*, sit, and *sido*, sit down (§ 113, 6, and 122, 16).

II. THE FOLLOWING FOUR VERBS HAVE THE PERFECT ALIKE :

1. *Frigeo*, am cold, and *frigo*, roast (§ 112, 17, and 119, 21).
2. *fulgeo*, shine, and *fulcio*, prop (§ 112, 14, and 124, 2).
3. *luceo*, light, and *lugeo*, mourn (§ 112, 18 and 19).
4. *paveo*, am afraid, and *pasco*, pasture (§ 113, 8, and 129, 9).

III. THE FOLLOWING EIGHT VERBS HAVE THE SUPINE ALIKE :

1. *Frico*, rub, *frigo*, roast (§ 108, 7, and 119, 21).
2. *maneo*, remain, and *mando*, chew (§ 112, 7, and 122, 9).
3. *pando*, spread out, and *patior*, suffer (§ 122, 10, and 135, 18).
4. *pango*, fasten, and *paciscor*, bargain (§ 120, 10, and 135, 24).
5. *succenseo*, am angry, and *succendo*, kindle (§ 116, 5, and 122, 7).
6. *teneo*, hold, and *tendo*, stretch (§ 116, 3, and 121, 8).
7. *verro*, sweep, and *verto*, turn (§ 122, 14 and 15).
8. *vivo*, live, and *vinco*, conquer (§ 119, 39, and 120, 11).

IV. THE FOLLOWING TWELVE HAVE THE PRESENT ALIKE, BUT BELONG TO DIFFERENT CONJUGATIONS :

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>aggëro</i> , 1. heap ; | 1. <i>aggëro</i> , 3. convey. |
| 2. <i>appello</i> , 1. call ; | 2. <i>appello</i> , 3. land. |
| 3. <i>compello</i> , 1. address ; | 3. <i>compello</i> , 3. force. |
| 4. <i>colligo</i> , 1. tie together ; | 4. <i>colligo</i> , 3. gather. |
| 5. <i>consterno</i> , 1. startle ; | 5. <i>consterno</i> , 3. cover. |
| 6. <i>effëro</i> , 1. make wild ; | 6. <i>effëro</i> , 3. carry out. |
| 7. <i>fundo</i> , 1. found ; | 7. <i>fundo</i> , 3. pour. |
| 8. <i>mando</i> , 1. charge ; | 8. <i>mando</i> , 3. chew. |
| 9. <i>obsëro</i> , 1. bar ; | 9. <i>obsëro</i> , 3. sow about. |
| 10. <i>pando</i> , 1. curve ; | 10. <i>pando</i> , 3. spread out. |
| 11. <i>resëro</i> , 1. unbolt ; | 11. <i>resëro</i> , 3. sow again. |
| 12. <i>volo</i> , 1. fly ; | 12. <i>volo</i> , irreg., will. |

V. THE EIGHT FOLLOWING HAVE THE PRESENT ALIKE BUT DIFFERENT QUANTITY AND CONJUGATION :

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Cölo</i> , 1. filter ; | 1. <i>cölo</i> , 3. till, honor. |
| 2. <i>dico</i> , 1. dedicate ; | 2. <i>dico</i> , 3. say. |
| 3. <i>indico</i> , 1. inform ; | 3. <i>indico</i> , 3. proclaim. |
| 4. <i>praedico</i> , 1. praise ; | 4. <i>praedico</i> , 3. foretell. |
| 5. <i>edüco</i> , 1. rear ; | 5. <i>edüco</i> , 3. lead out. |
| 6. <i>lëgo</i> , 1. send, bequeath ; | 6. <i>lëgo</i> , 3. read. |
| 7. <i>allëgo</i> , 1. despatch ; | 7. <i>allëgo</i> , 3. choose. |
| 8. <i>relëgo</i> , 1. banish ; | 8. <i>relëgo</i> , 3. read again. |

CHAPTER XXIV.

PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF DEPO-
NENT VERBS.

§ 133.

1. The perfect of a deponent verb contains the form of the supine; *e. g.*, perf., *hortātus sum*; supine, therefore, is *hortātum*.

2. All the deponents of the first conjugation form the perfect and supine regularly. There is not a single exception in 170 deponents which belong to this conjugation (*vide* § 102).

§ 134.

The second conjugation embraces eight deponents; five are regular; two have the perfect irregular; and one has no perfect:

1. *Līcēor*, *licītus sum*, *licēri*, bid on.
pollicēor, promise.
2. *mērēor*, *merītus sum*, *merēri*, deserve (also *mereo*, § 92, 2).
3. *misēreor*, *miserītus sum*, *miserēri*, pity (§ 154, 2).
4. *tueor*, *tuītus sum*, *tuēri* (see), defend.
contueor, survey; *intueor*, look at.
5. *vēreor*, *verītus sum*, *verēri*, fear, dread.
revereor, fear, respect.
6. *Fāteor*, *fassus sum*, *fatēri*, avow, own.
confiteor, *confessus sum*, *confitēri*, acknowledge.
profiteor, avow openly.
7. *reor*, *rātus sum*, *rēri*, deem, believe.
8. *mēdeor* (no perf.) *medēri*, heal.

§ 135.

The third conjugation has twenty-nine deponents:

1. *Fruor*, *frūitus (fructus) sum*, *frui*, enjoy (§ 77, note).
perfruor, enjoy fully.
2. *fungor*, *functus sum*, *fungi*, execute, administer.
defungor, acquit; *perfungor*, fulfill.

3. *vēhor, vectus sum, vehi*, ride (intrans., § 119, 34).
invēhor, scold, upbraid.
4. *lōquor, locūtus sum, loqui*, speak.
allōquor, address; *collōquor*, converse.
5. *mōrior, mortuus sum, mori*, die (§ 77, note).
demōrior, die off; *emōrior*, pass away.
6. *pascor, pastus sum, pasci*, browse (intrans., § 129, 9).
7. *quēror, questus sum, queri*, complain.
conquēror, bewail.
8. *sēquor, secūtus sum, sequi*, follow.
assēquor, obtain; *essēquor*, carry out;
consēquor, reach; *persēquor*, pursue.
9. *Grādior (gressus sum), gradi*, step.
aggredior, aggressus sum, aggredi, attack;
congregior, meet; *ingredior*, enter.
10. *lābor, lapsus sum, lābi*, slip, waver, fall.
collābor, fall to ruins; *elābor*, slip away.
11. *nītor, nīsus or nīcus sum, niti*, rely upon.
adnītor, strive after; *renītor*, struggle against.
12. (*plector, plexus sum, plecti*, entwine, cfr. § 119, 68).
amplector, encircle; *complector*, embrace.
13. *pātor, passus sum, pati*, suffer.
perpetior, perpressus sum, perpēti, abide, endure.
14. *ūtor, ūsus sum, ūti*, use.
abūtor, misuse, consume.
15. (*vertor, versus sum, verti*, turn; intrans., § 122, 15.)
devertor, lodge; *revertor*, return (perf. only, *reverti*).

INCHOATIVES.

16. (*apiscor, aptus sum, apisci*, reach after.)
adīpiscor, adeptus sum, adipisci, obtain.
17. *defetiscor, defessus sum, defetisci*, weary.
18. *expergiscor, experrectus sum, expergisci*, awake.
19. *īrascor (irātus sum), irasci*, am angry.
20. (*meniscor, mentus sum, menisci*, think.)
commīniscor, commentus sum, comminisci, contrive.
reminiscor, no perf., *reminisci*, recall.
21. *nanciscor, nactus sum, nancisci*, meet with.
22. *nascor, nātus sum, nasci*, am born (§ 77, note).
mnascor, am born in; *renascor*, grow again.
23. *oblīviscor, oblītus sum, oblivisci*, forget.

24. *pāciscor, pactus sum, pacisci*, contract, bargain (§ 121, 4).
 25. *prōficiscor, profectus sum, proficisci*, travel.
 26. *ulciscor, ullus sum, ulcisci*, avenge.

No PERFECT.

27. *vescor, vesci*, subsist upon, enjoy, eat.
 28. *liquor, liqui*, am fluid, melt.
 29. *ringor, ringi*, snarl, show the teeth.

§ 136.

The fourth conjugation has fourteen deponents. The perfect in eight is regular; in the remainder, irregular.

1. *Blandior, blanditus sum, blandīri*, flatter.
2. *largior, largitus sum, largīri*, give largely.
3. *mentior, mentitus sum, mentīri*, lie.
ementior, feign.
4. *mōlior, molitus sum, molīri*, plan, undertake.
amolior, remove; *demolior*, tear down.
5. *partior, partitus sum, partīri*, share.
6. *pōtior, potitus sum, potīri*, become master of.
7. *pūnior, punitus sum, punīri*, avenge (really t) passive of *punio, punīvi, punitum, punīre*, punish).
8. *sortior, sortitus sum, sortīri*, allot, draw lots.
9. *Experior, expertus sum, experīri*, experience, try.
10. *opperior, oppertus (and oppertus) sum, opperīri*, await.
11. *ōrior, ortus sum, orīri*, rise, spring from (§ 77, note).

(Fut. pass. part., *oriundus*, descended from; *orior* follows the third conjugation in the present ind. and imperat., thus: *orēris, oritur, orimur; orēre, orīor, orīmini*; in the imperf. subj. it usually follows the fourth, *orīrer*; however *orērer* occurs).

The present of *adorior*, attack, is regular and belongs to the fourth; as, *adoriris, adoritur*; but *exorior*, spring up, is like *orior*; as, *exorēris, exoritur*.

12. *Assentior, assensus sum, assentīri*, approve.
13. *mētior, mensus sum, metīri*, measure.
dīmetior, and *emetior*, measure out.
14. *ordior, orsus sum, ordīri*, undertake.
æordior, begin.

CHAPTER XXV.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 137.

Irregular verbs are those which depart from the rules laid down for the formation of tenses and persons. There are besides *sum*, ten others; as follows: *possum*, *edo*, *fero*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *eo*, *queo*, *nequeo*, *fit*.

§ 138.

Possum, I am able, I can. The word is *pot-sum* (composed of *potis*, have the power, and *sum*, I am; hence, I have the power, am able). It is conjugated altogether like *sum*; but remember: 1. the syllable **pot** becomes **pos**, before an **s**; thus: *possum* for *potsum*; 2. the forms *potissem* and *potisse* are contracted into *possem* and *posse*; 3. in *fui*, *fuera*, &c., the **f** is dropped, as *potui* for *pot-fui*; *potueram*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| S. 1. <i>pos-sum</i> , I am able, I can. | <i>pos-sim</i> , I may be able |
| 2. <i>pōt-ēs</i> , thou art able. | <i>pos-sis</i> , thou mayst be able. |
| 3. <i>pōt-est</i> , he is able. | <i>pos-sit</i> , he may be able. |
| P. 1. <i>pos-sūmus</i> , we are able. | <i>pos-sīmus</i> , we may be able. |
| 2. <i>pōt-estis</i> , you are able. | <i>pos-sitis</i> , you may be able. |
| 3. <i>pos-sunt</i> , they are able. | <i>pos-sint</i> , they may be able. |

IMPERFECT.

- | | |
|--|--|
| S. 1. <i>pōt-eram</i> , I was able, I could. | <i>pos-sem</i> , I might be able. |
| 2. <i>pot-erās</i> , thou wast able. | <i>pos-sēs</i> , thou mightst be able. |
| 3. <i>pot-erat</i> , he was able. | <i>pos-set</i> , he might be able. |
| P. 1. <i>pot-erāmus</i> , we were able. | <i>pos-sēmus</i> , we might be able. |
| 2. <i>pot-erātis</i> , you were able. | <i>pos-sētis</i> , you might be able. |
| 3. <i>pot-erant</i> , they were able. | <i>pos-sent</i> , they might be able. |

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

FUTURE.

- S. 1. *pōt-ōro*, I shall be able ;
 2. *pot-ōris*, thou wilt be able ;
 3. *pot-ōrit*, he will be able ;
- P. 1. *pot-erimus*, we shall be able ;
 2. *pot-eritis*, you will be able ;
 3. *pot-erunt*, they will be able.

Wanting.

PERFECT.

- | | | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| S. 1. <i>pōt-ui</i> , I have | } been able. | <i>pōt-uērim</i> , I may | } have been able. |
| 2. <i>pot-uisti</i> , thou hast | | <i>pot-uēris</i> , thou mayst | |
| 3. <i>pot-uit</i> , he has | | <i>pot-uērit</i> , he may | |
| P. 1. <i>pot-uimus</i> , we have | } been able. | <i>pot-uerimus</i> , we may | } have been able. |
| 2. <i>pot-uistis</i> , you have | | <i>pot-ueritis</i> , you may | |
| 3. <i>pot-uērunt</i> , they have | | <i>pot-uērint</i> , they may | |

PLUPERFECT.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------|-------------------|
| S. 1. <i>pōt-uēram</i> , I had | } been able. | <i>pōt-uissem</i> , I might | } have been able. |
| 2. <i>pot-uēras</i> , thou hadst | | <i>pot-uisses</i> , thou mightst | |
| 3. <i>pot-uērat</i> , he had | | <i>pot-uisset</i> , he might | |
| P. 1. <i>pot-uerāmus</i> , we had | } been able. | <i>pot-uissēmus</i> , we might | } have been able. |
| 2. <i>pot-uerātis</i> , you had | | <i>pot-uissētis</i> , you might | |
| 3. <i>pot-uērant</i> , they had | | <i>pot-uissent</i> , they might | |

FUTURE PERFECT.

- S. 1. *pōt-uēro*, I shall have been able.
 2. *pot-uēris*, thou wilt have been able.
 3. *pot-uērit*, he will have been able.
- P. 1. *pot-uerimus*, we shall have been able.
 2. *pot-ueritis*, you will have been able.
 3. *pot-uērint*, they will have been able.

Wanting.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

PERFECT.

pot-se, to be able.*pot-uisse*, to have been able.

PARTICIPLE.

Wanting.—*Pōtens*, mighty, is a simple adjective.

IMPERATIVE and GERUND are also wanting.

Instances in early Latin are found, of *potis es* for *potes*, *potis sunt* for *possunt*, *pote* for *potest*. Likewise the subjunctive *possim* for *possim* (cfr. § 74, note).

§ 139.

Edo, edis, esum, edere, I eat, is conjugated regularly after the third conjugation; but here and there it has abridged forms, which are like those of *sum*, except that the *e* is pronounced long, wherever the tenses of *sum* begins with this vowel.

PRES. IND. ACT.

IMPERF. SUBJ. ACT.

S. <i>edo</i> ,	{ <i>edis, edit,</i> <i>ēs, ēst.</i>	{ <i>ēderem, ederes, ederet,</i> <i>ēssem, ēsses, ēsset.</i>
P. <i>edimus</i> ,	{ <i>editis, edunt,</i> <i>ēstis.</i>	{ <i>ederēmus, ederētis, ederent,</i> <i>ēssemus, ēssētis, ēssent.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

INFINITIVE PRESENT.

PRESENT,	{ <i>ede, edite,</i> <i>ēs, este,</i>	{ <i>edere,</i> <i>esse.</i>
FUTURE,	{ <i>edito, edito, editote,</i> <i>esto, esto, estote.</i> <i>edunto.</i>	[In the passive, however, also <i>estur</i> and <i>essetur</i> for <i>editur</i> and <i>ederetur</i> .]

The other tenses are regular. In the same way the compounds, *comedo*, I consume, *comedere* and *comesse*; *comederem* and *comēssam*; supine, *comēsum* and *comestum*. Early Latin, subj. *edim, edis, edit*, cfr. § 105, 8.

§ 140.

Fero, tuli, latum, ferre, I carry, is conjugated regularly according to the third conjug. with this single exception, that the connecting vowel *i*, before *s*, *t*, is rejected. The same occurs when *ē* is between two *r*'s; and also in the second sing. pres. imperative. The infinitive pass. is *ferri* (from the old *ferēri*, instead of *feri*).

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

S. <i>fero, fers, fert.</i>	<i>fēror, ferris, fertur,</i>
P. <i>ferimus, fertis, ferunt.</i>	<i>ferimur, ferimāni, feruntur.</i>

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

S. <i>ferrem, ferres, ferret.</i>	<i>ferret, ferrēris, ferrētur.</i>
P. <i>ferrēmus, ferrētis, ferrent.</i>	<i>ferrēmur, ferremīni, ferrentur.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES., S. <i>fer.</i>	<i>ferre.</i>
P. <i>ferite.</i>	<i>ferimīni.</i>
FUT., S. <i>ferto, fertis.</i>	<i>fertor, fertor.</i>
P. <i>fertote, ferunto.</i>	<i>feruntor.</i>

INFINITIVE PRESENT.

Ferre. **ferri.**

The rest is regular; as, *ferēbam, ferēbas*, etc.; pres. subj., *feram, feras*; pass., *ferar, ferāris*, etc.; fut., *feram, feres*; pass., *ferar, ferēris*. *Tuli* and *latum* are the forms from which are derived *tuleram, tulero, tulerim*, etc.; *latus sum*, etc.

The compounds are conjugated like the primitive verb:

<i>antefēro</i> , prefer;	<i>profēro</i> , bring forward, defer;
<i>circumfēro</i> , carry about;	<i>rēfēro</i> (perf. <i>retuli</i> and <i>rettulī</i>),
<i>defēro</i> , confer upon, denounce;	carry back, relate, report:
<i>perfēro</i> , endure;	<i>transfēro</i> , carry over.
<i>praefēro</i> , prefer;	

The following have a slight change in the prefix:

1. *afēro, attulī, allatum, afferre*, bring to;
2. *aufēro, abstulī, ablatum, auferre*, carry away;
3. *confēro, contulī, collatum, conferre*, contribute;
4. *difēro, distulī, dilatum, differre*, postpone;
5. *efēro, extulī, elatum, efferre*, carry out, inter;
6. *infēro, intulī, illatum, inferre*, carry in;
7. *offēro, obtulī, oblatum, offerre*, present;
8. *sufēro, sustulī, sublatum, sufferre*, endure.

Add, in the perfect and supine,

tollo, sustulī, sublatum, tollere, lift.

attollo, raise; *extollo*, magnify (both without perf. and sup.).

§ 141.

Volo, volui, velle, I will; *nōlo, nolui, nolle*, I am unwilling (from *ne*, instead of *non*, and *volo*); *mālo, malui, malle*, I am more willing (from *ma-volo*, for *mage* or *magis volo*).

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

S. 1. <i>vōlo</i> , I will.	<i>nōlo</i> , I am unwilling.	<i>mālo</i> , I am more willing.
2. <i>vis</i> , thou wilt.	<i>non vis</i> .	<i>māvīs</i> .
3. <i>vult</i> , he will.	<i>non vult</i> .	<i>māvult</i> .
P. 1. <i>volūmus</i> , we will.	<i>nolūmus</i> .	<i>malūmus</i> .
2. <i>vultis</i> , you will.	<i>non vultis</i> .	<i>mavultis</i> .
3. <i>volunt</i> , they will.	<i>nolunt</i> .	<i>malunt</i> .

IMPERFECT.

S. <i>volēbam</i> , as, at.	<i>nolēbam</i> , as, at.	<i>malēbam</i> , as, at.
P. <i>volēbāmus</i> , etc.	<i>nolēbāmus</i> , etc.	<i>malēbāmus</i> , etc.

FUTURE.

S. <i>volam</i> , es, et.	<i>nolam</i> , es, et.	<i>malam</i> , es, et.
P. <i>volēmus</i> , etc.	<i>nolēmus</i> , etc.	<i>malēmus</i> , etc.

PERFECT.

S. <i>volui</i> , isti, etc.	<i>nolui</i> , isti, etc.	<i>malui</i> , isti, etc.
------------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

S. <i>voluēram</i> , as, etc.	<i>noluēram</i> , as, etc.	<i>maluēram</i> , as, etc.
-------------------------------	----------------------------	----------------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

S. <i>voluēro</i> , is, etc.	<i>noluēro</i> , is, etc.	<i>maluēro</i> , is, etc.
------------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

S. <i>vōlim</i> , I may will.	<i>nōlim</i> , I may be unwilling.	<i>mālim</i> , I may
<i>vellis</i> ,	<i>nolis</i> , [unwilling.	<i>malis</i> , [be more
<i>velit</i> ,	<i>nolit</i> ,	<i>malit</i> , [willing.
P. <i>velimus</i> ,	<i>nolimus</i> ,	<i>malimus</i> ,
<i>velitis</i> ,	<i>nolitis</i> ,	<i>malitis</i> ,
<i>velint</i> .	<i>nolint</i> .	<i>malint</i> .

IMPERFECT.

S. <i>vellem</i> , es, et.	<i>nollem</i> , es, et.	<i>mallem</i> , es, et.
P. <i>vellemus</i> , etc.	<i>nollemus</i> , etc.	<i>mallemus</i> , etc.

PERFECT.

S. <i>voluērim</i> .	<i>noluērim</i> .	<i>maluērim</i> .
P. <i>voluērimus</i> .	<i>noluērimus</i> .	<i>maluērimus</i> .

PLUPERFECT.

S. <i>voluissem.</i>	<i>noluissem.</i>	<i>maluissem.</i>
P. <i>voluissēmus.</i>	<i>noluissēmus.</i>	<i>maluissēmus.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

Wanting.	S. noli , be unwilling.	Wanting.
	P. nolite , be ye unwilling.	

FUTURE.

S. <i>notīto</i> , thou shalt be unwilling.
<i>notīto</i> , he shall be unwilling.
P. <i>notītōte</i> , you shall be unwilling.
<i>noluntō</i> , they shall be unwilling.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

velle , to will.	nolle , to be unwilling.	malle , to be more willing.
-------------------------	---------------------------------	------------------------------------

PERFECT.

<i>voluisse</i> , to have willed.	<i>noluisse.</i>	<i>maluisse.</i>
-----------------------------------	------------------	------------------

PARTICIPLE.

<i>vōlens</i> , willing.	<i>nōlens.</i>	wanting.
--------------------------	----------------	----------

GERUND.

<i>volendi</i> , of willing.	<i>novendi.</i>	wanting.
------------------------------	-----------------	----------

NOTE 1.—Instead of *si vis*, if you will, *sis* is met with; for *si vultis*, rarely *sultis*; for *visne*, will you, *vin'* sometimes.

NOTE 2.—For *vult* and *vultis*, *volt* and *voltis* are sometimes found.

§ 142.

1. **Eo**, *ivi*, **Itum**, *ire*, I go, follows the fourth conjugation, with these variations: 1. before **a**, **o**, and **u**, the vowel **e** replaces the **i** of the fourth conjugation; thus **eo** instead of **io**. 2. The imperfect is **ibam** instead of *iebam*; the future **ibo** instead of *iam* (§ 106, 8). 3. In the participles, **unt** and **und** are always used instead of **ent**, **end**.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PRESENT.
S. <i>eo, is, it, I go.</i>	<i>eam, eas, eat, he may go.</i>
P. <i>imus, itis, eunt.</i>	<i>eamus, eatis, eant.</i>
	IMPERFECT.
S. <i>ibam, as, at, I went.</i>	<i>irem, ires, iret.</i>
P. <i>ibāmus, atis, ant.</i>	<i>irēmus, irētis, irent.</i>
	FUTURE.
S. <i>ibo, ibis, ibit.</i>	<i>itūrus (a, um) sim, sis, sit.</i>
P. <i>ibīmus, ibitis, ibunt.</i>	<i>itūri (ae, a) simus, sitis, sint.</i>
IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
PRES. <i>ī, go thou; ite, go ye.</i>	PRES. <i>ire, to go.</i>
FUT. <i>itō, thou shalt go.</i>	PERF. <i>ivisse or isse, to have gone.</i>
<i>itō, he shall go.</i>	FUT. S. <i>iturum (am, um) esse.</i>
<i>itōte, ye shall go.</i>	P. <i>ituros (as, a) esse, to be about to go.</i>
eunto, they shall go.	
PARTICIPLE.	GERUND.
PRES. <i>iens, gen. euntis, eunti,</i>	eundi, of going.
<i>euntem, etc.</i>	eundo.
FUT. <i>itūrus, a, um.</i>	(ad) eundum.
FUT. PASS. eundus, a, um.	eundo.
SUPINE.	
itum, to go.	itu, to go.

2. The perfect, with all the tenses formed from it, is regular. The passive, also, is regularly formed from the active; thus, *itur, eatur, ibatur, itum est, eundum est*, all used impersonally, *i. e.*, only in the third sing.; because *eo* is an intransitive verb. The transitive compounds have a complete passive.

3. The compounds of *eo* are conjugated in the same manner. Remark, however, that the past tenses always drop the *v*; as, *redeo, perf. rediī, not redivi*.

<i>abēo, go away;</i>	<i>prodeō, appear;</i>
<i>adeo, set about (full passive);</i>	<i>redeo, return;</i>
<i>odeo, perform, die;</i>	<i>subdeō, undertake;</i>
<i>perdeo, perish, decay;</i>	<i>vēdeo, go to sale (§ 47, II, 1), be sold:</i>
<i>praedereo, pass over (full passive);</i>	<i>(wants Imperat., Ger., Sup., Part.)</i>

4. *Ambio, ambīvi, ambītum, ambīre*, go around, solicit, is a regular verb of the fourth conj., like *audio*.

§ 143.

Quo, quivi, quitum, quire, I can, and *nequeo, nequivi, nequitum, nequire*, I cannot, are inflected like *eo*; thus,

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

S. *nēqueo, nequis, nequit.* *nequeam, nequeas, nequeat.*
P. *nequāmus, nequūtis, nequeunt.* *nequeāmus, nequeātis, nequeant.*

IMPERFECT.

S. *nequībam, as, at, etc.* *nequīrem, es, et, etc.*

So all the other forms, though they were not in use.

We also meet with the passive, *nequitur* and *quitur*, *nequitum est* and *quita est*, but only when joined to an infinitive passive; (§ 146, note).
Forma in tenebris nosci non quita est.

§ 144.

Fio, factus sum, fieri, I become, am made, done, is regular according to the fourth conjugation: an irregularity occurs only in the imperf. subj. and pres. inf. where the *i* is shortened and *ē* inserted.

PRES. IND.

PRES. SUBJ.

S. *fio, fīs, fī.* *fīam, fīas, fīat.*
P. *fīmus, fītis, fīunt.* *fīāmus, fīātis, fīant.*

IMPERF. IND.

IMPERF. SUBJ.

S. *fīebam, as, at.* *fīerem, fīeres, fīeret.*
P. *fīebāmus, ātis, ant.* *fīerēmus, ētis, ent.*

FUT. IND.

IMPERATIVE.

S. *fīam, fīes, fīet.* PRES. S. *fī*, become; P. *fīte*,
P. *fīēmus, fīētis, fīent.* become ye.
FUT. not used.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. *fīeri*, to become. FUT. *fīre* or *futurum* (*am*,
PERF. *factum* (*am, um*) *esse.* *um*) *esse.*
(*factum iri* is the passive of *facio*.)

From the perfect, *factus sum*, I have become, the other compound tenses are formed regularly: thus, *factus sim, factus eram, factus essem*.

The fut. subj., which is wanting, is supplied by *futurus sim*. Instead of the fut. imperative, *fito*, *fitote*, *fiunto*, the pres. subj. form is used; as, *fiat*, *fiatis*, *fiunt*, or else *esto*, *estois*, *sunto*.

2. *Fio* is likewise the passive of **facio**, I make, do (never *facior*): hence *fiō*, I am made, done.

3. The compounds of **facio**, which are composed of a preposition, or of the prefix **re**, have in the active, **facio**, and in the passive, **facior**: the conjugation is then regular. Thus, *interficio*, I kill; pass., *interfacior*, *interficēris*, *interficītur*, I am killed, &c.

4. The other compounds of **facio** have, in the active, **facio**, and in the passive, **fiō**: *arēfacio*, I dry (*areo*, I am dry); pass., *arēfio*, *arēfis*, *arēfit*: *labēfacio*, to shake; *labefio*, *labēfis*, *labēfit*, I am caused to shake; *labefiebam*, *labefierem*, *labefiam*, *labefieri* (cfr. § 120, 3).

5. *Fio* has no participles. It borrows *factus* and *faciendus* from *facio*; hence also, *arefaciendus*, (but *interficiendus*.)

NOTE 1.—*Fio*, *vēneo* (§ 142) and *vāpūlo* (*avi*, *atum*, *are*), I am whipped, are the only verbs which have an active form with passive meaning; they are sometimes called neuter-passive.

NOTE 2.—A few defective compounds of *fiō* are sometimes met with; as, *defit*, it is wanting; *infīt*, it begins, and some forms of *confiteri*.

CHAPTER XXVI.

DEFECTIVE VERBS (VERBA DEFECTIVA).

§ 145.

Some verbs lack many and important tenses, hence they are called defective verbs. They are, 1, the four perfects, **coepl**, **mēmīni**, **nōvi**, **ōdi**; 2. **aio**; 3. **inquam**; 4. **fāri**; 5. the imperatives, **āge**, **āpāge**, **āve**, **salve**, **vāle**; 6. **oēdo**; 7. **quaeso**; 8. **forem**.

§ 146.

Coepl, I have begun; **mēmīni**, I remember; **nōvi**, I know; and **ōdi**, I hate, are perfects of an obsolete present. The last three have the meaning of the *present*; **nōvi**, in reality the perfect of *nosco* (§ 129, 6), means, I have learned to

know; hence, I know. They are conjugated regularly, as follows:

1. **Coepti, I HAVE BEGUN.**

PERF. IND.	PERF. SUBJ.
S. <i>coepi, coepisti, coepit.</i>	<i>coepërim, coeperis, coeperit.</i>
P. <i>coepimus, coepistis, coepërunt.</i>	<i>coeperimus, coeperitis, coepërint.</i>
PLUP. IND.	PLUP. SUBJ.
S. <i>coepëram, as, at, etc.</i>	<i>coepissem, es, et, etc.</i>
FUT. PERF.	PERF. PAET. PASS.
S. <i>coepëro, is, it, etc.</i>	<i>coeptus, a, um, begun.</i>
INF.	FUT. PAET. ACT.
<i>coepisse, to have begun.</i>	<i>coepturus, a, um, about to begin.</i>

2. **Mēmīni, I REMEMBER.**

PERF. IND.	PERF. SUBJ.
S. <i>mēmīni, meministi, meminuit, etc.</i>	<i>meminërim, ris, rit, etc.</i>
PLUP. IND.	PLUP. SUBJ.
S. <i>meminëram, as, at, etc., I remembered.</i>	<i>meminissem, es, et, etc., I might remember.</i>
FUT. PERF.	IMP.
S. <i>meminëro, is, it, etc.</i>	<i>memento, remember.</i>
INF.	<i>mementôte.</i>
<i>meminisse, to remember.</i>	

3. **Novi, I KNOW.**

PERF. IND.	PERF. SUBJ.
S. <i>nōvi, novisti or nosti, novit,</i>	<i>novërim (norim) is it,</i>
P. <i>novimus, novistis (nostis), novërunt (nōrunt).</i>	<i>novërimus, novëritis, novërint.</i>
PLUP. IND.	PLUP. SUBJ.
S. <i>novëram or nōram, as, at, I knew.</i>	<i>novissem or nossem, es, et, I might know.</i>
FUT. PERF.	INF.
S. <i>novëro, is, it, etc.</i>	<i>novisse or nosse, to know.</i>

4. **Odi, I HATE.**

PERF. IND.	PERF. SUBJ.
S. <i>ōdi, odisti, odit, etc.</i>	<i>odērim, oderis, oderit, etc.</i>
PLUP. IND.	PLUP. SUBJ.
S. <i>odēram, as, at, etc., I hated.</i>	<i>odissim, es, et, etc., I might hate.</i>
FUT. PERF.	INF.
S. <i>odēro, is, it, etc.</i>	<i>odisse, to hate.</i>

Perf. part. pass., *osus*, usual only in composition; as, *exōsus*, *perōsus*, greatly hated; however it is generally used in an active sense, hating very much.

NOTE.—The best writers do not join *coepi* with a passive infinitive, but they employ *coeptus sum*. *Nos de republica consuli coepti sumus*, we began to be consulted about the republic (They began to consult.) *Armis disceptari coeptum est*. However, when the infinitive has a neuter or middle meaning, *coepi* is used; as, *judicia fieri coeperunt*; *augeri coepit*, began to grow; *moveri coepit*, to move. In the same manner, do we find *desitus sum* used for *desii* (§ 118, 55); *orationes legi desitas sunt*, have ceased to be read. *Disputari desitum est* (cf. § 148, note).

§ 147.

Aio, I SAY, I SAY YES.

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.
S. <i>āio, āis, āit.</i>	— <i>āias, āiat.</i>
P. — — <i>aiunt.</i>	— — <i>aiant.</i>
IMPERF. IND.	PERF. IND.
S. <i>āiēbam, as, at.</i>	— — <i>āit.</i>
P. <i>aiēbamus, ātis, ant.</i>	PART. PRES.
IMPERATIVE.	<i>āiens</i> (affirming).
S. (<i>ai</i>). Rest wanting.	(<i>Āin'</i> for <i>āims</i> , as in § 141, note)

§ 148.

Inquam, I SAY.

PRES. IND.	IMPERF. IND.
S. <i>inquam, inquis, inquit.</i>	— — <i>inquēbat (inquēbat).</i>
P. <i>inquāmus, inquātis, inquāunt.</i>	

FUT.	PERF. IND.
S. — <i>inquies, inquiet</i>	— <i>inquisti, inquit</i> .

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. <i>inque</i> , say thou.	FUT. <i>inquito</i> , let him say.
--------------------------------	------------------------------------

NOTE.—*Inquam* is used, as in English, when a conversation is repeated, or for quotation: I said, or said I; while *aito* is only employed in indirect narration, *oratio obliqua*. *Est vero, inquam, notum signum*: It is truly, said I, a seal. *Themistocles universos esse pares aiebat*, Themistocles said that all are equals.

§ 149.

Fari, SAY, SPEAK.

PRES. IND.	IMPERF.	
S. — — <i>fatur</i> .	IND.	SUBJ.
P. (<i>fāmur, fāmīni, fantur</i>).	(<i>fābar</i>).	(<i>fārer</i>).
FUTURE.	PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT ENTIRE.	
S. <i>fābor (fabēris), fabitur</i> .	<i>fātus sum, sim, eram, essem</i> .	
IMPERATIVE.	INF.	SUPINE.
<i>fāre</i> , speak thou.	<i>fāri</i> .	<i>fātu</i> .

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. <i>fans</i> .	FUT. PASS. <i>fandus, a, um</i> ,
PERF. <i>fātus</i> , (having spoken).	about to speak.
	(<i>nefandus</i> , not to be said, heinous).

GERUND.

GEN. *fandi*; ABL. *fando (fando audivi, I know it by hearsay)*

Compounds: *affatur, affatus, affari, effabimur, effari*; they however are more or less obsolete.

§ 150.

1. *Age*, come! well! Plur. *agite*.
2. *Apāge* (= *abige*, take away), begone; *apāge istum hominem!* away with this man! This is the only expression in which it occurs.
3. *Ave* and *salve!* hail! good day! greeting! *vāle!* good-bye!

IMPERATIVE PRESENT.
 S. *ave*, hail! *salve, salveto*, hail! *vale*, good-bye.
 P. *avēte*, hail! *salvēte*. *vatēte*.

INDICATIVE FUTURE.
salvēbis. *vatēbis*.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.
valeas, good-bye.

INFINITIVE.
avēre, to be greeted. *salvēre*. *vatēre*.

These three infinitives are used only with *iubeo*; *valēre* to *iubeo*, fare-well.

§ 151.

Cēdo, give, say, let's see. *Cēdo aquam manibus!* Say, give me water for my hands. *Cēdo dextram*, Your right hand. *Cēdo, quid faciam!* Say, let's see, what shall I do! The plural *cēdite* (for *cēdite*) may also be used.

§ 152.

Quaeso, I beseech; *quaesūmus*, we beseech; the rest wanting (cfr. *quaero*, § 118, 49). *Quid, quaeso, faciam?*

§ 153.

Fūrem, I should be, has *fores*, *foret*, *forent* and *fore*, like *futurum* (*am, um; os, as, a*), *esse*, to be about to be (cfr. § 73, D).

CHAPTER XXVII.

IMPERSONAL VERBS (VERBA IMPERSONALIA).

§ 154.

Impersonal verbs, are those which do not present to the mind a definite person as acting subject; they are, therefore, used only in the third person singular of the indicative and subjunctive, and in the infinitive, never in the imperative, and rarely in the participle.

Among them are :

1. Verbs which denote changes of the weather; as,

fulgurat, it lightens:

gēlat, it freezes:

fulminat, it lightens;

grandinat, it hails;

<i>lūpidat</i> , it rains stones ;	<i>rōrat</i> , the dew falls ;
<i>illūcescit</i> , <i>illuxit</i> , it dawns ;	<i>tōnat</i> , it thunders ;
<i>nīngit</i> , it snows ;	<i>vesperascit</i> (<i>advesperascit</i> , <i>advesperāvit</i>), it grows evening.
<i>pluit</i> , it rains ;	

However, *Jupiter tonat, fulminat, pluit.*

2. The following verbs of the second conjugation :

<i>pīget</i> (<i>me</i>), I dislike ;	<i>dēcet</i> (<i>me</i>), it becomes ;
<i>pūdet</i> (<i>me</i>), I am ashamed ;	<i>dēdēcet</i> (<i>me</i>), it is unbecoming ;
<i>poenitet</i> (<i>me</i>), I regret ;	<i>ōportet</i> , it behooves ;
<i>taedet</i> (<i>me</i>), I am weary, disgusted ;	<i>libet</i> or <i>libet</i> (<i>mihi</i>), it pleases ;
<i>miseret</i> (<i>me</i> ; rarely <i>miseretur me</i>), pity ;	<i>licet</i> (<i>mihi</i>) it is lawful, allowed.

NOTE 1.—The imperative of these verbs is supplied by the subjunctive ; as, *pudeat te*, be ashamed of ; *liceat mihi*, let me be allowed. The following participles occur, *dēcens*, becoming ; *libens*, willing ; *licens*, unbridled ; *poenitens*, repentant ; *pūdens*, modest ; also *poenitendus*, *pudendus*. *Mihi poenitendum est*, I must regret (**mihi** not **me**).

NOTE 2.—*Miseret* and *taedet* have, as perfect, *miseritum est* and *peritum est* : the rest have a regular perfect ; as, *pīguit*, *pūduit*, *libuit*, *licuit*. However, *pīgutum est*, *pūdutum est*, *libitum est*, *licitum est*, also occur.

NOTE 3.—The following expressions also may be used : *Hoc licet* or *libet* ; *non omnia licent*. Poets even make a noun the subject of *dēcet* ; the prose writers, however, only use a neuter adjective or pronoun (§ 196, 2).

3. The following verbs, used personally in their usual acceptations, become impersonal with a slight change in their meaning :

<i>accēdit</i> , in addition to ;	<i>superest</i> , it remains ;
<i>accidit</i> ,	<i>præstat</i> , it is better ;
<i>contingit</i> ,	<i>interest</i> ,
<i>evenit</i> ,	<i>refert</i> (never pers.)
<i>condūcit</i> , it is useful ;	<i>apparet</i> , it appears ;
<i>convēnit</i> , it suits ;	<i>liquet</i> , it is clear ;
<i>expēdit</i> , it is expedient ;	<i>pātet</i> , it is plain ;
<i>iūvat</i> , it delights ;	<i>fallit</i> (<i>me</i>),
<i>constat</i> , it is evident ;	<i>fūgit</i> (<i>me</i>),
<i>restat</i> , it remains ;	<i>præterit</i> (<i>me</i>),

} it concerns, it is of importance.
} it escapes me ;
} I do not know.

4. The third pers. sing. passive of intransitive verbs which otherwise are never used passively (§ 70, II, 2) :

<i>curritur</i> , they (people) run;	<i>dormiētur</i> , people will sleep;
<i>concursum est</i> , they (people) run together;	<i>conandum est</i> , it must be tried;
<i>vivitur</i> , people live;	<i>eundum est</i> , people must go;
<i>itur</i> , they go;	<i>mihī eundum est</i> , I must go;
<i>dormitur</i> , they sleep;	<i>vobis eundum est</i> , you must go;
	<i>omnibus eundum est</i> , all must go, etc.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

ADVERBS (ADVERBIA).

§ 155.

Adverbs are joined to verbs (*ad-verbia*), and also to adjectives, to limit or modify their meaning. They are divided into adverbs of time, place and manner.

§ 156.

Adverbs of time; in answer to the questions, **Quando?** when? **Quamdiu?** how long? and **Quoties?** how often?

<i>olim</i> , once;	<i>hodie</i> , to-day;	<i>aliās</i> , at other times;
<i>quondam</i> , once;	<i>quōtidie</i> , daily;	<i>prōtinus</i> , directly;
<i>aliquando</i> , once;	<i>postridie</i> , the day after;	<i>extemplo</i> , in a moment;
<i>unquam</i> , ever;	<i>pridie</i> , the day before;	<i>illico</i> , on the spot;
<i>nunquam</i> , never;	<i>nudiustertius</i> , the day before yesterday;	<i>stātīm</i> , immediately;
<i>iam</i> , already;	<i>propēdiem</i> , one of these days;	<i>intērea</i> , in the mean-while;
<i>interdum</i> , sometimes;	<i>hēri</i> , yesterday;	<i>antea</i> , before;
<i>sæpe</i> , often;	<i>erās</i> , to-morrow;	<i>postea</i> , afterwards;
<i>semper</i> , always;	<i>tum</i> , then;	<i>simul</i> , at the same time;
<i>pridem</i> , long since;	<i>tunc</i> , at that time;	<i>adhuc</i> , yet;
<i>dūdum</i> , previously;	<i>nunc</i> , now;	<i>nōndum</i> , not yet;
<i>mox</i> , soon;	<i>quōtannis</i> , yearly;	<i>multo ante</i> , long ago;
<i>brēvi</i> , shortly;	<i>initio</i> , } in the be-	<i>paulo post</i> , soon after;
<i>tandem</i> , at last;	<i>principio</i> , } ginning;	<i>tantisper</i> , so long;
<i>dēnum</i> , not until, only;		<i>dēnuo</i> , anew;
<i>dēinde</i> , then;	<i>rēpente</i> , } suddenly.	<i>plērumque</i> , generally;
<i>dēnique</i> , at last;	<i>sibito</i> , } (rēcens lately.)	<i>tōties</i> , so often;
<i>diū</i> , long;		<i>aliquōties</i> , sometimes;
<i>interdiu</i> , by day;	<i>mōdo</i> , recently, just now;	<i>identidem</i> , repeatedly;
<i>noctu</i> , by night;		<i>rursus (rursum)</i> , again
<i>vesperi</i> , in the evening;		
<i>māne</i> , early (morning);		
<i>vāper</i> , the other day;		

§ 157.

1. Adverbs of place, in answer to the question, **Ubi?** where? **Unde?** whence? **Quo?** whither? **Qua?** by what way?

<i>ibi</i> , there;	<i>inde</i> , thence;	<i>eō</i> , thither.
<i>hic</i> , here;	<i>hinc</i> , hence;	<i>hūc</i> , hither.
<i>illuc</i> , } there;	<i>illinc</i> , } thence.	<i>illūc</i> , } thither.
<i>istuc</i> , }	<i>istinc</i> , }	<i>istūc</i> , }
<i>ibidem</i> , in the same place;	<i>indidem</i> , from the same place;	<i>eōdem</i> , to the same place.
<i>alibi</i> , elsewhere;	<i>aliunde</i> , from another place;	<i>aliō</i> , to another place.
<i>ubique</i> , wheresoever;	<i>undecumque</i> , whencesoever;	<i>quocumque</i> , whithersoever.
<i>alicubi</i> , somewhere;	<i>alicunde</i> , from somewhere;	<i>aliquo</i> , somewhere.
<i>usquam</i> , somewhere;		<i>quōquam</i> , anywhere.
<i>nusquam</i> , nowhere;		
<i>ubivis</i> , in any place;		<i>quōvis</i> , in any direction you please.
<i>ubique</i> , everywhere;	<i>undique</i> , from all sides.	<i>fōrās</i> , out.
<i>fōris</i> , outside;		<i>obviam</i> , toward.
<i>prōcul</i> , far;	<i>utrimque</i> , from either side; on either side;	<i>intro</i> , into.
<i>prōpe</i> , near;		<i>porro</i> , forward.
<i>comminus</i> , close by;		<i>rētro</i> , backward.
<i>ēminus</i> , at a distance;		
<i>pērēgre</i> , abroad;		

2. *Quā?* by, in what way? in what direction? *Itā*, by that way; *quāquam*, in any way; *nequāquam*, in no way; *rectā*, straightway; *dextrā*, to the right; *sinistrā*, to the left; *unā*, in one way, together; *quātēnus*, how far, in as far as; *hactēnus*, so far; *quorūm?* whitherward? *hōrsūm*, hitherward; *aliōrsūm*, toward another side; *prōrsūm*, forward; *intrōrsūm*, toward the inside, inward; *deōrsūm*, downward; *retrorūm*, backward; *dextrōrsūm*, to the right; *rūrūm*, again; *surūm*, upward.

§ 158.

1. Adverbs of manner (cause or motive), in answer to the question: **Qui?** how? **Quōmōdo?** **Quēmadmōdum?** how? **Cūr?** **Quare?** why?

<i>Ita</i> , so;	<i>quāsi</i> , just as, as if;	<i>idōtro</i> , therefore;
<i>sic</i> , so;	<i>frustra</i> , vainly;	<i>ultro</i> , voluntarily;
<i>ūt</i> , as;	<i>nequidquam</i> , in vain;	<i>sponte</i> , freely;
<i>ēēlut</i> , as, like;	<i>idō</i> , therefore;	<i>quam</i> , how, how much;

<i>tam</i> , so, so much ;	<i>nimis</i> , too much ;	<i>tantum</i> , only, solely ;
<i>ādeo</i> , so much ;	<i>fere</i> ,	<i>tantummodo</i> , only ;
<i>valde</i> , very ;	<i>paene</i> ,	<i>satis</i> , enough ;
<i>quantopere</i> , how greatly ;	<i>ferme</i> ,	<i>forte</i> , perchance ;
<i>tantopere</i> , so greatly ;	<i>prope</i> ,	<i>fortasse</i> ,
<i>magnopere</i> , very ;	<i>modo</i> ,	<i>forsitan</i> ,
<i>admōdum</i> , very much ;	<i>solum</i> ,	<i>praecipue</i> , especially.

2. Most of the adverbs of manner are derived from adjectives and other parts of speech.

a. Adverbs are formed from participles and adjectives in **us** and **er** by changing the **i** of the gen. into **e** ; thus,

ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.	ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.
<i>longus</i> , long ;	<i>longē</i> .	<i>pulcher</i> , beautiful ;	<i>pulchrē</i> .
<i>doctus</i> , learned ;	<i>doctē</i> .	<i>probus</i> , upright ;	<i>probē</i> .
<i>asper</i> , rough ;	<i>asperē</i> .	<i>ornatus</i> , adorned ;	<i>ornatē</i> .

Bonus makes *bēnē*, well ; *mālus* makes *mālē*, ill, badly. *Durus*, hard, *durē* and *duritē* ; *firmus*, firm, *firmē* and *firmitē* ; *alius* has only *alitē*, otherwise ; *violentus*, *violenter*, violently.

b. From adjectives and participles of the third declension, the adverb in **ter** is always formed by changing the genitive ending **is** into **iter** and **ntis** into **nter**.

ADJECTIVES.	ADVERBS.	ADJECTIVES.	ADVERBS.
<i>ūtilis</i> , useful ;	<i>utilitē</i> .	<i>acer</i> , sharp ;	<i>acritē</i> .
<i>pār</i> , like ;	<i>pāritē</i> .	<i>cēler</i> , swift ;	<i>celēritē</i> .
<i>fērox</i> , fierce ;	<i>ferocitē</i> .	<i>simplex</i> , simple ;	<i>simplicitē</i> .
<i>ēlégans</i> , fine ;	<i>elegantē</i> .	<i>āmans</i> , loving ;	<i>amanter</i> .
<i>sāpiens</i> , wise ;	<i>sapientē</i> .	<i>prūdens</i> , prudent ;	<i>prudenter</i> .

NOTE.—*Facilis*, easy ; adverb, *facile*. *Rēcens*, new, recent ; adverb, (*recens*). *Difficilis*, difficult ; adverb, *difficultē*. *Audax*, bold ; adverb, *audacter*. Moreover, *nēquitē* from *nequam*, worthless ; *obitē* from *obire*, in passing (by the way).

c. Some adverbs are merely the abl. sing. neut. ; others, the acc. sing. neut. of the adjective in **er**, **us** ; as,

<i>cortō</i> , surely ;	<i>fortuito</i> , accidentally ;	<i>necessario</i> , necessarily ;
<i>cito</i> , quickly ;	<i>improvisō</i> , unexpectedly ;	<i>necopinato</i> , unexpect-
<i>crebro</i> , often ;	<i>mānifesto</i> , manifestly ;	edly ;
<i>continuo</i> , instantly ;	<i>mērito</i> , justly ;	<i>optato</i> , desirably ;
<i>falso</i> , falsely ;	<i>mutuo</i> , mutually ;	<i>perpētuo</i> , unceasingly ;

<i>raro</i> , rarely;	<i>tūto</i> , securely.	<i>pārum</i> , too little;
<i>sēdulo</i> , industriously;	<i>cēterum</i> , moreover;	<i>potissimum</i> , the most;
<i>sērio</i> , earnestly;	<i>multum</i> , much;	<i>postremum</i> and <i>postremo</i> , lastly.
<i>sēro</i> , too late.	<i>paulum</i> , little;	
<i>sūbito</i> , suddenly;	<i>nimum</i> , too much;	
	<i>ultimum</i> and <i>ultimo</i> , for the last time (cfr. § 61, 2).	

§ 159.

Other kinds of adverbs are :

1. In *itus*; as, *coelitus*, from heaven.

Funditus, utterly; *radicitus*, radically, by the root; *antiquitus*, of old; *divinitus*, divinely; (*penitus*, from within, thoroughly; *intus*, within).

2. In *im*, partly verbal adverbs from the supine; as, *certatim*, emulously; partly denominative from nouns; as, *cateruatim*, in troops.

From the supine: *contemptim*, scornfully; *nominatim*, expressly; *praesertim*, particularly; *statim*, steadily; *caesim*, by cutting; *passim*, here and there; *sensim*, little by little. From nouns (only *ātīm*): *cateruatim*, in troops; *gradatim*, by steps; *paulatim*, by degrees; *privatim*, privately; (singly: *furtim*, by stealth; *viritim*, man by man; *tributim*, by tribes; and in *sim*: *vicissim*, in turn). For *partim*, partly, *partem* is also used, both acc. sing. of *pars*.

§ 160.

1. Only such adverbs are compared as are derived from adjectives having a comparative.

2. The comparative of the adverb is always the nom. sing. neut. of the adjective in the comparative; the superlative changes the ending *us* into *ē*.

<i>doctē</i> , learnedly;	<i>doctius</i> , more learnedly;	<i>doctissimē</i> , most learnedly.
<i>rectē</i> , rightly;	<i>rectius</i> , more rightly;	<i>rectissimē</i> .
<i>amanter</i> , lovingly;	<i>amantius</i> , more lovingly;	<i>amantissimē</i> .
<i>certo</i> , surely;	<i>certius</i> ;	<i>certissimē</i> .
<i>crebro</i> , often;	<i>crebrius</i> ;	<i>creberrimē</i> .
<i>bēnē</i> , well;	<i>mēlius</i> ;	<i>optimē</i> .
<i>mālē</i> , ill;	<i>pētius</i> ;	<i>possimē</i> .
<i>prōpē</i> , nearly;	<i>prōpius</i> ;	<i>proximē</i> .

3. Of other adverbs, the following only have the three degrees of comparison :

<i>diu</i> , long.	<i>diutius</i> , longer.	<i>diutissimē</i> , longest.
<i>impūne</i> , with impunity.	<i>impunius</i> .	<i>impunissimē</i> .
<i>saepe</i> , often.	<i>saepius</i> .	<i>saeppissimē</i> .

Note moreover: *sātius*, better (used nearly always as an adjective and joined to *est*), from *satis*, enough; *sētius* (*secius*), less, only used negatively; as, *nihilō setius, nequē eo setius*, nevertheless, none the less, perhaps from *sētous*, otherwise; *nuperrimē*, quite recently, from *nūper*. Moreover, *prius*, sooner; *primum*, first; *minus*, less; *minima*, least, not at all (cfr. § 51, 1).

Of adverbs in **o** (§ 158, o), only *meritissimo* and *tutissimo* retain **o** in the superlative; all the others have **ō**.

CHAPTER XXIX.

PREPOSITIONS.

§ 161.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

antiē, apud, ad, adversus,
circum, circā, citra, cīs,
erga, contra, inter, extra,
infra, intra, iuxta, ob,
pēnes, pōnē, post, and praeter,
prōpē, proptēr, pēr, secundum,
sūpra, versus, ultra, trans.

<i>ad</i> , to, at, towards.	<i>inter</i> , between, among.	<i>prope</i> , near.
<i>adversus</i> , against, to- wards.	<i>intra</i> , within.	<i>propter</i> , close by, on ac- count of.
<i>ante</i> , before.	<i>iuxta</i> , near, beside.	<i>secundum</i> , along, ac- cording to.
<i>apud</i> , at, near, with, by.	<i>ob</i> , on account of, be- fore.	<i>supra</i> , above.
<i>circa, circum</i> , around, about.	<i>pēnes</i> , in the power of.	<i>trans</i> , over, on the other side.
<i>cis, citra</i> , on this side.	<i>per</i> , through, by, dur- ing.	<i>versus</i> , towards.
<i>contra</i> , against.	<i>pone</i> , behind.	<i>ultra</i> , beyond.
<i>erga</i> , towards.	<i>post</i> , behind, after.	
<i>extra</i> , beyond, without.	<i>praeter</i> , beside, except, by.	
<i>infra</i> , beneath, below.		

In compounds *ob* also signifies against; *per*, very, entirely; (cfr. § 186).

§ 162.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

absque, *ā*, *āb*, *abs* and *dē* ;
cōram, *clum*, *cum*, *ex* and *ē* ;
sīne, *tēnus*, *prō* and *prae*.

<i>ā</i> , <i>āb</i> , <i>abs</i> , from ; (<i>a</i> , only before consonants ; <i>āb</i> , before vowels and <i>h</i> ; sometimes, also, before consonants ; <i>abs</i> , before <i>te</i>).	<i>cum</i> , with, § 220 and 224.
<i>absque</i> , without (obsolete).	<i>de</i> , out from, about, of.
<i>clam</i> , without the knowledge of, secretly.	<i>e</i> , <i>ex</i> , out of (<i>e</i> , only before consonants ; <i>ex</i> , before any letter).
<i>coram</i> , in presence of, before.	<i>prae</i> , before, owing to.
	<i>pro</i> , for, before, instead of.
	<i>sine</i> , without.
	<i>tenus</i> , as far as, up to.

§ 163.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING SOMETIMES THE ACCUSATIVE, SOMETIMES THE ABLATIVE.

in, *sub*, *super*, *subter*.

1. *In*, in, upon, (**acc.**, in answer to the question, Whither? **abl.**, in answer to the question, Where?) towards, against (only **acc.**)
2. *Sub*, under (**acc.**, whither? **abl.**, where?) about (indicating time, only **acc.**)
3. *Super*, over, above (place, always with **acc.** ; when it means *de*, over, upon, **abl.**)
4. *Subter*, under, is rare, and always with **acc.** in prose ; in poetry, also with the **abl.**

§ 164.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE USE OF SOME PREPOSITIONS.

1. *Ad* is used : 1) of place ; as, *ad urbem*, to, up to, near, the city ; *ad Rhenum*, on the Rhine ; 2) of time ; *ad vesp̄eram*, toward evening ; *ad senectutem*, till old age ; *ad diem*, on the day fixed ; 3) of approximate numbers ; *ad ducentos*, about two hundred ; 4) of purpose, object ; *ad*.

2. *Adversus montes*, over against the mountains; *contra*, against, in a hostile sense; *erga*, toward, in a friendly sense; *adversus* and *in*, in either sense; *contra naturam*; *contra* (*adversus* or *in*) *aliquem bellum gerere*; *meus erga* (*adversus* or *in*) *te amor*.

3. *Ob*; *quam ob causam*, wherefore; *ob eam rem*, therefore. — *Ob oculos versari*, to appear before one's eyes.

4. *Penes regem summa potestas est*, with the king, in the king's possession; *apud regem*, near the king.

5. *Per flumen*, through the river; *per orbem terrarum*, over the earth; *per noctem*, through the night, during the night; *si per valetudinem licet*, on account of thy health; *per legatos*, through the ambassadors; *per deos iurare*, by the gods; (cfr. § 220, 1. § 224, 3, 1).

6. *Praeter castra copias duxit*, by, beside the camp; *nemo praeter patrem*, except the father; *praeter ceteros iustus*, beyond the others; *praeter consuetudinem*, *praeter modum*, contrary to custom, beyond measure.

7. *A* and *ab* are used of place, of time, and with the passive; *ab urbe venit*, from the city; *a muro*; *a primis temporibus*, *ab initio*; *a deo amamur*; (§ 198, 2, 220, 3).

8. *De*, of place; *de coelo*, down from heaven; *de muro*, from the wall (like *a*); very often = on: *de officiis*, on the duties; *de contemnenda morte*. *Qua de causa*, wherefore; *de industria*, on purpose.

9. *Prae se agere*, to drive before one's self, like *ante se agere*; of time only, *ante* (never *prae*); *prae se ferre*, to make a show of; *prae lacrimis*, for tears; *omnes prae se contemnit*, in comparison with himself.

10. *Pro patria mori*, for one's country; *pro consulibus*, in place of the consuls; *pro castris*, in front of the camp; *pro viribus*, with all your might, according to your strength.

11. *Clam vobis*, without your knowledge.

12. *In patriam redire*, into one's country; *in patria esse*, in one's country; *in diem vivere*, to live only for the day (regardless of the future); *bis in die*, twice a day; *in posterum*, for the future; *in tres annos*, for three years; *amor, odium, merita in patriam*, for one's country; *hostilem in modum*, in a hostile manner; *magna in eo erat modestia*, in him was, i. e., he had; *in oculis omnium*, before the eyes of all, obvious to all; *in his*, among these.

13. *Sub potestatem redigere*, to bring under the power; *nihil novi sub luna est*, under the moon; *sub lucem*, toward morning; *sub divo*, in the open air.

14. *Super aspidem assidere*, to sit on a snake; *super Sunium navigare*, to sail beyond Sunium; *novus luctus super veterem*, new grief added to the old.

15. Prepositions always stand before the case which they govern; the following, however, are put after their case: 1) *cum*, with certain words (*meum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quicum, and mostly quocum, qua-*

cum, quibuscum); 2) *versus*, with names of towns only; as, *Romam versus*, toward Rome (sometimes *ad* or *in* is put before the case; as, *Italiam versus, ad Oceanum versus*); 3) *tenuis*; as, *Tauro tenuis*, as far as Mount Taurus; *tenuis* sometimes with the genitive; as, *crurum tenuis*; 4) the words *causā, gratiā, ergō* = for the sake of; as, *animi causa*, for recreation; *venandi gratia*, for the sake of hunting; *hujus victoriae ergo*, on account of this victory. However, these words are not properly prepositions, but substantives. Instead of the genitive of the personal pronoun, the possessive, with *causa* and *gratia*, is used; as, *meā causā*, for my sake, on my account (§ 221, 2, 1).

16. Several prepositions are sometimes used as adverbs, without any case; as, *ante* for *antea*, *post* for *postea*, etc. On the other hand, several adverbs are sometimes used as prepositions; as, *circiter meridiem*, towards noon; but also *circiter quadringenti*; *eadem circiter hora*; likewise, *palam populo*, publicly before the people; *præcul dubio*, without doubt, etc. Instead of *prope urbem*, we sometimes find *prope ab urbe*; also *propius* and *proxime ab urbe*, and *urbem*; or with dat., *propius Tiberi, propius periculo; proxime castris*. § 203, 2, 1.

CHAPTER XXX.

CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 165.

Conjunctions, according to the grammatical nature of the sentences which they connect, are divided into two classes:

A. *Coördinate conjunctions*, or conjunctions which connect coördinate sentences; *i. e.*, sentences of equal independence, as principal sentences with principal, dependent clauses with dependent.

B. *Subordinate conjunctions*, or conjunctions which connect subordinate clauses; *i. e.*, secondary sentences with principal sentences.

These two classes are, according to the logical relation of the connected sentences, subdivided into ten kinds, of which three contain only coördinate conjunctions, two partly coördinate, partly subordinate, five only subordinate conjunctions. To the conjunctions must be added the interrogative and negative particles.

The logical relation of the connected sentences gives the name both to the sentences themselves and to the corresponding conjunctions.

A. ONLY COÖRDINATE :

I. COPULATIVE CONJUNCTION

(*Coniunctiones copulativæ*),

IN COPULATIVE SENTENCES.

<i>Et,</i>	} and.	<i>etiam,</i>	} also.
<i>atque, ac,</i>		<i>quodque,</i>	
<i>quæ,</i>		<i>næque, nec,</i> and not.	

et — *et*, both — and.
cum (*quum*) — *tum*, both — and.
tam — *quam*, as well — as.
tum — *tum*, now — now.
næque — *næque*, } neither — nor.
nec — *nec*,

1. **Et** and **atque** can always be used, but **ac** only before consonants; **que** is appended to the word; hence, *parentes liberique*, parents and children; *parentes et (atque, ac) liberi*.

2. **Etiam** is nearly always placed before, **quoque**, after, the word to which it refers; *etiam pater*, the father also, but *pater quoque*.

3. **Et** — **et**, both — and: *et parentes et liberi*, both parents and children.

4. **Neque** — **neque**; **neque** — **neque**, neither — nor; *neque parentes neque liberi*, neither the parents nor the children.

NOTE 1.—When three or more words are connected, either no conjunction is used in Latin, as: *divitiæ, honor, gloria fortuita sunt* (asyndeton); or **et** is put before every word that is added; as, *stultitiam et temeritatem et iniustitiam et intemperantiam dicimus esse fugienda* (polysyndeton).

NOTE 2.—**Que** (as well as **ve** and **nē**) is not easily appended to prepositions; the Latin says, *in eoque* (not so well, *inque*), *de totoque re, ab omnibusque* (*ex eave re, ad eamne rem*).

NOTE 3.—**Etiam** is more emphatic than **quoque**; it has a strengthening force and means *even*, with the comparative. Before pronouns **et** sometimes stands for *etiam*, as: *et ipse*, he himself also; otherwise rare.

NOTE 4.—**Neque** joins a negative sentence: when the negative *and not* refers to a single word only, **et non** or **ac non** is used, and when the opposition is marked, simply **non**. *Hoc longum est et non necesse*.

sarium. A gravibus philosophis medicina petenda est, non ab his voluptariis.

NOTE 5.—*Neque quisquam, neque quidquam, neque ullus, &c.*, are used in the same manner as *neque*; but when the negation is to be emphatic, use *et nemo, et nihil, et nullus, &c.*

NOTE 6.—In a transition, *neque enim, neque vero, neque tamen* are generally used, where in English we frequently say only: *for not, but not, still not*, without the *and*.

NOTE 7.—The combination *neque — et* occurs also in English, *not — and*, as: *homo nec meo iudicio stultus, et suo valde prudens*, in my opinion *not* foolish, *and* in his own very prudent. Vice versa, *et — nec*, in which *et* need not be translated; as, *via et certa nec longa, a road sure and not long*. Sometimes it may be translated by: *On the the one hand — on the other, not*. Rare and mostly poetical, are the combinations: *et — que; que — et; que — que*.

§ 166.

II. DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS

(*Coniunctiones disiunctivæ*),

IN DISJUNCTIVE SENTENCES.

Aut, } or. *vě,* }
vel, } *sive,* }

aut — aut, } either — or.
vel — vel, }

sive — sive, whether — or; be it — or.

Aut, or, excludes; **vel** equalizes, corrects, graduates; **ve** (enclitic), like *que*, is appended (§ 165, 2); **sive** (unusual *sen* for *vel si*), when the choice is indifferent.

Plus minusve, more or less; also *plus minus*.

§ 167.

III. ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS

(*Coniunctiones adversativæ*),

IN ADVERSATIVE SENTENCES.

Sed, }
vērūm, } but.
vēro, }
autem, }
at, }
at vēro, but.

tāmen, still, yet.
atqui, but still, but **yet**.
cēterum, for the rest.
ēnimvēro, truly.
sedtāmen, } but **yet**.
verumtāmen, }
attāmen, but **yet**.

non solum — sed etiam,
non modo — sed etiam,
non tantum — sed etiam, } not only — but also.

Sed and **verum** are corrective and affirming; **vero**, advancing; **autem** (atonic) marks transition; **at** objects, brings in an objection.

Sed, **verum**, **at**, are placed at the beginning of the sentence; **vero**, **autem**, only after one or more words.

NOTE.—*Sed enim*, *at enim*, but forsooth, are often used elliptically; *as, at enim viri clarissimi dissentiunt*, but forsooth (there is still another point; for), the most illustrious men are of a different opinion.

B. PARTLY COÖRDINATE, PARTLY SUBORDINATE.

§ 168.

IV. ILLATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

a. Coördinate, *coni. conclusivæ*, to denote an inference or conclusion, in conclusive sentences :

<i>Igitur,</i>	} therefore.	} therefore, on this
<i>itæque,</i>		
<i>ergo,</i> consequently.		
		<i>ideo,</i>
		<i>idcirco,</i>
		<i>propterea,</i>
		<i>proinde,</i> hence.

b. Subordinate, *coni. consecutivæ*, to denote consequence, result, in consecutive sentences :

ut, so that, § 249.

ut non, so that not, § 250, 2.

quin, that not, § 252.

1. **Igitur** is always *atonic*, and is placed after another word; *as, omnes igitur adsunt*; but **itaque** or **ergo** *omnes adsunt*. **Proinde** stands only in sentences with the imperative or subjunctive. Distinguish *itæque*, therefore, from *itæque*, and thus.

2.—Here may be placed the compound expressions, *ob eam rem, ob eam causam, hanc ob rem, hanc ob causam, ea de re, ea de causa*, therefore; also *quocirca, quapropter, quam ob rem, quam ob causam*, wherefore, therefore.

§ 169.

V. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS

(Coniunctiones causales).

A. COÖRDINATE.

Nam,
namque,
enim,
et̄enim,
quippe, for, of course.

} for.

B. SUBORDINATE.

quā, } because.
quod, }
cum (quum), as, because, § 256
quōniam, because indeed.
quando, as indeed.

Nam, namque, etenim are emphatic and stand at the beginning of the sentence: **enim** is atonic and always stands in the second place: thus, **nam ipse dixit**, but *ipse enim dixit*. *Quando, quandoquidem* denote a reason implied in a circumstance previously mentioned. Concerning *enimvero*, at *enim*, cfr. § 167 and note.

C. ONLY SUBORDINATE.

§ 170.

VI. COMPARATIVE CONJUNCTIONS

(Coniunctiones comparativae),

IN COMPARATIVE SENTENCES.

Ut, } as.
ut̄i, }
quam, than, as,
sicut, such as,
vēlut, as if, for example.

tanquam, }
quāsi, } as if.
ut si, }
ac si, }
prout, according as.

1. **Ut** is the relative corresponding to **ita** and **sic** (§ 158, 1); the three are adjuncts to the verb; as, *ut dixi*, as I said; *ita dixi*, *sic dixi*, thus have I said. **Quam**, how, is relative to **tam**, and both are joined to the adjective; as, *quam bonus est deus!* How good is God! *tam bonus est*, so good is he!

2. As great as, **tantus, quantus**; as many as, **tot quot**; as often as, **toties quoties**. However, the following are also allowable: *tam magnus quam, tam multi quam, tam saepe quam*. After *idem, par, similis* and usually after *aeque, iuxta, perinde* (just), *alius* and *contra* (opposite), the words *to, as, than*, are rendered by **atque** or **ac**: e. g., *peccasti eodem modo atque ego*, thou hast failed in the same manner as I; *aliter atque tu*, otherwise than thou.

§ 171.

VII. CONDITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS

(*Coniunctiones conditionales or hypotheticæ*),

IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

<i>Si</i> , if.	<i>si nōn</i> ,	} if not, unless.
<i>sin</i> , but if.	<i>nīsi, ni</i> ,	
<i>si quīdem</i> , if indeed.	<i>si mīnus</i> , if not.	
<i>quodsi</i> , even if, nay if.	<i>dummodo</i> , if only, § 173.	

After a negative, **nisi** means except, but ; as, *nemo nisi improbissimus*, none but the most shameless. Here **quam** is not admissible.

NOTE 1.—**Si** is used after a preceding conditional sentence. *Si verum dīcis, laudaberis* ; *sin mentiris, punieris* ; also, *sin autem*, rarely *si autem*. Instead of **nisi**, you must say **si non**, when the negation refers to one word only ; *si non omnes tamen aliquot*. In connection with **si minus**, if not, the verb is not repeated ; *si dabis, accipiam, si minus, abibo*.

NOTE 2.—Concerning the mood with conditional conjunctions, see § 248, 3, a.

§ 172.

VIII. CONCESSIVE CONJUNCTIONS

(*Coniunctiones concessivæ*),

IN CONCESSIVE SENTENCES.

<i>Etsi</i> , <i>tametsi</i> , <i>etiāmsi</i> , <i>quamquam</i> ,	} even if, } even though, } although.	<i>quamvis</i> , however much, although.
		<i>tacet</i> , although.
		<i>cum (quum)</i> , although, § 254, 5 ; 256.
		<i>ut</i> , supposing that, § 249, 3.

Quīdem, however, indeed, it is true, may also be reckoned among the concessive conjunctions. It is coördinate, and always leans on another word, being itself atonic ; as, *multi quīdem dicunt*, many, indeed, say. Likewise, **quamquam** and **etsi** are sometimes coördinates ; they then approach the adversatives and have no apodosis ; as, *Quamquam quid loquor ?* Yet, why do I speak ? *Tu ut unquam te corrigas ?* Concerning the mood, see § 254, 5.

§ 173.

IX. FINAL CONJUNCTIONS

(Coniunctiones finales),

IN FINAL SENTENCES.

Ut (*uti*), in order that, that, *quōminus*, in order that not,
 § 249. § 253.
nē, in order that not, lest, § 250. *mōdo*,
nēve, and lest. *dum*, } in order that, if
quō, in order that, § 251. *dummōdo*, } only, § 254, 3.

§ 174.

TEMPORAL CONJUNCTIONS

(Coniunctiones temporales),

IN TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

cum (*quum*) when, § 256. *dum*, }
ūt, when, as § 245, 2. *dōnec*, } while, until, as long as.
ūbi, when. *quoad*, }
antiqum, } before that. *postquam*, } after that, § 245,
priusquam, } 2. *posteaquam*, }

cum (*quum*) *primum*, *ut* *primum*, *ubi* *primum* ;
simulatque, *simulac*, as soon as, § 245 :
quando, when.

§ 175.

NEGATIVE PARTICLES

(Particulae Negativae).

Non, not, no. *vix*, scarcely.
haud, not. *nēque*, } and not.
nē, not. *nēve*, }
et nōn, and not. *minīme*, by no means, not at
nē — *quīdem*, not even. all.
pārūm, } too little, not quite. *neutiquam*, } by no means, not
minūs, } *nequāquam*, } at all.

With **ne** — **quīdem**, the emphasized word is placed in the middle; as, *ne unus quīdem*, not even one.

NOTE 1.—**Non** (*haud*) and **neque** (= *et non*) are negative, **ne** and **neve**, prohibiting; hence the two latter only with imperative and subjunctive. *Haud* is weaker and less frequent than *non*; it occurs chiefly in certain phrases; as, *haud ita facilis*, not so easy. Especially, *haud scio an*, properly, I know not whether; but only used in affirming. It may be translated by *perhaps* (§ 176, note 3, d.).

NOTE 2.—**Non** means *no* (adj.) when it refers to an adjective; as, *non inutilis opera*, no useless trouble, i. e., not a useless trouble. *Non magna virtus*, is, a no great virtue, not a great virtue, small virtue; on the contrary, *nulla magna virtus*, is, no great virtue.

NOTE 3.—As *neque quisquam*, *neque ullus*, is said instead of *et nemo*, *et nullus*, so also *ne quis* (rarely *quisquam*), *ne ullus*, *ne quid*, *ne unquam*, etc., is used instead of *ut nemo*, *ut nullus*, *ut nihil*, *ut nunquam*, etc., in every case in which **ne** must be used for **ut non** (§ 250, 2).

NOTE 4.—Two negations within the same sentence destroy each other and form an affirmation. **Non potui non mirari**, I was forced to admire. Remark that the position of the negations often produces a great difference:

nonnemo , somebody.	<i>nemo</i> — non , everybody.
nonnullus (mostly plur. <i>nonnulli</i> , some).	<i>nullus</i> — non , all, each.
nonnihil , something.	<i>nihil</i> — non , all.
nonnunquam , sometimes.	<i>nunquam</i> — non , always.

Thus also *nusquam* — **non**, everywhere (*alicubi*, somewhere), and *nec* — **non** for *and*. However, the latter negation must always stand immediately before the verb. **Nemo in hac re tibi non studuit**, everybody favored thee in this affair (not, *nemo non in hac re*, etc.). In like manner, *non* — *nisi* used in the sense of *only*. **Non loquimur nisi de te. Vera amicitia nisi in bonis esse non potest.**

Two negations do not destroy each other when *nec* — *nec* or *ne* — *quidem* follows a general negation. **Nihil est Attico mihi nec carius nec suavindius. Nusquam hoc ne apud barbaros quidem auditum est.**

NOTE 5.—*Not even* is **ne quidem** (not *etiam non*); as, *Superbia ne regem quidem decet*, is, not becoming even in the king. *Qui sua negligit, is ne aliena quidem tuebatur.*

NOTE 6.—The English *not only not*, followed by *but not even*, *but also not*, *but scarcely*, is generally rendered in Latin by **non modo (solum)**, **non, sed ne** — **quidem**, or **sed vix**. *Ego non modo tibi non irascor, sed ne reprehendo quidem factum tuum. Obscenitas non solum non foro digna, sed vix convivio liberorum.* But if both members of the sentence have a common predicate which is in the last member, then it is rendered (one *non* being omitted) by **non modo, sed**

ne — quidem or sed vix. *Regnum video, non modo Romano homini, sed ne Persae quidem cuiquam tolerabile, i. e., properly, not only to a Roman, but even to a Persian, intolerable. Haec genera virtutum non solum in moribus nostris, sed vix tam in libris reperuntur.*

NOTE 7.—**Non modo** can often be translated by *I will not say* (for which *non dico, non dicam* sometimes stand); the following **sed** means then, *but only*. *Qua in re non modo ceteris specimen aliquod dedisti, sed tute tui periculum fecisti?* **Non modo** means also, *not to say, much less*, when preceded by *ne — quidem* (like *nedum*, § 254, 4). *Apollinis opera nunquam ne medioeri quidem cuiquam, non modo prudenti, probata sunt.*

NOTE 8.—The expression, **non magis quam** (*non plus quam*), not more than, is equivalent to the English, *just as much as*, when both members of the sentence form an affirmation; to the English, *as little as*, when both members form a negation. *Domus erat non domino magis ornamento, quam civitati* (with inverted order; as much to the state, as to its owner). **Non nascitur ex malo bonum, non magis, quam fletus ex olea** (as little as). The expression **non minus quam**, not less than, is also often equivalent to the English, *as much as*. *Patria hominibus non minus cara esse debet, quam liberi*, not less dear, or, as dear as. With **non magis quam**, the more important idea must be in the member beginning with **quam**; with **non minus quam**, in the member beginning with **non minus**. Hence the last example may, without any material change of sense, be expressed thus: *Liberi hominibus non magis cari esse debent, quam patria.*

§ 176.

INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES

(*Particulae interrogativae*).

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Num,} \\ \text{nē,} \\ \text{nonne,} \end{array} \right\}$	a simple question.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{utrum — an,} \\ \text{nē — an,} \\ \text{— — an or nē,} \end{array} \right\}$	double questions.
---	--------------------	--	-------------------

The reply to *num* is no, to *nonne*, yes; the question introduced by *ne* implies an uncertainty as to the answer; it is annexed to the most emphatic word (§ 165, note 2).

1. **Num vides?** Seest thou? Ans. **non video**, no.—**Nonne vides?** Dost thou not see? Ans. **ita, etiam**, yes; **sane**, of course; **omnino**, by all means; **certe**, to be sure.—**Videsne (vides)?** Dost thou see? Ans., **video**, yes; **non video**, no.—**Utrum domi fuisti an in schola?** Hast thou been at home or at school?

Interrogo te, num videas, or videasne; I ask thee, whether thou seest. *Interrogo te, nonne videas*; I ask thee, whether thou dost not see. *Interrogo te, utrum domi fueris, an in schola*; I ask thee whether thou hast been at home or at school.

2. In disjunctive or double questions, in which it is asked, which of several cases, that exclude one another, will take place; the first member has **utrum** or **ne** or *no interrogative particle*; but in all the following members **an** is used. If the question has only two members, the former can be introduced without a particle, the latter with the annexed particle **ne**.

Utrum haec syllaba brevis an longa est? Brevisne an longa est? Brevis an longa est? Quaero ex te, haec syllaba brevis longa-ne sit. If *or not* occur in the second member, it is expressed by **annon** or **necne**. **Utrum domi fuisti annon? Interrogo te, utrum domi fueris, necne.**

NOTE 1. The above-mentioned interrogative particles are mere forms, without any other meaning than to make the sentence interrogative; they only inquire, Whether, or Whether not. Whereas, the interrogatives, properly speaking, direct the question to some definite point, as: *quis?* who? *ubi?* where? *quando,* when? *cur?* why?

Questions as to form; questions as to contents, cfr. § 67, 156, &c.

NOTE 2.—Questions are direct or indirect. A direct question is one which, by virtue of its form, demands an answer; it is always independent. An indirect question is one which, by virtue of its form, does not require an answer; it is always dependent on another word. **Quid dicis?** what sayest thou? is direct, independent, and requires an answer; likewise, **num dormis?** dost thou sleep? Whereas, in the sentence, *Non intelligo, quid dicas*, the question, **quid dicas**, is indirect, dependent on the verb *intelligo*, and requires no answer. Likewise, *Ista interrogatio, num dormiam, otiosa est. Incertus sum, quid optimum sit.*

NOTE 3.—Concerning the interrogative particle, **an**, note especially:

a. In the disjunctive (double) interrogation, **an** may only be used in the second and subsequent members; English, *or* (never *whether*).

b. In the simple direct question, **an** is often placed at the beginning of the question, when in English also we say *or, viz.*, in oppositions. *Oratorem irasci minime decet. An tibi irasci tum videmur, quum acris et vehementius dicimus?* With **an vero** sometimes, for the sake of emphasis. *Frequently, an vero dubitamus, or do we perhaps doubt? Or could we have the least doubt?*

c. Without opposition, an affirmative question is often begun with **an**, nearly in the sense of *nonne*. *Quidnam beneficio provocati facere debemus? An imitari agros fertiles, qui multo plus efferunt, quam acceperunt? Quando autem ista vis (oraculi) evanuit? An postquam homines minus creduli esse coeperunt?* not perchance when? etc.

d. In the simple indirect question, **an** stands only with expressions of uncertainty; as, **dubito an, nescio an, incertum est an**, etc., and these expressions then always incline towards an affirmation; **an** is equal to *whether not* in this case, and the whole expression to *forsitan*. *Si per se virtus sine fortuna ponderanda sit, dubito an hunc primum omnium ponam* (I should perhaps place, *forsitan ponam*). *Contigit tibi, quod haud scio an nemini. Moriendum certe est, et id incertum, an eo ipso die* (perhaps this very day). *I doubt whether*, is always **dubito num**.

§ 177.

Interjections also are particles, incapable of inflection. They are, 1) expressive of joy: *io, euoe, euax*; 2) of grief: *heu, eheu, pro (proh), vae (au, hei, ohe)*; 3) of wonder: *o, en, and ecce, lo! hem, ehem, hui!* 4) of disgust: *phui! apage!* (§ 150); 5) of address: *heus, eho, ehodum!* 6) of flattery: *eia and euge!* behold!

As oaths, were used: *nae, truly*; also *hercule* or *mehercule*, by Hercules (*hercle, mehercle; mehercules*); *medius fidius, mecastor, edepol, per deum, by God! pro deum fidem!*

CHAPTER XXXI.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

§ 178.

The simplest element of a word is called the **root**. This is only rarely found, in its root-form, as a current word; e. g., *sol*, the sun. The root generally undergoes various changes before it becomes a word of the language. The word least modified is called **root-word**; thus, *rego*, is root-word from the root *reg*. Words which have the same root are called **derivative**; as, *rego, rex, regnum, erigere, &c.*, all formed from the root *reg*. A word which serves as stem from which other words spring forth, is called the (proximate) **stem-word**; thus *facio*, (*ro' fua*) is the stem-word to *facilis*, and the latter in turn to *facilitas*.

New words are formed

- I. By *derivation*;
- II. By *composition*.

The stem-words are called **primitives** (*primitiva*); those formed by derivation, **derivatives** (*derivata*); words formed by composition, **compounds** (*composita*); those not thus formed, **simple words** (*simplicia*). Words derived from a verb, **verbals** (*verbalia*); those derived from a noun, **denominatives** (*denominativa*).

BY DERIVATION.

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES (*substantiva verbalia*) are formed:

a. From a verbal-stem by the addition of the following endings:

1. **or**, to denote a *disposition or state*; as, *amor*, love; *timor*, fear; *dolor*, pain; *decor*, decency, gen. *decōris*: (but *decus*, ornament, *decōris*).

NOTE.—A rare ending, with the same force of meaning, is **us**; as, *decus*, *ōris*, the ornament; *frigus*, cold; *genus*, *ēris*, race (*gigno*).

2. **tum**; as, *gaudium*, joy; *odium*, hatred.

3. **igo**; as, *origo*, source (*orior*); *vertigo*, dizziness.

4. **ido**; as, *libido*, passion (*libet*); *cupido*, desire.

5. **men** and **mentum**, to denote the *means*; as, *medicāmen* and *medicamentum*, a means of cure, remedy; *tegūmen* (*tegimen*) and *tegmentum*, a covering; *nomen* (from *no-sco*, a means of knowing), a name; *flumen*, river; *lumen* (for *luc-men*), light; *agmen*, train, troop; *alimentum*, food; *ornamentum*, ornament; *monumentum*, memorial.

6. **būlum** and **cūlum**, to denote the *instrument*; as, *vocabūlum*, word (means of calling, *vocare*); *pabūlum*, fodder (*pa-sco*); *venabūlum*, hunter's spear; *fercūlum*, bier; *gubernacūlum*, helm; *iacūlum*, dart; *vincūlum*, hand (*fulorum*, support, for *fulcūlum*; *latibūlum* and *latēbra*, hiding-place).

7. **trum**, to denote an *implement, tool*; as, *arātrum*, plough; *claustrum* (for *claudtrum*), lock; *rostrum* (*rodēre*), beak.

b. From the **supine-stem** with the endings:

1. **or**, to denote the *person acting*, performing or doing; as, *amātor*, lover; *doctor*, teacher; *cursor*, runner; *auditor*, hearer. Most of these have also a feminine form in **trix**; as, *victor*, the conqueror; *victrix*, the female conqueror; *tonsor*, barber, *tonstria*; *expulsoor*, *expultrix*, expeller. *Viātor*, from *via*, traveler; *ianitor*, from *ianua*, doorkeeper; *funditor*, from *funda*, slinger, are denominatives; perhaps, also, *gladiator*, from *gladius*, swordsman.

NOTE.—The person doing (agent) is also sometimes denoted by the ending **a**, added to the stem of the verb; as, *scrība*, the writer (as an official, or clerk); but *scrīptor*, one who is engaged in the act of writing; likewise *incōla*, *advēna*, *conviva*.

2. **io** denotes the *act itself while in progress*; as *actio*, deed; *oppugnatio*, storming; *defensio*, defence; *motio*, movement. *Opinio*, belief; *oblivio*, forgetfulness, &c., are formed directly from the verbal stem. *Obsidio*, blockade, *obsessio*, siege.

8. **us**, gen., **ūs**, denotes the *act* as *existing*; thus, *motus*, movement *adventus*, arrival; *auditus*, hearing.

4. **ūra**; as, *picūra*, painting; *mercatura*, commerce; *censura*, censorship; *praectura*, *quaestura*.

5. **ēla**; as, *tutēla*, guardianship; *corruptēla*, corrupting: the ending is often added to the verbal-stem; as, *querēla*, complaint; *candēla*, candle.

§ 179.

DENOMINATIVE SUBSTANTIVES (*substantiva denominativa*) are formed partly from nouns, partly from adjectives. The former end in:

1. **a**, forming a feminine for words in **us** and **er** of the second declension; thus, *asina*, she-ass; *dea*, goddess; *magistra*, mistress; *capra*, she-goat (*caper*, he-goat).

2. **lus**, **la**, **lum**, forming diminutives (*diminutiva*), in:

a. **ūlus**, **a**, **um**, for stem-words of the first and second decl., and a few of the third; as, *lunūla*, small moon; *virgula*, small branch; *hortulus*, small garden; *puerulus*, small boy; *oppidūlum*, small town. *Vocula*, *regulus*, *adolescentulus*.

b. **ōlus**, **a**, **um**, which is used for *ūlus*, when a vowel precedes; as, *gloriōla*, small glory; *filīōlus*, little son; *malleōlus*, little hammer; *ingeniōlum*, small mind (jokingly).

c. **cūlus**, **a**, **um**, found only with root-words of the third, fourth, and fifth declensions; as, *floscūlus*, floweret; *matrecula*, little mother; *corculum*, little heart; *homunculus*, mannikin, little man; *oratiuncula*, short speech; *igniculus*, small fire; *vulpecula*, little fox; *denticulus*, small tooth; *particula*, little bit, particle; *ossiculum*, small bone; *articulus*, small joint; *corniculum*, little horn; *diecula*, short day.

d. **ellus**, **a**, **um**, used with some root-words of the first and second declensions; *ocellus*, little eye, eyelet; *agellus*, small field; *tabella*, small slate; *sacellum*, small sanctuary, chapel (*corolla*, the little wreath).

e. **illus**, **a**, **um**, is rare; *lapillus*, little stone, pebble; *anguilla*, eel (*anguis*, serpent); *sigillum*, little picture, seal (*signum*).

Sometimes other diminutives are again formed from diminutives; as, *cista*, a box; *cistula*, a little box; *cistella*, a very small box; *cistellula*, the tiniest little box.

The diminutive usually retains the gender of its stem-word.

3. **ium**, joined to personal nouns, denotes the condition or collection of the persons; as, *sacerdotium*, priesthood; *servitium*, slavery. *Auditorium*, the audience, the lecture-hall, is a verbal word from the supine-stem.

4. **ātus**. ven. *us*, expresses the *office*; as, *consulatus*, the office of consul, the consulship; *tribunatus*, *decemviratus*.

5. **ārium**, denotes a *receptacle*; *columbarium*, dove-cote; *plantarium*, nursery-garden; *granarium*, granary (*granum*, grain).

6. **ētum**, joined to names of *plants*, points out the *place* where they abound; *quercētum*, a plantation of oaks; *vinētum*, vineyard.

7. **ile** appended to names of *animals* designates their *stall* or *fold*: *ovile*, sheep-cot; *equile*, *caprile*, *bubile* (or *bovile*), &c. (*sedile*, seat; *cubile*, couch, lair).

8. **ina**, usually with the *personal nouns*, denotes both an *occupation* and the *place* where it is exercised; *medicina*, the art of medicine; *sutrina*, shoemaker's shop (*sutor*, shoemaker); *gallina*, hen, from *gallus*; *regina*, queen, from *rex*; here it is only the feminine.

9. Names of *descent* (*patronymica*), to indicate a son or daughter, or descendants in general, are formed from the name of the father or ancestor:

a. **ides**; as, *Priamides*, Priam's son, descendants of Priam.

b. **ides**, from names in *eus* and *cles*; *Atrides*, Atrides, the son of Atreus; *Heraclides*, the Heraclide.

c. **ādes** and **iādes**, *Aeneādes*, the son of Aeneas; *Laertiādes*, the son of Laertes.

d. **is**, gen., **idis** (fem.); *Danāis*, *Danaidis*, daughter of Danaus; *Nerēis*, daughter of Nereus, Nereid.

§ 180.

Substantives derived from adjectives are mostly **ABSTRACT** (*abstracta*), and denote a quality.

1. **tas**, mostly **itas**; as, *bonitas*, goodness; *suauietas*, sweetness; *atrocitas*, hideousness; *letas*, in words ending with *ius*; as, *anxietas*, anguish; *pietas*, piety; **stas** from words in *stus*; as, *vetustas*, age (from *vetustus*, old); *libertas*, freedom; *paupertas*, poverty; *difficultas*, difficulty; *simultas*, rivalry; *facultas*, ability; *facilitas*, readiness.

2. **tūdo**; *altitūdo*, height; *fortitūdo*, bravery; *consuetūdo*, custom; (*dulcedo*, sweetness).

3. **ia**; as, *audacia*, boldness; *concordia*, concord; *prudentia*, prudence; *elegantia*, neatness.

4. **itia**; as, *avaritia*, avarice; *pigritia*, laziness.

5. **mōnia**; *castimōnia*, purity. *Parsimonia*, frugality, and *quorimonia*, complaint, are verbals.

§ 181.

VERBAL ADJECTIVES end in:

1. **bundus** and **cundus**, and have the meaning of the present par-

ticiple (somewhat intensified); *errabundus* (= *errans*), wandering; *moribundus*, dying; *iracundus*, passionate (*irascor*); *verecondus*, bashful (*vereor*). *Iucundus*, pleasing, stands for *iuicundus* from *iūeo*.

2. **Idus** expresses the same as the pres. part., but implies a continued state, from verbs of the second conj.; as, *timidus* (*timens*), fearful; *avidus*, greedy; *placidus*, obliging; *lucidus*, bright; rarely in **Idis**, as *viridis* (*virens*), green.

3. **ilis** and **illis** denote possibility or capability in a passive sense; as, *amabilis*, worthy of love; *facilis*, easy to do; *utilis*, useful; *mobilis* (for *mōvibilis*) movable. Only a few have an active meaning, such as, *terribilis*, terrible; *fertilis*, fruitful.

4. **ax** denotes a strong inclination: *audax*, daring (*audēre*); *mordax*, biting; *furax*, thievish; *fallax*, deceitful.

5. **ūlus**; as *bibūlus*, fond of drinking; *zēdulus*, zealous.

6. **ūus**; as, *assiduus*, constant, unremitting.

§ 182.

DENOMINATIVE ADJECTIVES (*adjectiva denominativa*) are mostly derived from substantives; in a few instances only, from adverbs of time, and from adjectives; they have the following endings:

1. **ūs** denotes the *material*; *aureus*, of gold, golden; *ferreus*, *argenteus*: where the material is wood, **neus** or **nus** is the ending; as, *quernēus*, *quernus*, oaken; *Cedrinus*, cedar; *faginus*, beechen; *adamantinus*, adamantine; *crystallinus*, crystalline.

2. **acūs** and **icūs**; *chartaceus*, paper; *latericius*, brick.

3. **icus**; *bellicus*, relating to war; *domesticus*, belonging to the house, household; *Africus*, African; *Persicus*, Persian; *Socraticus*, Socratic. (*Pubicus*, modest, from *puet*).

4. **ālis** and **āris** (the latter only in such words as contain an **l**); *mortalis*, mortal; *regalis*, kingly; *militāris*, martial; *consularis*, *vulgaris*, *popularis*.

5. **ilis**; as, *virilis*, manly; *hostilis*, hostile.

6. **Ius**; as, *imperatorius*, belonging to a general; *sororius*, sisterly; *patrius*, fatherly; *regius*, kingly; *Corinthius*, Corinthian; *Lacedaemonius*, Lacedaemonian.

7. **inus**, in *names of animals* and also other living beings; as, *anserinus*, belonging to a goose; *vitulinus*, of a calf (*caro vitulina*, veal); but *bubulus*, of an ox; *suillus*, of a hog; *ovillus*, of a sheep. *Divinus*, divine; *femininus*, female. *Matutinus*, morning, early; *vespertinus*, of evening; but *pristinus*, previous; *crastinus* of to-morrow; also in names of places,

Latinus, from *Latium*, Latin; *Tarentinus*, Tarentine (*Iugurthinus*, *Jugurthine*).

8. *ānus*, in describing *locality*; *montānus*, belonging to mountains, mountainous; *urbānus*, of a city; *Romānus*, Roman; *Troianus*, Trojan; *Thebanus*, Theban (*Ciceronianus*, Ciceronian; *Sullanus*, belonging to Sulla; *quotidianus*, daily; *meridianus*, noonday).

9. *ārius*, denotes *trade, profession*; *coriarius*, the tanner (*corium*, leather); *statuarius* (*i. e., homo*), sculptor; *ars statuaria*, the art of sculpture; (*gregarius* and *gregalis*, belonging to the herd, common; *auxiliarius* and *auxiliaris*, auxiliary).

10. *ivus*, *tempestivus*, seasonable, early; *aestivus*, summer; *captivus*, captured.

11. *ernus*, *paternus*, fatherly; *maternus*, *fraternus*; to denote time, *hibernus*, wintery; *hodiernus*, of to-day; *hesternus*, of yesterday; *asternus*, eternal; *diurnus*, daily; *nocturnus*, nightly; *diuturnus*, lasting.

12. *itimus* (*itūmus*), *legitimus*, lawful; *finitimus*, neighboring; *maritimus*, belonging to the sea (*legitūmus*, etc.).

13. *ester*, *campester*, level, belonging to a plain; *pedester*, on foot; (*paluster*, marshy; *coelestis*, heavenly; *agrestis*, rustic).

14. *ensis*, refers to a *place*; *forensis* (*forum*), belonging to a market; *Atheniensis*, Athenian; *Karthaginiensis*, Carthaginian; *Cannensis*, belonging to Cannae.

15. *ōsus*, denotes *abundance*; *animosus*, full of courage, spirited; *saxosus*, rocky; *periculosus*, dangerous; *bellicosus*, warlike.

16. *ulentus*, denotes *plenty*; *opulentus*, mighty, wealthy (*opes*, resources); *pulverulentus*, dusty; but *olentus*, in *violentus*, vehement; *sanguinolentus*, bloody; *vinolentus*, drunk with wine.

17. *ātus*, means supplied with; *barbatus*, bearded; *calceatus*, wearing shoes, shod; but *auritus*, having ears; and thus for all words in *is*; as, *orinitus*, *pollitus*; *cornūtus*, horned.

18. *stus* (properly *tus*), marks how qualified; *molestus*, troublesome; *venustus*, comely; *honestus*, *coelestus*, *onustus*, *robustus*.

19. Besides the derivations of proper names under 3, 6, 7, 8, 14, the following are also found: *ōsus*; as, *Pythagorēus*, Pythagorean; *āis*, *Arpinus*, belonging to Arpinum; likewise, *nostras*, gen. *ātis*, of our country, our countryman; *vestras*, *cuius*; *āeus*, *Smyrnaeus*, of Smyrna.

20. Adjectives derived from other adjectives are only **diminutives** with the usual endings (§ 179, 2); as, *parvulus*, very small; *aurēolus*, finely gilt, golden; *tenellus*, very delicate; *maiuscūlus*, somewhat larger, rather large. From *bonus* (*bonus*) *benulus* whence *bellus*, pretty, and *bellulus*; *paucus* has *paucūli*, (plural only); in the singular, *paulus*. and thence *pautilus*.

§ 183.

The VERBAL VERBS (*verba verbalia*) are divided into four classes.

1. **Frequentatives** (*verba frequentativa*). They denote the frequent repetition of an action, or an increase of the action expressed by the primitive verb (*verba intensiva*). They all belong to the first conjugation, and are formed:

a. From verbs of the first conjugation, by changing *ātum* of the supine into **ito**; as,

clamo — *clamātum* — *clamito*, I shout often or loud.

rogo — *rogātum* — *rogito*, I ask often.

volo — *volātum*, — *volito*, I fly to and fro.

b. From verbs of the second and third conjugations, by changing **um** of the supine into **o**; as,

habeo — *habītum* — *habito*, I dwell (have often).

cano — *cantum* — *canto*, I sing often, loud.

voleo — *volūtum* — *volūto*, I roll about.

pello — *pulsūm* — *pulsō*, I batter.

Stand isolated: *salto*, I dance, from *salire*, to jump; *dormito*, I am sleepy, from *dormire*.

Remark, moreover: *agito*, from *ago*; *sciscitor*, I inquire after, from *scisco*; from *dico* is formed *dicto*, and thence *dictito*.

2. **Desideratives** (*verba desiderativa*), which express a desire. They are formed from the supine by changing **um** into **ūrlo**; as,

Esurio, I desire to eat, I am hungry, from *edo*, *esum*. They all belong to the fourth conjugation, and have neither perfect nor supine.

3. **Inchoatives** (*verba inchoativa*, cfr. § 129). They end in **asco** when derived from verbs of the first; **esco**, of the second; **isco**, of the third and fourth conjugations.

4. **Diminutives** (*verba diminutiva*) end in **illo**, **illāre**; as, *conscribillo*, *conscribillāre*, I scribble together.

§ 184.

DENOMINATIVE VERBS (*verba denominativa*) end in *āre*, *ēre*, *īre*; only a few inchoatives follow the third (§ 131). Those of the first and fourth conj. are mostly transitive; those in *ēre*, intransitive.

liberāre, to free;

vulnerare, to wound;

mollire, to soften;

finire, to finish;

vestire, to clothe;

albēre, to be white (*albus*).

canēre, to be gray (*canus*).

florēre, to bloom (*flor*).

lucēre, to shine (*lux*).

frondēre, to be in leaf (*frons*).

mītescēre, to grow mild (*mītis*).

ignescēre, to take fire (*ignis*).

2. Many deponents are formed from substantives and from a few adjectives. They express being that which the noun denotes; as, *aemulus*, I am an *aemulus*, rival, I rival; *furor*, I am a *fur*, steal; *dominor*, I lord over; *laetor*, I rejoice; cfr. § 102.

NOTE.—For the derivation of adverbs, see § 158.

§ 185.

FORMATION OF WORDS BY COMPOSITION.

1. The latter word in composition is the basis or fundamental word, and determines the meaning; the former only modifies and limits the meaning; thus *agricola*, farmer, one who takes care of land; *agrum colens*.

2. In composition the former element appears only in its *root-form*. When a second component begins with a consonant the tie-vowel **I** (rarely **Ū** or **Ū**) generally serves to bind the elements together; as, *arm-I-ger*, armor-bearer (*quadr-u-pes*, four-footed; *saor-Ū-sanctus*, inviolable); but *magn-animus*, noble-minded.

3. If the former element is a preposition, its final consonant is assimilated to the subsequent consonant; thus, *im-pono*, instead of *in-pono*; *atraho* for *adtraho*, *aufero* for *abfero*; *efficio* for *ex facio*.

4. Besides the ordinary prepositions, there are some which are never used by themselves, but occur only in compound words (*praepositiones inseparabiles*).

Prefixes: **amb**, around, about; **com**, **con**, **co** (from *cum*), with, together; **dis**, **di**, denoting separation; **rē** (*red*), again, back; **sē**, aside. Add **in**, meaning **un**, **in**, with adjectives (unworthy, infirm).

5. The latter element sometimes undergoes slight changes; as, *perficio*, I complete, from *facio*; *inermis*, unarmed, from *arma*; *accuso*, I accuse, from *causa*; *suffoco*, I stifle, from *fauces*; *illido*, I strike heavily against, from *laedo*; *insulsus*, unsalted, from *salsus*.

NOTE.—In the assimilation of prepositions, the following rules are to be observed:

a. All prepositions remain unchanged before vowels and **h**, but *com* and *circum* sometimes drop the **m**; as, *coeo*, *coopto*, *circueo*, *circuitus* (also *circumeo* and *circumitus*); but *comēdo* and *comitor*. However, only **ab** before vowels (never *a* or *abs*), **ex** (never *e*); *pro* before vowels inserts the euphonic **d**; as, in *prodeo*. Exceptions, *prout*, *proinde*, *proaevus*.

b. **ad**, before *i*, (*f*), *v*, *m*, is unchanged; *aditio*, *adveho*, *admiror*; before other consonants it is generally assimilated; as, *accedo*, *affero*, *acquiro*; instead of *adnosco* (*adgnosco*) always *agnosco*; for *adspicio*, *adscendo*, *adsto*, also *aspicio*, *ascendo*, *asto*. Meaning *to*, *near*, *at*.

a. ob, unchanged; before *c, f, p*, assimilated; *obline*; but *occide offero, oppono*; (**obs** in *obsoleco*, and *ostendo* for *obstendo*). Meaning *against, down*.

d. per, unchanged, except in *pellisio* and *pellucidus*. Meaning *through* (often intensive).

e. trans, unchanged; however, *trado, traduco, traicio* are more frequent than *transdo*, &c. Otherwise always *trans*; **as**, *transmitto* (rarely *tramitto*); always *transpono*. Meaning *over, across*.

f. a, ab, abs; before *m* and *v* always **a**; thus, *amitto, avello*; before *c* and *t* always **abs**; **as**, *abscondo, abstineo*; before vowels and most consonants, **ab**; thus, *abduco, abiicio*; but *aufugio, aufero*, and *afui*, rather than *abfui*; before *p*, only **as** (from *abs*), *asporto*, carry away. Meaning *from, away*.

g. e, ex; before vowels and *c, p, g, s, t* always **ex**; before *f*, it is assimilated into **ef**; before all other letters **e**; *excedo, exsto, extraho, effero, (extuli, elatum), ebibo, edo, emitto*. Meaning *out of* (sometimes only intensive).

h. in, generally unchanged; **as**, *incido, induco*, etc., but assimilated before *l* and *r*; **as**, *illido, irrumpo*; **im** before *b, m, p*; **as**, *imbibo, immitto, impono*; for *innosco (ingnosco), ignosco*. Meaning *in, into*; also **un, in** (negative); **as**, *irritus, impurus*.

i. sub, unchanged, but usually assimilated before *c, f, p*, and *g, m, r*; **as**, *subdo, subluo*; *succurro, sufficio, suppono, suggero, summoveo, surripio*. However, **sub** (*subs*) in *suscipio, sustineo*, etc. (**su-spiro** for *sub-spiro, suspicor*). Meaning *under, from under* (sometimes it lessens or weakens the meaning).

k. com, always before *b, m, p*; before vowels, **co**; **as**, *coalesco, cohaereo*. **Com** only in *comedo, comes, comitium, comitor*. Assimilated before *l* and *r*; **as**, *colligo, corrodo*; before other consonants, **con**; **as**, *conciium, condo*

l. dis, unchanged before *c, p, q, t*, and also *s*, when followed by a vowel; **as**, *disputo, dissolvo*; assimilated before *f*, *differo (distuli, dilatum)*; **di** everywhere else, *diduco, diruo, disto (dirimo from dis and amo)*.

m. rē, unchanged; *removeo, reduco*; before vowels always **red**, *redarguo, redeo*, likewise *reddo*. *Rēfert*, he carries back; but *rēfert*, from *res* and *fero*, it concerns.

n. sē, unchanged; *sēduco*; but *sēditio (ire)*; *sōbrius*, sober, for *se-sbrius*; *sōcra*, heartless.

§ 186.

I ADVERBIAL COMPOUNDS, (*composita adverbialia*); in which the adverb, as modifying element, belongs to the basis:

interrex , regent.	dispar , unequal.
condiscipulus , schoolmate.	dissimilis , unlike.
cognomen , surname.	indignus , unworthy.
ineptus , unfit (<i>aptus</i>).	maledicus , reviling.
cisalpinus , cisalpine.	brevilòquus , speaking briefly (for <i>breviter loquens</i>).
perbrèvis , very short.	submolestus , rather annoying.
præclarus , very renowned.	

Convoco , summon.	arrideo , smile at.
coeo , go together.	allòquor , address.
comèdo , consume.	circumdo , surround.
ambio , go around.	circueo , go around.
amplector , embrace.	obrepò , steal upon.
discurro , run about.	occurro , meet.
discindo , tear.	oppòno , oppose.
dirumpo , break.	occido , strike down (<i>caedo</i>).
dimitto , send away.	occido , sink (<i>cado</i>).
rèpello , drive back.	perduco , carry through.
rèvertor , return.	perdoceo , teach thoroughly.
rèdeo , return.	transiicio , } throw over, cross.
rèpugno , fight against.	trāiicio , }
sèduco , lead away.	trādo , surrender.
sèiungo , sever (unbind).	āmitto , lose.
dèduco , lead astray.	abdo , hide.
despèro , despair.	abstineo , refrain (<i>teneo</i>).
pròfugio , escape.	expòno , explain.
pròdeo , come forth.	èbibo , drink out.
subiicio , submit.	infundo , pour in.
suscipio , undertake.	impono , place upon.
succèdo , follow.	irrumpto , break into.
admiror , wonder at.	illābor , fall upon.

§ 187.

II. COMPOUNDS BY CONSTRUCTION, in which the oblique case is considered dependent on the basis:

armiger , armor-bearer (<i>arma gerens</i>).
artifex , artist (<i>artes faciens</i>).
particeps , partaking (<i>partem capiens</i>).
tubicen , trumpeter (<i>tubā canens</i>).

tibicen, flute-player (for *tibiicen*, *tibia canens*),
agricola, farmer (*agrum colens*).
fratricidium, brother's murder (*fratris caesio*).
ignivomus, spitting fire (*ignem vomens*).
honorificus, honorable (*honorem faciens*).
animadverto, notice (*animum adverto*).
aedifico, build (*aedes facio*).
gratificor, oblige (*gratum facio*).
belligero, carry on war (*bellum gero*).

Here may also be added the so-called compounds, in which fully declined elements are joined together; as, *respublica*, for which also *res publica* is found; thus also, *iusturandum*, oath; *iresviri*.

In the foregoing both words are declined; as, *reipublicae*, *iurisiurandi*, *triumvirum*. So also *senatusconsultum*, decree of the senate; *populiscitum*, decree of the people. Remark *resque publica*, *senatusque consultum*.

NOTE.—Verbs compounded with verbs. In these compounds **facio** is the basis or fundamental word in the composition; as, *arifacio*, to dry, from *arere*, to be dry, and *facio*; cfr. §144, 2. The remaining compounds of *facio*, become *ficio*, when the former element is a preposition § 120, 3), but *fico* or *ficcō*, when a noun is the first element; as, *magnifico*, *aedifico*, *gratificor*, *testificor*.

§ 188.

III. POSSESSIVE COMPOUNDS: (*composita possessiva*):

magnanimus, noble-minded (*magnum animam habens*).
quadrupes, four-footed (*quattuor pedes habens*).
capripes, goat-footed (*caprae pedes habens*).
affinis, bordering.
concors, united, same mind.
discors, disunited, divided.
triceps, three-headed (*tria capita habens*).

Words of this class compounded with *a*, *de*, *ex*, *in*, *se*, have through these particles a privative meaning.

amens, senseless, }
demens, foolish, } i. e., *mentem non habens, sine mente*.
docolor, colorless (*colorem non habens, sine colore*).
expers, destitute, (*partem non habens, sine parte*).
expes, hopeless
informis, shapeless, ugly.
infamis, notorious.
inermis, unarmed.
iners, inactive.
securus, careless.

PART II.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER XXXII.

SENTENCES. AGREEMENT OF THEIR PARTS.

§ 189.

I. 1. A **sentence** is a thought expressed in words.

Every sentence necessarily contains two parts: a *Subject* and a *Predicate*. The **Subject** is that of which something is affirmed; the **Predicate**, that which is affirmed of the subject.

2. Both the subject and the predicate may be *Simple* or *Complex* or *Compound*. They are:

Simple, when not modified by any other word or phrase (grammatical subject or predicate).

Complex, when modified by some other word or phrase (logical subject or predicate).

Compound, when there are two or more simple or complex subjects or predicates.

3. The **Subject** may be modified by *Adjuncts* (adjectives, genitives), or by *Appositions* or by *Adverbial Modifications* (adverbs, prepositions with their respective cases, or cases alone).

The **Predicate** may be modified by its *Object* and by *Adverbial Modifications*.

4. The *subject* as well as the *modifiers* in a sentence may be resolved into **dependent clauses**, as; Tuus amor *mihi gratus est* = quod me amas, *mihi gratum est*. *Agnoscimus diligentiam vestram* = *agnoscimus. vos diligentes esse*. *Bonum regem omnes*

amant = *Regem, qui bonus est, omnes amant. Legati missi sunt ad res repetendas* = *ut res repeterent.* Such clauses are then called, according to the part of sentence represented by them, Subject, Object, Adjunct, or Adverbial Clauses.

5. A sentence is either **simple** or **compound**.

A *simple* sentence contains **one proposition**. A *compound* sentence contains **two** or **more** propositions connected together. These propositions are called *members* or *clauses*; these clauses are either *independent* (coördinate) or *dependent* (subordinate). The independent clause, from which another depends, is, with regard to this, called the *principal* or *leading* sentence.

6. All **principal clauses** are coördinate; the dependent clauses are subordinate to the principal, but may be coördinate among themselves.

7. **Dependent** are: a) the *conjunctive* clauses (§ 165); b) the *indirect* questions (§ 176, 263); c) the *relative* clauses (§ 257).

II. 1. The **subject** of a sentence is either a *substantive*, or a word or phrase used as a substantive. It is always in the *nominative case*.

2. The **predicate** is either a *verb* or a *noun* (any declinable word), with a *verb*, as *copula*.

3. In every sentence the predicate must agree as closely as possible with the subject :

- a. The *verb*, as predicate, agrees with the subject always in *person* and *number*.
- b. The *adjective* or *participle*, as predicate, agrees with the subject always in *number*, *case*, and *gender*.
- c. The *substantive*, as predicate, agrees with the subject always in *case*, and, as far as possible, also in *number* and *gender*.

Experientia docet. Varietas delectat. Virtus manet, divitiæ pereunt. Aves volant, pisces natant. Tu doces, nos discimus.

Animus hominis est immortalis, corpus est mortale. Flos est caducus. Divitiæ sunt incertæ.

Usus est optimus magister. Vita rustica parsimoniæ magistra est. Leo est rex animalium. Aquila est regina avium.

Indus est omnium fluminum maximus. Probus invidet nemini. Multi semper volunt, nunquam faciunt. Duo cum faciunt idem, non est idem. Errare humanum est. Nemo nascitur doctus. Nemo fit casu bonus.

Roma a Romulo condita est. Thebae ab Alexandro dirutae sunt. Africa est nutrix leonum. Athenae omnium artium inventrices fuerunt.

1. If the subject is a personal pronoun, it is omitted in Latin, as the termination of the verb sufficiently indicates the person; *Homines sumus, errare possumus*. Only in case of an emphasis, and especially of an antithesis, must the pronoun be expressed; *Ego credo, tu dubitas*.

2. If the predicate noun is a variable substantive (§ 4, 5), it must always agree with the subject; as, *Flos est nuntius veris. Ciconia est nuntia veris*. Only when the subject is neuter, the predicate noun retains the masculine gender. *Tempus est optimus magister*.

In other cases, the agreement is impossible. *Roma erat lumen orbis terrarum. Captivi militum praeda fuerunt. Athenae clarissima urbs Graeciae fuerunt (or fuit)*.

Sometimes the neuter of an adjective is used as a substantive and remains as the predicate: *Turpitude peius est quam dolor (a greater evil). Mors omnium rerum extremum est (§ 237, 4)*.

3. The copula *est* or *sunt* is often omitted, especially in short, pithy sayings, as proverbs, etc. *Quot capita, tot sententiae. Suis cuique mos (sunt, est)*. With a participle and adjective the infinitive *esse* is also omitted sometimes; but *erat, sit, etc.*, are seldom omitted.

4. *Construction according to sense*. Sometimes the predicate agrees with the subject, not as to its form, but as to its sense and meaning:

a) With collective nouns in the singular, the predicate may be in the plural. *Multitudo hominum concurrerunt (also concurrunt). Pars perexigua, duce amisso, Romam inermes delati sunt (or inermis delata est)*.

b) With *millia* and *capita* the predicate is often in the masculine gender. *Sex millia hostium caesi sunt. Capita coniurationis securi percussi sunt*.

c) With *partim* — *partim*, meaning *alii* — *alii* or *alia* — *alia*, the predicate takes the gender of *alii*, etc. *Partim e nobis timidi sunt, partim a re publica aversi. Bonorum partim necessaria sunt, partim non necessaria*.

5. The verb *esse* sometimes takes an adverb as adjunct (not as predicate) as: *Hostes prope sunt. Patria est, ubicunque bene est. Sic est vita hominum. Ita sum. Deus semper fuit et semper erit*.

6. Sometimes the predicate verb agrees with the predicate noun instead of agreeing with the subject, especially when the verb stands nearer to the former: *Non omnis error stultitia dicenda est.*

7. You may say: *nos* instead of *ego, noster* instead of *meus*, but never *vos* instead of *tu*. Historians, especially when speaking of soldiers, often use the singular instead of the plural; as: *miles, Romanus, Volscus* for *militēs, Romani, Volsci*.

§ 190.

1. When there are *two or more subjects* in a sentence, the predicate is put in the plural. As to person, the predicate is in the *first person*, when there is among the subjects a pronoun of the first person; in the *second*, when there is a pronoun of the second and none of the first person.

Romulus et Remus Romam condiderunt. Si tu et mater tua valetis, bene est; ego et pater tuus valemus.

2. When the subjects are *names of persons* of the *same gender*, the predicate-noun takes the gender of the subjects; when the subjects are of *different gender* the predicate noun is in the masculine, and, of course, in the plural.

Veneno absumpti sunt Hannibal et Philopoemen. Iuno et Minerva Troianis inimicæ erant. Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.

3. When the subjects are *inanimate beings* of the *same gender*, the predicate-noun sometimes agrees with the subjects in gender; but generally it stands in the neuter plural. In case of *different gender*, the predicate stands always in the neuter plural.

Grammaticæ quondam et musicæ iunctæ fuerunt. Honores et victoriæ fortuita sunt. Stultitia et temeritas et iniustitia et intemperantia fugienda sunt.

1. When the several subjects form in sense a *unit* or *whole*, the predicate stands in the *singular*. *Religio et fides anteponatur amicitia. Senatus populusque Romanus decrevit.*

2. Often, however, the predicate agrees only with one subject, usually the nearest, and is understood with the others. *Homerus fuit et Hesiodus ante Romam conditam. Brachia modo atque humeri liberi ab aqua erant. Visæ nocturno tempore faces ardorque coeli.*

3. You can say: *Ipse dux cum aliquot principibus capitur*, but also, *capuntur*, § 189, II., 4.

§ 191.

1. The *adjective*, both as attribute and as predicate agrees with its substantive in *gender, number and case* (*in genere, numero et casu*).

Mala societas depravat bonos mores. Bella civilia sunt nefaria. *Hominiis utilitati agri omnes et maria parent*, (also, *et omnia maria*).

2. The same is the case with every *pronoun, participle and numeral* connected with a substantive.

Hi viri *doctissimi sunt*. Acti labores *iucundi sunt*. Coniunctae vires *plus valent*. Duas aures *habemus et unum os*.

3. The *pronoun* (without a substantive) agrees with its *antecedent* in *number and gender*, but its case depends on the construction of the clause to which it belongs.

Dolores, quos *Deus dat, utiles sunt*; huic *credamus, hunc venerationemur*. *Agricola serit arbores, quarum fructus ipse numquam adspiciet*. *Socrates succubuit odio malorum, in quod sine sua culpa inciderat*.

1. When the English *that* or *this* points to a thought (not to a word), the demonstrative pronoun in Latin agrees with the predicate noun. *Ista quidem vis est = this is violence, indeed*. *Isti sunt fructus negligentiae*. *Haec fuga est, non profectio*. *Hic murus aheneus esto: Nil concitare tibi, nulla pallescere culpa!*

2. When the pronoun is connected with a *predicate noun*, it generally agrees with it. *Epicurus (hoc enim vestrum lumen est) istud negat*. *Thabae, quod Boeotiae caput est, in magno motu erant*. *Animal hoc plenum rationis, quem vocamus hominem* (seldom, *quod vocamus hominem*).

3. The *relative pronoun* is often construed according to the sense (§ 189, II., 4). *Caesar equitatum praemittit qui videant*. Concerning *Ego, qui vidi*, I, who have seen, cfr. § 288, 4.

4. As the *adjective, pronoun, etc.*, so also a *substantive* can be added as an attribute to another *substantive in the same case*. *Antiochia urbs*, the city of Antioch; *Tarquinius rex*, King Tarquin.

This attributive substantive, when it takes the place of an abridged sentence, is called *apposition*.

Apposition is twofold :

a. *Relative*, when it stands for a relative clause ; as, *Alexander, rex Macedonum, Babylone mortuus est, for, qui rex Macedonum erat.*

b. *Adverbial*, when it stands for an adverbial clause. *Cato senex litteras Graecas didicit, for cum senex esset, when he was.*

5. The *apposition* agrees with its substantive *always* in case, and, as far as possible, also in *number* and *gender* (§ 189, II, 2).

Marcus Tullius Cicero, clarissimus orator Romanorum, ab Antonio occisus est. Pythagoras, vir sapientissimus, maxime commendabat frugalitatem, genitricem virtutum.

Alexander adolescens Philippo patri successit. Appium Claudium senem omnes verebantur.

Athenae, urbs clarissima Graeciae. Tempus, optimus magister. Memoria, omnium rerum thesaurus.

1. The predicate agrees, also, in this case, always with the real subject of the sentence. *Tullia, deliciae nostrae, munusculum tuum flagitat.* Only with *names of cities* the predicate often agrees with the apposition: *Corioli, oppidum Volscorum, captum est.*

2. The apposition and the pronoun also admit sometimes a construction according to sense (§ 189, II, 4). *Concursus populi, mirantium, quid rei esset* (as if *hominum* stood in place of *populi*). *Veiens bellum ortum est, quibus Sabini arma coniunxerant* (*Veientium quibus*). *Ex eo numero qui sunt* (for *eorum*). *Amicitia est ex eo genere, quae prosunt.* Concerning the apposition with a relative, cfr. § 238, 5.

3. The apposition to a possessive pronoun takes the *genitive* construction according to sense. *Nomen meum absentis tibi honori fuit.* Likewise, emphatically, *meum ipsius, tuum unius* (§ 210, 3).

4. When the apposition expresses a comparison, the English *as* or *like* must be rendered by *ut* or *tanquam*. *Aegyptii canem et fœlem ut deos colunt. Cicero haec cecinit ut vates.*

6. In English the *neuter* of adjectives and pronouns is often used in the *singular*, whilst the *plural* must be used in Latin. *Omnia*, all (all things) ; *haec*, this (these things).

The *plural* must be used when *several single things* are meant, the *singular*, when only *one*.

Omnia praeclara rara (sunt), all that is excellent is rare ; i. e., omnes res praeclarae. Omnia, quae videmus, a Deo creata sunt

Nostra etiam vestra sunt. Multa a multis hominibus narrantur, quae vera non sunt.

But: *Epaminondas pro patria mortuus est*: hoc ei decorum fuit.

7. Say: *Hostes terga verterunt*, not *tergum*, the enemy turned the back. *Cr. et P. Scipiones*, Cneius and Publius Scipio. *Catonēs*, men like Cato.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

THE USE OF CASES.—THE NOMINATIVE.

§ 192.

1. The **subject** of every sentence is in the *nominative* (in answer to the question, *who?* or *what?*).

2. *Verbs* with *two* nominatives.—The predicate noun is in the nominative with the following verbs:

a. The verbs of being, becoming, appearing: *sum*, I am; *fiō*, *evādo*, *exsisto*, I become, exist; *nascor*, I am born; *maneo*, I remain; *videor*, I seem; *appareo*, I appear; *moriōr*, I die.

Nemo fit casu bonus. Nemo nascitur doctus. Puerorum amicitiae stabiles manere non possunt. Sol maior appāret quam luna.

b. The passive verbs of calling, naming: *appellor*, *dicor*, *nominor*, *vocor*.

Apud Lacedaemonios ii, qui amplissimum magistratum gerunt, nominantur senes. Cicero pater patriae appellatus est. Iustitia erga deos religio dicitur, erga parentes pietas.

c. The passive verbs meaning, to be regarded, considered, nominated, chosen, elected; as, *putor*, *habeor*, *iudicor*, *existimor*, I am regarded, considered; *creor*, *eligor*, I am elected; *fiō*, *efficior*, I am made; *declaror*, I am declared; *renuntior*, I am proclaimed.

Multi putantur docti, qui non sunt. Post Romulum Num. Pompilius rex creatus est. Hannibal a militibus dux est factus. Cicero ab universo populo consul declaratus erat. Consul omnibus centuriis Sulla renuntiatus est.

3. This *double nominative* remains with those verbs also, when they stand in the infinitive, as the object of an incomplete verb. Such *incomplete* verbs are: *possum, volo, cupio, debeo, audeo, scio, disco, coepi, pergo, desino*, etc. § 269, 3.

Beatus esse sine virtute nemo potest, Cato esse quam videri bonus malebat. Omnes improbi miseri putari debent. Oracula evanuerunt, postquam homines minus creduli esse coeperunt.

4. Note the *personal* construction of *videri*, to seem:

Instead of the English, it seems that I am, thou art, etc., say in Latin always: *videor esse, videris esse*, etc.

Videor aegrotus esse: It seems that I am sick. *Videbar aegrotus esse*, it seemed that I was, etc., § 273. Likewise, *videbaris aegrotus esse*, it seemed as though you were sick.

5. The same *personal* construction obtains with *dicor* (*perhibeor, putor, trador, feror*), I am said, it is said, reported, etc., that.

Tu verus patriae dicēris esse pater. Aristādes omnium iustissimus traditur fuisse. Xanthippe, uxor Socratis, morosa fuisse fertur. Veteres Germani fortissimi fuisse feruntur (dicuntur, etc.)

6. The English indefinite, *one, they, people* (French, *on*, German, *man*) is rendered in Latin:

a. By the third singular passive: *Rex laudatur*, they (people) praise the king (strictly, the king is praised); *laudāris*, people praise you; *laudati sumus*, they have praised us.

b. By the third person plural active or deponent: *Regem laudant*, they praise the king. In this way are often used: *dicunt, tradunt, ferunt*, they say, relate; *vocant*, people call; *putant*, one believes. *Vulgo admirabantur Pompeium*, people admired Pompey. § 268.

c. By the first person plural active or deponent, if the speaker includes himself: *Facile credimus, quod optamus*, one believes easily, what one wishes (we easily believe what we wish). *Admiramur, quae non intelligimus*.

d. NOTE.—*Cavendum est*, one must beware; *virtutem auro non emes*, you will not buy virtue for gold; *dicas, one would say*; *putares, one could have thought* (§ 248, 3, a).

CHAPTER XXXIV.

THE ACCUSATIVE.

§ 193.

The Object-Accusative. All *transitive* verbs have the object of their action in the *accusative* (in answer to the question, *whom?* immediate object).

Most verbs that are active transitive in English are also transitive in Latin.

Deus mundum creavit. Artificem commendat opus. Boni cives bonum regem amant. Scipio vicit Hannibalem. Virtus nullam mercedem postulat.

These sentences may, without change of meaning, be expressed in the passive voice: *Mundus a Deo creatus est. Bonus rex amatur a bonis civibus* (§ 220, 8).

§ 194.

Though, on the whole, the verbs that are transitive in English are so, also, in Latin, there are, nevertheless, many *transitive* verbs in Latin whose corresponding verbs in English are either used both ways, as *transitive and intransitive*, or *only intransitive*, or as a *verb with a preposition*.

Such are:

deficio, tr., I leave, forsake; int., I am wanting in.

effugio, tr., I escape; int., I flee from.

sequor, aetor, tr., I follow; int., I come or go after.

imitor, tr., I imitate, copy; int., I try to be like.

adulator, tr., I flatter; int., I fawn upon one.

aequo, I am equal to.

aemulor, tr., I emulate; I vie with.

Fortes fortuna adiuvat. Bonos numquam honestus sermo deficiet. Mortem effugere nemo potest. Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur. Beneficio provocati nonne imitari agros fertiles debemus, qui plus efferunt, quam acceperunt? Tum senatores plebem adulari coeperunt. Quis cursu equum aequare poterit? Quod me Agamemnonem aemulari putas, falleris.

1. The compounds of these verbs govern the accusative likewise as, *consequor*, I reach, require, come up with; *prosequor*, I accompany, I go with; only, *obsequor*, I obey, governs the dative. Also *adulor* and *aemulor* govern sometimes the dative, but *blandior* always. *Aequare*, meaning, to make equal to, stands with the accusative and the dative; as, *urbem solo aequare*, to make the city level with the ground (to raze it). *Aequiparare* (seldom used), to reach, to be equal to, takes always the accusative.

2. Say: *deficere animo*, to lose courage; *deficere a re publica*, to fall away from the state; *deficere ad hostem*, to go over to the enemy. *Effugere ex manibus* = to flee from one's hands; *effugere manus*, to avoid one's grasp; *fugere aliquem*, to shun some one; *fugere ab aliqua re*, to flee from something.

3. Some intransitive verbs take an object-accusative of a word of the same stem, when joined to an adjective: *miseram vitam vivere*; *eodem cursu currere* (*servitute servire*, emphatic).

4. Some verbs, especially such as express a disagreeable sensation or affection, sometimes govern the accusative in Latin, although they are intransitive: *caesum amici dolere*, to feel sorry over a friend's misfortune; *horrere mortem*, to be afraid of death, to dread it. In a similar way: *Sitire sanguinem*, to thirst after blood; *crocum olere*, to smell of saffron; figuratively, *malitiam olere*, to smell of malice; *ridere aliquem*, to laugh at one. With *desperare*, to despair of, you may say, *desperare aliquid, de aliqua re*, and *alicui rei*, to despair of something.

5. Also with some other intransitive expressions the accusative of a pronoun in the neuter gender is used, whilst a substantive would have to stand in another case: *Istud magnopere laetor*, for *ista re*, of that I am very glad. *Hoc tibi auctor sum*, for *huius consilii*, § 198, 3, I give you this counsel.

§ 195.

Many intransitive verbs of motion, when compounded with prepositions, become transitive, and consequently govern the accusative. This is always the case with the prepositions, *circum*, *per*, *praeter* and *trans*: *circumfluo*, I flow around; *percurro*, I run through; *praetereo*, I pass over; *transeo*, I cross over.

Spartam Eurōtas amnis circumfluit. Cupiditates omnium mentes pervagantur. Sententiae saepe acutae non acutorum hominum sensus praetervolant. Peccare est tanquam transire lineas.

NOTE 1.—Also, *supergrēdi* and *supervadere* take the accusative. *Adire aliquem*, to address one (with a petition or question); *aggrēdi aliquem*, to

attack one; *convenire aliquem*, to meet one; *inire societatem*, to form an alliance; *inire magistratum*, to enter upon an office; *inire consilium*, to form a plan; *adire hereditatem*, to take possession of an inheritance; *obire negotium*, to manage a business; *obire diem* or *diem supremum*, to die; *transire (excedere) modum*, to exceed the bounds (but *excedere ex urbe* or *urbe*, to leave the city); *subire periculum*, to undergo a danger.

NOTE 2.—Say *anteire, antecedere, praecedere* alicui and aliquem, *excellere ceteris* (dative) and *inter ceteros*. Also *praestare* alicui, seldom, *aliquem*.

NOTE 3.—Besides the verbs of motion, the following are to be remembered as transitive in composition: *alloqui*, to address one (speak to one); *allatrare*, to bark at one; *obsidere*, to besiege (lie around); *oppugnare*, to fight, resist one; *expugnare*, to take (by storm).

§ 196.

1. The *impersonal verbs*, expressing a *disagreeable feeling* (§ 154, 2), *pūget, pūdet, poenitet, taedet, and miseret*, take the *person* (that feels) in the accusative; the *object* (that causes the feeling), in the genitive, or, if a *verb*, in the infinitive.

Piget me stultitiæ meae, I am disgusted with, grieved at my folly. *Pudeat te tuæ negligentiae*. Be ashamed of thy negligence. *Nunquam primi consilii deum poenituit. Taedet me vitae. Eorum nos magis miseret, qui misericordiam nostram non requirunt, quam qui illam efflagitant. Non me poenitet vixisse.*

NOTE.—Instead of the genitive, the accusative is used with the neuter of a pronoun. *Sapiens nihil facit, quod eum poenitere possit* (instead of *cuius rei*. § 194, 5).

2. *Decet*, it becomes, is becoming, and *dedecet*, it is unbecoming, take the accusative of the person (§ 154, note 3).

Candida pax homines, trux decet ira feras. Oratorem dedecet irasci. Parvum parva decent.

3. *Fallit, fugit, praeterit me*, it escapes me, my memory; *iuvat, delectat me*, it gives me pleasure, delight.

§ 197.

DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE. Many verbs govern a double accusative, one of the object, the other of the predicate, viz.:

1. Those which signify to name, call, choose, proclaim.
2. Those signifying to take, give, acknowledge as, show, prove.

3. Those signifying to consider, reckon, declare.

The passive of these verbs takes the double nominative (§ 192).

1. Hence we say: *vocare* (*appellare, dicere, nominare*) *aliquem patrem*, to call one father; *facere* (*efficere, reddere*) *aliquem beatum*, or *regem*, to make one happy, or king; *creare* (*eligere*) *aliquem ducem*, to choose one for leader; *renuntiare aliquem consulem*, to proclaim one consul.

2. *Habere* (*sumere, dare, cognoscere*) *aliquem amicum*, to have one for a friend; *praestare* (*praebere, ostendere*) *se fortem*, to show one's self brave.

3. *Putare* (*ducere, existimare, iudicare*) *aliquem divitem*, to reckon one rich; *declarare aliquem hostem*, to declare one an enemy.

Romulus urbem ex nomine suo Romam vocavit. Sola religio vitam beatam facit (efficit, reddit). Post Romulum populus Numam Pompilium regem creavit. Ciceronem universus populus consulem declaravit. Natura homini praescripsit, ut nihil pulchrius, quam hominem putaret. Praesta te eum, qui mihi a teneris, ut Graeci dicunt, unguiculis es cognitus.

Here belongs the phrase, *facere aliquem certiozem*, to inform one, with the genitive of the thing, or with *de*; as *Patrem consilii mei certiozem feci* or *de consilio meo*. In the passive voice, *reddi* means only, to be given back (not, to be made) *fieri* or *effici*, to be made; *haberi*, only, to be held, considered; *habere aliquem pro hoste*; also, *pro nihilo putare* (seldom *nihil putare*).

§ 198.

DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE OF THE OBJECT:

1. *Doceo* (*edoceo*), I teach; *celo*, I conceal from, take the person and the thing in the accusative.

Philosophia, nos multas res docuit. Ciceronem Minerva omnes artes edocuit. Non te celavi hunc sermonem.

NOTE.—As we say, *doceo te Latinam linguam*, so also, *doceo te Latine loqui*, I teach you to speak Latin (the infinitive, as object). *Doctus litteris Graecis* (seldom *litteras Graecas*), learned in Greek literature. *Docere aliquem de aliqua re*, to acquaint one with something. Say, also: *celare aliquem de aliqua re*, to keep one in ignorance of something. In the passive only *celor de hac re*, not, *hanc rem*.

2. *Posco* (*reposco*) and *flagito*, I demand, ask urgently, take the thing demanded in the accusative, and the person of whom it is demanded, either in the accusative or in the ablative, with *a*, or *ab*; thus, *poscere* or *flagitare aliquem aliquid* or *aliquid ab aliquo*, to demand something of some one.

Nulla salus bello, pacem te poscimus omnes. Caesar Aeduos frumentum flagitabat. Nihil a te posco. Quid artes a te flagitent, tu videbis.

NOTE 1.—*Postulare*, to beg, pray; *petere*, to petition; *quaerere*, to ask, seek, never take the accusative of person. Hence, *postulare aliquid* ab aliquo; *petere aliquid* ab aliquo; *quaerere ex* (ab) aliquo, to ask one. *Amicus* ab amico *nihil* postulabit, *nisi quod honestum est. Athenienses* a Lacedaemoniis *auxilium* petierunt. *Quaesivi* ex patre, *quid facerem*.

Oro and *rogo*, I pray, beseech, generally take only one accusative, either that of the person or that of the thing; however, sometimes both accusatives are used.

Iugurtha Metellum *per legatos* pacem oravit. *Deos vitam* roga *et salutem*.

NOTE 2.—If the person is in the accusative, the thing is generally expressed by a clause with *ut* or *ne* (§ 250, 275). Sometimes the person is not expressed, but understood: *Legatos ad Caesarem miserunt, qui rogarent auxilium*, who were to ask for help.

3. Many transitive verbs, especially those of *asking*, *admonishing*, take a double accusative, one of the person, the other, of the thing, when the latter is a pronoun in the neuter; as, *hoc te interrogo* or *rogo*, this I inquire of you; *illud te oro* or *rogo*, that I ask of you. *Istud te hortor, cogo*, I exhort, force, you to this; *id unum te moneo* or *admoneo*, of this one thing I remind you.

Hoc te primum rogo ne animum demittas. Pusionem quendam Socrates apud Platonem interrogat *quaedam geometrica. Saepe non audimus ea, quae ab natura monemur.*

NOTE 1.—Otherwise we say: *interrogare aliquem de aliqua re*, to ask some one about something. In official language, *interrogare sententias*, means, to solicit (canvass) votes; *rogatus* or *interrogatus sententiam*, being asked one's vote.

NOTE 2.—Say: *Caesar exercitum Ligerim traducit* and *trans Ligerim*; the same with *traicio*, *transmitto*, *transporto*.

§ 199.

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT. The accusative is used to express the measure of extent, both of time and space, in answer to the question, *how long? how old? how far? how broad? how deep? how high?*

Duodequadraginta annos tyrannus Syracusanorum fuit *Die*

nysius, quum quinque et viginti annos natus (old) domitratum occupavisset. A recta conscientia transversum unguem non oportet discedere (not a finger's breadth). Milites aggerem, latum pedes trecentos, altum pedes octoginta extruxerunt. Perpetuas fossae, quinos pedes altae (deep) ducebantur.

1. Instead of *quinque annos*, for five years, you may also say, *per quinque annos*, during five years. *Quinque horis*, during five hours.

2. *Puer novem annorum*, a boy of nine years; *puer novem annos natus*, a boy nine years old; *annum agens nonum*, in his ninth year; *plus novem annos natus*, more than nine years old. § 226, 1.

3. *A millibus passuum duobus*, at a distance of two miles. *Aequo spatio* or *aequum spatium abesse*.

§ 200.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS :

1. When asking, *where to? whither?* the names of towns are always put in the *accusative* without preposition. *Romam*, to Rome; *Karthaginem*, to Carthage. *Accusative of motion towards*.

With names of other places, use the *accusative* with *in*, though poets often use the *accusative* alone.

2. When asking, *from where? whence?* all names of towns are put in the *ablative* without preposition. Hence, *Romā*, from Rome; *Babylone*, from Babylon.

With names of other places, generally *ex*, with *abl.* § 232.

3. In answer to the question, *where?* the names of towns in the singular of the first and second declensions are put in the *genitive*; whereas those of the plural, and all those of the third declension are put in the *ablative* without preposition; therefore: *Romae*, at Rome; *Corinthi*, at Corinth; *Athenis*, at Athens (also, from Athens); *Delphis*, at Delphi (also, from Delphi); *Babylone*, at Babylon (also, from Babylon).

With other names, generally *in*, with *abl.* § 233.

The names of small islands are construed like the names of towns; as, *Delum*, to Delos; *Deli*, in or on Delos; *Delo*, from Delos.

Demaratus, Tarquinii regis pater, Tarquinius Corintho fugit. Ut Romae consules, sic Karthagine quotannis bini reges creabantur. Talis Romae Fabricius, qualis Athenis Aristides fuit.

Aeschines orator Athenis cessit et Rhodum se contulit. Romā legati Athenas missi sunt. Alexander Magnus Babylone mortuus est. Ephesi templum Dianae erat. Delphis erat oraculum Apollinis. Conon plurimum Cyprī vixit.

Ad Brundisium, near Brundisium (in its neighborhood); e. g., *pugnatum est* or *venit*, into its neighborhood. *Caesar a Gergovia discessit*, from the neighborhood of Gergovia. *Omnis ora a Saloniis ad Orioum* (direction and extent). *Ad urbem esse*, to be in the neighborhood of Rome. *Cyprī*, at Cyprus; in *Cypro* (*insula*), on the island of Cyprus.

§ 201.

1. The words *domus* and *rus* follow the construction of names of towns. Thus, without prepositions:

<i>domum</i> , home (homeward).	<i>rus</i> , into the country.
<i>domo</i> , from home.	<i>rure</i> , from the country.
<i>domi</i> , at home.	<i>ruri</i> , in the country.

Domus retains this construction when connected with a *possessive pronoun* or a *genitive* (possessive): *domi meae*, in my home; *tuas, suas*, etc. *Domi Caesaris*, in, at Caesar's house (home), seldom *in domo Caesaris*; *domi eius*, in his house. But with other adjectives, *in* or *ex* must be used; in *illa domo*, in *domum* celebrem, *ex amplissima domo*.

In case there are several persons, home is then *domos*: *domibus*, from home; *domos iverunt*, they went home; *domibus venerunt*, they came from home.

2. A similar construction obtains with *humi*, on the ground; with *belli* and *militiae*, in connection with *domi*; as, *domi bellicae*, at home and in the war; *domi militiaeque*, at home and in the field.

Cicero senex multum ruri vivebat. Domum redibo; libentissime sum domi meae. Nos humi strati haec suspicere non possumus. Caesaris virtus domi militiaeque cognita est.

3. The names of countries and large islands are used with prepositions: *In Italiam*, to Italy; *in Sicilia*, in Sicily; *ex Britannia*, from Britain. The preposition is seldom omitted.

NOTE 1.—When *urbs* or *oppidum*, without an adjective, is placed as attribute before the name of a town, it always takes the preposition *in* or *ex*; in *oppidum Gades*, into the city of Gades; in *urbem Romam*, into the city of Rome; in *oppido Cittio*; *ex urbe Alexandria*. In connection with *totus*, say, *totā Romā*, in all Rome; also, *totā domo*. § 238, 1.

NOTE 2.—*Urbs* or *oppidum*, joined to an adjective and used in apposition *after* the name of a city, generally takes the preposition *in* or *ex*. But, without the preposition, also, in answer to the question, *Where?* it is always put in the ablative, even though the name of the city be in the genitive. *Demaratus se contulit Tarquinius, in urbem Etruriae florentissimam. Tusculo, ex clarissimo municipio. Archias natus est Antiochiae, celebri quondam urbe, or, in celebri urbe* (never *urbis*).

§ 202.

ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS. The *person* or *thing* that excites the feeling is put in the accusative (either with or without *heu* or *o*).

Me miserum! Heu me miserum! O wretched me! O hominem infortunatum! O unfortunate man! O fallacem hominum spem fragilemque fortunam!

1. When a person is addressed (the second person), the *vocative* is used. The interjections, *vae* and *hei*, are followed by the *dative*; as, *Vae victis!* Woe to the vanquished! *Hei mihi misero!* With *ecce* and *en*, lo! behold! the *nominative* is used, and also the *accusative*; *En vobis iuvenis* or *iuvenem!* Behold the youth!

2. The accusative of the neuter of the pronoun is sometimes used in a loose way, instead of another case; thus, *homo id aetatis*, for, *ea aetate*, a man of this age. *Hoc unum laetor*, over that one thing I rejoice, for, *haec una re*. *Quid tibi auctor sim*, what shall (may) I advise you. But only: *pacis tibi auctor sum*. Cfr. § 194, 5; 198, 8.

3. Concerning the accusative with prepositions, cfr. §§ 161 and 163; on the Greek accusative, cfr. § 226, 8.

CHAPTER XXXV.

THE DATIVE.

§ 203.

1. The DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE (*dativus commodi*). This dative is used in answer to the question, *whom? to whom? for whom?* with many adjectives and verbs.

Adjectives signifying necessary, useful, agreeable; fit, suitable, like, easy, convenient; near, friendly, faithful, known; fair, equal, etc.; as, *necessarius* (*necesso, opus*), *utilis, gratus, iucundus, aptus, commodus, idoneus, fidus, aequus, aequalis, amicus, similis, propinquus, finitimus, facilis, notus, par, molestus, acerbus, consentaneus*, etc., besides their contraries.

Verbs; as, *prosum, placeo, obtempero, oboedio, fido, impero, indulgeo, ignosco, ministro, faveo*, I favor, etc. *Dicto audiens sum imperatori*, I obey the general's command (two datives).

Some adverbs also take the dative; as, *convenienter naturae vivere*.

Apes parent reginae suae. Is qui imperat aliis, serviat ipse nulli cupiditati. Patriae deesse aliis turpe, Camillo etiam nefas est. Mors similis est somno. Quod tibi utile est, mihi iucundum erit. Vir bonus est, qui prodest, quibus potest, nocet nemini.

2. The dative is used in answer to the question, *for whom?* *for whose benefit or disadvantage?*

Non scholae sed vitae discimus. Non nobis solis nati sumus, sed etiam patriae et civibus nostris. Charondas et Zaleucus civitatibus suis leges scripserunt.

NOTE 1.—The adjectives *similis*, similar; *proprius*, proper, peculiar; *affinis*, akin; *vicinus*, near, are also followed by the genitive: he is my peer (equal), always in the gen., *mei similis est. Utilis, aptus, idoneus*, generally take *ad* and *acc.*, in answer to the question, *to, for what?* *ad nullam rem utilis, aptus*, etc. *Propior* and *proximus* may take the dative, the accusative, and the ablative with *a*: *propior urbi, urbem* and *ab urbe*.

NOTE 2.—*The ETHICAL DATIVE. Hic tu mihi pacis commoda commemoras*, and still you talk to me of the advantages of peace! It is often impossible to render this dative in English.

NOTE 3.—We can only say, *communicare aliquid cum aliquo* (not *alicui*), to communicate something to some one (literally, to share with some one). *Dux victoriae gloriam cum legionibus* communicavit. *Consilia nostra* communicamus *cum amicis. Iubere* and *vetare* do not take the dative, but the accusative and infinitive (§ 194).

NOTE 4.—When *for* expresses protection or substitution it is always rendered by *pro*, § 164, 10.

§ 204.

The following verbs govern the dative:

<i>mēdeor</i> , I heal.	<i>medeor</i> , I heal.	<i>persuādeo</i> , I persuade, convince.	<i>studeo</i> , I strive after, endeavor.
<i>nūbo</i> , I marry (<i>viro</i> , a husband).	<i>nubo</i> , I marry (<i>viro</i> , a husband).	<i>vāco</i> , I am at leisure (<i>alicui rei</i> , for something, I devote myself to it; but <i>vacare aliqua re</i> , to be free from something).	<i>invidēo</i> , I envy.
<i>vāco</i> , I am at leisure (<i>alicui rei</i> , for something, I devote myself to it; but <i>vacare aliqua re</i> , to be free from something).	<i>maledīco</i> , I chide, upbraid.	<i>parco</i> , I spare.	<i>obtrecto</i> , I belittle.
<i>maledīco</i> , I chide, upbraid.	<i>supplicō</i> , I entreat.	<i>obtrecto</i> , I belittle.	<i>invidēo</i> , I envy.

Medici medentur morbis, philosophia medetur animis. Tibi persuade, virtutem esse summum bonum. Venus nupsit Vulcano. Philosophiæ semper vaco. Omnes homines naturā libertati student. Frustra maledices fortunæ. Tempori parce. Caesari pro te libentissime supplicabo. Obtrectare alteri nihil utilitatis habet. Vir probus invidet nemini.

1. In *changing* the verb into the *passive* voice, the *dative* must always remain; the verb is put in the third person singular; as: *Mihi persuadetur*, I am being persuaded, convinced; *mihi persuasum est*, I am convinced. The person that acts may be added in the *ablative* with *a*; *tuæ laudi invidetur a multis*, your praise is envied by many (you are envied by many for the praise you get). *Invidere alicui laudem*, to envy one (on account of) his praise; also, *invidere laudi alicuius*; *invidere aliqua re*, is found in later writers.

2. Some verbs have a *different meaning* according as they govern the dative (dat. of advantage) or the accusative.

Metuo or *timeo te*, I fear you, am afraid of you; *tibi*, for you, am anxious about you.

Caveo te or *a te*, I am on my guard against you; *tibi*, I take care of you.

Consulo te, I consult you; *tibi*, I consult your interests. Also, I advise you, i. e., *suadeo tibi*.

Convenio te, I visit; *convenit mihi tecum de . . .*, or, *res mihi convenit tecum*, I agree with you about; *convenire alicui ad*, in rem, to suit.

Cupio te, I want you; *cupio tibi*, I wish you well.

Prospicio or *provideo periculum*, I foresee the danger; *tibi*, I provide for you; *provideo* or *prospicio frumentum*, I furnish (supply with) grain.

Tempero and *moderor aliquid*, I arrange something; *tempero mihi (iræ meæ)*, I check, control myself (my anger); *tempero a lacrimis*, I abstain from tears.

§ 205.

THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS. Verbs compounded with the prepositions, *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub, super*, often govern the dative instead of repeating the preposition.

Natura sensibus adiunxit rationem. Virtutes animi bonis corporis anteponuntur. Hannibal Romanis magnum terrorem iniecit. Consiliis interdum obstat fortuna. Hannibal Alexandro Magno non postponendus est. Animus praepositus est corpori. Succumbere doloribus miserum est.

Parva magnis saepe rectissime conferuntur. Nasus quasi murus oculis interiectus est. Sunt quaedam sidera, quae infixæ

coelo non moventur et suis sedibus inhaerent. *Neque deesse neque superesse rei publicae volo* (I will not survive the republic).

NOTE 1.—In English, of course, the objective case is often governed directly by the verb, often by the preposition corresponding to the Latin; as, *arridet mihi*, he smiles upon me; *senectus obrèpit adolescentiae*, old age creeps upon, overtakes youth.

NOTE 2.—Often the preposition is repeated, especially *ad*, *con*, and *in*. *Macedones ad imperium Graeciae adiunxerunt Asiam. Romani non conferendi sunt cum Graecis. In philosophia magna inest vis virtutis (inesso nearly always with in). Interesse alicui rei*, means, to be present at something; but, *interest inter*, there is a difference between. *Adsum in senatu*, I am present; *adsum amicis*, I assist my friends. A kindred preposition is sometimes substituted; as, *incumbere ad aliquid*, and, in *aliquid*, to apply one's self to something. *Obversari ante oculos, oblicere contra impetum hostium* (*ob*, however, is never repeated).

§ 206.

The verbs, *circumdo*, *dono*, *induo*, *adspergo*, *macto*, *exuo*, and a few others, admit a double construction; either:

1. The *dative* of the person (or the thing treated as a person) and the *accusative* of the thing; or,
2. The *accusative* of the person and the *ablative* of the thing (in answer to the question, *With what?*); *donare alicui pecuniam*, to give money to some one; *donare aliquem pecuniã*, to present one with money.

<i>Circumdo</i> ,	1. I put around;	2. I surround, enclose with.
<i>dono</i> ,	1. I give;	2. I present with.
<i>induo</i> ,	1. I put on;	2. I clothe.
<i>adspergo</i> ,	1. I sprinkle at;	2. I besprinkle.
<i>macto</i> ,	1. I slay, immolate;	2. I honor with sacrifice.
<i>exuo</i> ,	1. I take off;	2. I divest, rob.

Semiramis Babylonem condidit murumque urbi circumdedit. Deus animum corpore circumdedit. Ciceroni populus Romanus immortalitatem donavit. Atticus Athenienses omnia frumento donavit. Hostium legiones Telluri ac diis manibus inactabo. Barbari deos puerorum extis mactare solebant. Sapientia vanitatem exuit mentibus. Caesar hostes armis exuit.

Sometimes also, *intercludere alicui commeatum*, and *aliquem commeatu*, and a *commeatu*, to cut off one's supplies; *impertire alicui aliquid* and *aliquem aliqua re*, to confer something upon somebody.

§ 207.

DATIVE OF POSSESSOR. *Esse*, with *dative* of the person, is often equivalent to the English, I have. *Mihi sunt libri*, i. e., *habeo libros*.

Homini cum deo similitudo est. Iam Troicis temporibus erat honos eloquentiae. Nulla est voluptati cum honestate coniunctio.

1. To express a *mutual relation*, we say: *est mihi cum aliquo amicitia* (not *habeo amicitiam*). *Sunt mihi inimicitiae cum malis. Tecum mihi res est. Omnia mihi cum amicis communia sunt.*

2. *Patri est*, the father *has*; *patris est*, it *belongs* to the father. Of *mental qualities*, we say: *esse* or *inesse in aliquo*. In *patre est summa comitas* (also *pater est summa comitate*, § 225).

3. Say: *Mihi est nomen Ferdinandus* and *Ferdinando*, my name is *Ferdinand*; seldom *Ferdinandi*. With *nomen dare* use the accusative: *Parentes ei nomen dederunt Fridericum* (also *Friderico*). In the passive: *Inditum ei est nomen Fridericus* (*Friderico*).

§ 208.

A *double dative*, one of end or purpose and a *dative of advantage*, is used with the following verbs:

1. *Esse* and *fieri*, to be, serve, bring, afford.
2. *Tribuere, vertere, dare, ducere, habere*, to reckon, to give, to hold.
3. *Venire, dare, mittere, relinquere*, etc., in their usual meaning, to express the *end or purpose* for which.

Hoc mihi commodo est, this *is to my advantage*; *alicui contemptui esse*, to be an object of derision, contempt, to some one. *Alicui aliquid decori tribuere, vertere, dare, ducere, habere*, to hold something a disgrace to some one. *Alicui auxilio venire (proferri)*, to come (go) to one's aid; *alicui aliquid dono dare (mittere)*, to give (send) one something as a present.

Crudelitas omnibus hominibus odio est, probitas et clementia amori. Tua salus mihi curae est. Nolito tibi laudi ducere quod aliis vitio vertisti. Hortensius nunquam bello civili interfuit; hoc illi tribuebatur ignaviae. Virtus sola nemini dono datur. Mille Plataeenses Atheniensibus auxilio venerunt (missi sunt).

1. *Usui esse*, to be of use; *admirationi esse*, to be admired; *habere aliquem ludibrio*, to hold one in derision; *habere aliquid religioni*, to scruple about something, to hold it sacred; *diem dicere colloquio*, to appoint a day for an interview; *receptui canere*, to sound a retreat. Here the dative of the thing stands alone.

2. The purpose or design is seldom expressed by a predicate-accusative; *Iovi coronam donum mittunt*. But with personal nouns, the purpose, for which, must be expressed by the accusative after the verbs, *dare, mittere, habere*, etc. *Amicum meum tibi comitem dabo*, I will give you my friend for companion (§ 197).

§ 209.

Sometimes the dative is used in the passive, instead of *ab* with the ablative; as, *Honesti bonis viris, non occulta quaeruntur*, honest, not secret things, are sought by good men. This dative must be used with the participle future passive. *Mihi faciendum est*, it has to be done *by me*, I must do (not *a me*); but, *a me tibi respondendum est*, I must answer you.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

THE GENITIVE.

§ 210.

A SUBSTANTIVE, limiting another word in answer to the question, *Whose? Of whom? Of which? Of what?* is put in the genitive case. It is of a double kind:

1. The SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE (*genitivus subiectivus*), in answer to the question, *Whose?* to denote the person who, as the subject, has or does something; *amor patris*, the father's love (*pater amat*); *studium adolescentis*, the study of the youth (*adolescens studet*).

The subjective genitive most commonly denotes the possessor (author) (*genitivus possessivus*); as, *Domus Caesaris*; *pericula belli*. The writings of Cicero, *scripta Ciceronis*; a part of Epirus, *pars Epiri*. Likewise, a letter from you, *epistola tua* (§ 236, 4).

2. The OBJECTIVE GENITIVE (*genitivus obiectivus*), in answer to the question, *What kind of?* to denote the thing which is the object of an action; as, *amor patriae*, the love of one's country, or for one's country (*patriam amat civis*); *studium veritatis*, love of truth, zeal for the truth (*veritati studet vir bonus*).

Timor hostium, fear of enemies; *cupiditas* gloriae, desire for glory; *odium* hominum, hatred of men; *fiducia* virium, confidence in strength.

Molesta est cura rerum alienarum. Iucunda est memoria praeteritorum malorum. Memoriam vestri semper retinebo. Habenda est ratio non sua solum (instead of *sui*, cfr. 3), *sed etiam aliorum.*

1. The objective genitive is in English generally expressed by prepositions; as, of, for, after; these may be retained in Latin, when the object is a person or a thing considered as a person; as, *Tuus erga* or in *patriam amor*, thy love of country; *odium adversus homines* (but not *amor in litteras*).

2. We say: *Nomen regis*, the king's name, and also, the name or title of king. Likewise, *nomen carenti*, the word "to want;" *opus Academicorum*; the work "*Academica*"; *flos rosae*, the flower rose (a rose); *familia* Scipionum, the Scipio family.

3. The possessive pronouns stand generally for the subjective genitive; as, *amor meus erga te* (*ego amo*): but *amor mei* is objective, love for me; *misericordia vestri*, compassion for you. *Iniuria tua*, however, may be both subjective, the wrong you do; and objective, the wrong done to you. Emphatically: *tua ipsius soror*, your own sister; *vestra omnium salus*, the welfare of all of you, *mea unius (solius) opera*. Construction according to sense, § 191, 5, 8.

4. We say only, *Leges Spartiatarum duriores sunt quam Atheniensium*, or *quam leges Atheniensium*, than those of the Athenians; never *quam eae Atheniensium*. In the way of contraction, we find: *Quae tam excellens virtus in ullis fuit, ut sit cum maioribus nostris comparanda*, for *cum virtute maiorum nostrorum*, with that of our ancestors.

5. *Habitabat rex ad Iovis Statoris*, supply *templum*. *Ptolemaeus Lagi*, i. e., *Alius*. *Terentia Ciceronis*, i. e., *uxor*.

§ 211.

DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE (*genitivus qualitatis*). The genitive of a substantive with an adjective, is used to mark a *quality* or *property*.

This genitive may be connected with a substantive immediately as *attribute*, or with *esse* as *predicate*.

Tarquinius fratrem habuit Aruntem, mitis ingenii iuvenem. Athenienses belli duos duces deligunt, Periclem, spectatae virtutis virum et Sophoclem, scriptorem tragoediarum. Titus tantae fuit liberalitatis, ut nihil cuiquam negaret.

A man of talent, *homo magni ingenii* (also, *vir summo ingenio*, abl. qual., § 225), never without an adjective; likewise, *eiusmodi res*, such things; *puer novem annorum*; *fossa quindecim pedum*. But oftener, *tridui via*, i. e., *via trium dierum*.

§ 212.

The genitive is used to express the whole to which either something belongs as a part, or of which it is composed; hence in two ways:

1. The PARTITIVE GENITIVE (*genitivus partitivus*), which is used with numerals, pronouns, comparatives, and superlatives.

Nemo discipulorum, none of the scholars; *multi discipulorum*, many of the scholars; *quis vestrum?* which of you, among you; *Maior fratrum*, the older of the (two) brothers; *optimus omnium*, the best of all.

Quis, aliquis, quidam, quisquam, uter, alter, neuter, uterque, alteruter; aliquot, solus, nullus, nonnulli, multi, pauci, nemo, hic, ille, etc.

Multae istarum arborum mea manu satae sunt. Hem! nos homunculi indignamur, si quis nostrum interit. Excellentissimi Persarum reges Cyrus et Darius fuerunt, quorum prior apud Massagetas in proelio cecidit. Socrates omnium sapientissimus oraculo Apollinis iudicatus est.

1. We must distinguish between *hic discipulus*, and *hic discipulorum*; *multi milites* and *multi militum*. *Uterque* takes only a substantive in the same case as itself; *uterque frater, utriusque consuli*; but a pronoun always in the genitive; *eorum uterque, quorum utriusque, utrumque nostrum*.

2. We say: *Indus est omnium fluminum maximus* (not, *maximum*), when the subject stands first; but, *Velocissimum omnium animalium est delphinus*, when the superlative with the partitive genitive stands first.

3. Instead of the genitive, *ex*, with the ablative, is often used; sometimes also, *inter*, with the accusative, but never *a* or *ab*. But, *Unus ex tribus; unus de multis*, is always used, unless *alter* follow; often, however, *quorum unus, alter*, etc.; for *sui* always *ex se*; *multos ex se miserunt*.

4. With numerals, we often use in English the genitive of a pronoun, where not a part, but all, are meant; in this case, the genitive cannot be used in Latin. *Causa cadunt, qui aliter existimant*; *quos video esse multos, sed imperitos*, of whom, I see, there are many (not *quorum*). *Vos praesertim cum tam pauci sitis*, as there are so few of you (not *vestrum*); *voluti esse quam coniunctissimos. Trecenti iuravimus*, three hundred of us have sworn (we are three hundred that have sworn). Take notice of the person used.

5. Sometimes the partitive genitive is governed by *adverbs*; *Omnium virtutum maxime laudamus iustitiam.*

2. GENITIVE OF QUANTITY (*genitivus quantitalis* or *generis*): it is used with substantives or with the neuter of adjectives and pronouns taken substantively, as also with adverbs of quantity.

Multitudo hominum, a mass of people; *modius tritici*, a bushel of wheat; *quinque pondo auri*, five pounds of gold. *Multum pecuniae*, much money; *satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum*, enough of eloquence, little wisdom; *aliquid temporis*, some time; *nihil prudentiae*, no prudence.

Acervus, copia, cohors, grex, mo multitudo, numerus, pars, pondus, talentum, turma, vis.—*Multum, plus, plurimum, paulum, minus, minimum, quantum, nimium*; *hoc, illud, istud, id, idem, quod, quid, aliquid, quidquid, nihil, satis, parum, nimis, abunde, etc.*

The neuters used substantively are joined only in the *nominative* and *accusative* to a *genitive*; as, *multum auri*, but, *cum multo auro* (never *auri*).

Multi modii salis simul edendi sunt, ut amicitiae munus expletum sit. Mundus animorum consentientium multitudine completus est. Potest quidquam absurdius esse, quam quo minus viae restat, tanto plus viatici quaerere? Iustitia nihil expetit praemii, nihil pretii. Nemo nostrum ignorat, quid consilii cepertis.

1. Nearly equivalent are *quid consilii* and *quod consilium*; *nihil praemii* and *nullum praemium*. *Multum pecuniae* and *magna pecunia*.

2. The *genitive singular neuter* of adjectives of the *second declension* is used in the same way; thus, *tantum mali*, so much evil; *aliquid novi*, something new; *nihil pulchri*, nothing fine. But with adjectives of the *third declension* the *nominative* remains; *aliquid dulce*, something sweet; *nihil memorabile*, nothing remarkable; *nihil melius*, nothing better; *nihil eminens*, nothing eminent. But when two adjectives are joined, thus, *aliquid novi ac memorabilis*, and *aliquid memorabile ac novum*.

3. Similar genitives with *adverbs of place*: *ubi terrarum*, where in the world? *eo* or *huc arrogantiae*, to that height of impudence.

§ 213.

The OBJECTIVE GENITIVE (*genitivus obiectivus*) with adjectives. Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, participation, memory, certainty, fear, guilt, plenty, and the contrary, govern the *genitive*.

Avidus pecuniae, desirous of money (money-seeking); *rei militaris peritus*, skilled in warfare; *beneficii memor*, mindful of a benefit; *rationis*

particeps, possessed of (partaking of) reason; *mentis compos*, having the use of reason; *gaudii plenus*, full of joy. Likewise, *cupidus*, longing for; *studiosus*, eager; *consciens*, conscious; *ignarus*, ignorant; *imperitus*, inexperienced; *rudis*, unskilled; *immemor*, unmindful; *fecundus*, *ferax*, *fertilis*, fertile; *sterilis*, barren; *expers*, devoid; *impos*, incapable; *pauper*, *inops*, poor; *inanis*, empty, etc.

Multi contentionis sunt cupidiores, quam veritatis. Pythagoras sapientiae studiosos appellavit philosophos. Sapiens homo ac multarum rerum peritus ad res iudicandas requiritur. Nihil quod animi rationisque expers est, generare ex se potest animantem compotemque rationis. Humana omnia plena sunt errorum. Omnes immemorem beneficii oderunt. Papirii actus ferax virtutum fuit.

1. *Refertus*, full, usually takes the ablative: *vita undique referta bonis*. So also sometimes the other adjectives denoting *plenty* or *want*, § 229.

2. A kind of Greek genitive is sometimes used by poets and later authors: *anxius animi*; *integer vitae scelerisque purus*; *dubius vias*; *insuetus laboris*. But also in good prose we find *pendere animi*, to be in suspense; but in the plural only, *pendere animis*.

§ 214.

The OBJECTIVE GENITIVE with *Participles*. Some present participles of transitive verbs govern the *genitive*, when denoting not so much a single action, as rather an *habitual quality*; *amans gloriae*, glory-loving, fond of glory.

Romani semper appetentes gloriae fuerunt. Epaminondas adeo fuit veritatis diligens, ut ne ioco quidem mentiretur.

Patiens frigoris, one that *can bear* the cold; *patiens frigus*, one that *actually bears* it. In the latter example, the cold is felt; in the former, though it be cold, still it is not felt.

§ 215.

1. The POSSESSIVE GENITIVE (*genitivus possessivus*) in the predicate of a sentence, with *esse* and *fieri*. With *esse* and *fieri*, the genitive of a noun is used to express property, characteristic quality, peculiarity, business, duty, distinctive mark, etc., some thing is or becomes.

Divitias sine divitum esse (let the rich have their riches); *tu virtutem praefer divitiis. Omnia, quae mulieris fuerunt, viri*

fiunt *dotis nomine*. Cuiusvis hominis est *errare*, nullius, *nisi insipientis, in errore perseverare*. Sapientis iudicis est, *semper quid lex et religio cogat cogitare*. *Ut res adversas, sic secundas immoderate ferre levitatis est*.

2. Instead of the *genitive* of a personal pronoun (*mei, tui, etc.*) the *neuter possessive* is always used; as, *meum est*, it is my duty; *vestrum est*, it is your duty.

Si cuiusquam, certe tuum est, nihil praeter virtutem in bonis ducere. *Nostrum est ferre modice populi voluntates*.

NOTE 1.—*Esse* may be omitted; as, *sapientis iudicis, or meum videtur, putatur, manet*, it seems to be the part of a wise judge, it seems to be my duty, etc.

NOTE 2.—Like *ferri*, so also *facere* is used with the possessive *genitive*. *Totam Galliam suae potestatis fecit*, he brought the whole of Gaul under his power.

NOTE 3.—*Hoc dicere arrogantis est*, characterizes a class of *people*; *hoc dicere stultum est*, characterizes an *action*.

§ 216.

The OBJECTIVE GENITIVE with *verbs of memory*. Verbs of reminding, remembering and forgetting, generally govern the *genitive*.

1. *Admoneo, commoneo, commonefacio aliquem alicuius rei*, I remind one of something.

2. *Memini and reminiscor*, I remember; *recordor*, I recollect; *obliscor*, I forget; also, *venit mihi in mentem alicuius*, somebody (or something) comes to my mind. Some of these verbs take sometimes the *accusative* or the *ablative* with *de*.

1. *Res adversae admonent religionum*. *Grammaticos officii sui commoneamus*. *Nemo est in Sicilia, quin tui sceleris ex illa oratione commonefiat*.

2. *Animus meminit praeteritorum, praesentia cernit, futura praevidet*. *Proprium est stultitiae, aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum*. *Homo improbus ipse certe aliquando agnoscet et cum dolore recordabitur flagitiorum suorum*. *Venit mihi Platonis in mentem*. *Recordor memoriam pueritiae ultimam*. *Libenter beneficia memini, obliscor iniurias*.

With *admoneo* only: *hoc te admoneo*; *multa me admonuit*, not *huius, multorum* (§ 202, 2). Likewise, *hoc te moneo*, or, *de hac re* (not the *geni-*

tive). *Obliviscor* takes the *person* always in the *genitive*; *recondor*, always in the *ablative* with *de* (the *thing* mostly in the *accusative*). *Memini patrem*, I remember my father *yet*; *memini patriæ*, I think of him just now, or I mention him.

NOTE.—Concerning the objective genitive, with *piget*, *pudet*, etc., cfr. § 196.

§ 217.

GENITIVE OF CRIME (*genitivus criminis*). With *legal terms* of accusing, condemning, and acquitting, the *crime*, and sometimes also the *penalty*, is put in the (objective) *genitive*.

Accusare, incusare, arguere, insimulare, to accuse; *arcessere, postulare, rem facere*, to summon, to arraign; *coarguere, convincere*, to convict; *damnare, condemnare*, to condemn; *absolvere (liberare)* to acquit; *capitis reus*, condemned to death, accused of a capital crime.

Miltiades proditionis accusatus et, quamquam capitis absolutus, tamen pecunia multatus est. Socrates a iudicibus capitis damnatus est. Cicero Verrem avaritiæ coarguit. Caelius iudex absolvit iniuriarum eum, qui Lucilium poetam in scena nominatim laeserat.

1. With *damnare*, the *penalty* is expressed; *capitis* (also *capite*) *damnatus*, sentenced to death; *quanti*, to how much; *dupli*, to the double. But *specified sums of money* are put in the *ablative*; *decem millibus aeris damnatus est* (§ 848, 2). *Other penalties* are expressed by the verb *multare*, always with the *ablative* (never *damnare*); *pecunia multare*, to condemn to a fine; *exilio*, to exile; *morte*, to death.

2. The word *crimen* stands, with the verb *accusare*, in the *ablative*; *accusabo te eodem crimine* (not *criminis*).

3. *Accusare aliquem repetundarum* and *de repetundis*, of extortions; *parricidii* and *de parricidio*, of parricide; only *de vi* (*vis* has no genitive); *inter sicarios*, of assassination. *Condemnare aliquem ad bestias, in metalla*. In common language (not legal), it is mostly, *accusare (incusare) negligentiam alicuius*, to accuse one of negligence.

§ 218.

GENITIVE OF PRICE (*genitivus pretii*). The *price* or value of a thing (*how much? how dear?*) is generally expressed by the *genitive* of adjectives of quantity.

1. With the verbs, to estimate, to be worth, to be considered, all *adjectives* expressing the *value* are in the *genitive*; as, *magni duco, puto, facio, aestimo, and pendo*. I esteem, appreciate

highly; pluris *sum*, I am worth more; *maximi fio, habeor*, I am esteemed very highly.

Likewise, *permagni, plurimi, parvi, minoris, minimi, tanti, quanti* (never *multi*, but *magni*; never *maioris*, but *pluris*; seldom *nihilis*).

Voluptatem virtus minimi facit. Agere considerate pluris est, quam cogitare prudenter. Sapientis viri est, opes atque divitias et quae sunt generis eiusdem parvi ducere. Auctoritas regis magni habetur.

2. With the verbs, to buy, to sell, to cost, to rent, etc., only the four comparative adjectives, *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*, are used in the *genitive* to denote the *price*; all other adjectives and all substantives are used in the *ablative* (§ 222). *Tanti hunc hortum emi*, I have bought this garden for so much. But, *parvo eum emi*, I have bought it cheap (for little); also, *magno, plurimo, minimo, vili, nihilo, duobus talentis eum emi*.

Emere, to buy; *vendere*, to sell; *venire*, to be for sale; *redimere*, to buy back; *constare*, to cost; *conducere*, to hire; *locare*, to let; *licere*, to be for sale.

Vendo meum frumentum non pluris, quam ceteri, fortasse etiam minoris. Homo cupidus hortulos tanti emi, quanti venditor voluit. Hortos istos emamus vel magno, si parvo non possumus. Te redimas captum quam queas minimo, si nequeas paululo, at quanti queas.

Hunc hominem flocci (nauci, pili, assis) non facio, I do not care a straw for this man (I don't consider him worth that!). *Turti est*, it is worth while.

§ 219.

With *interest*, it is of interest, of importance, it concerns, the person is put in the *genitive*: *patris interest*, it is of interest to the father, it concerns, etc. If the person is a personal *pronoun*, we always use the *abl. fem. posses.* instead of the *gen. pers. pron.*; not *mei interest*, but *meā, tuā, suā, vestrā interest*, etc.

The same *ablative* is used with *refert*, it concerns; *nostrā refert*, it concerns us; *refert* takes the *genitive* very seldom.

Natura corvis et cornicibus, quorum id nihil interest, vitam diuturnam, hominibus, quorum maxime interfuit, exiguam vitam

cedit. Caesar dicere solebat, non tam sua, quam rei publicae interesse, ut valeret.

Vestra nihil refert, victum esse Antonium. Tua quod nil refert, percontari desinas.

1. *That which interests, concerns one, matters to one, is not expressed by a substantive, but by a clause, either with ut or with the accusatives and infinitive (§ 270), or with an indirect question. In omnibus novis confunctionibus multum interest, qualis primus aditus sit, the first appearance is of high importance.*

2. To express *how much* it interests, concerns, matters, etc., we find :

a. The adverbs: *magnopere, valde, vehementer, magis, maxima, parum, minus, minima.*

b. The accusatives: *multum (non multum, little), plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minimum, nimium, nihil, aliquid, quid?*

c. The genitives: *magni, pluris, tanti, quanti, parvi* (little).

3. The object or end for which it is important, is expressed by the accusatives with *ad*; as, *maxime ad salutem omnium interest, ut omnes legibus oboediant.*

CHAPTER XXXVII.

THE ABLATIVE.

§ 220.

The *Ablative* expresses various relations which are in English generally expressed by prepositions.

1. ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT (*ablativus instrumenti*). The ablative without preposition is used to express the *means* or *instrument*. Question, *by what means? wherewith? Oculis cernimus, we see with our eyes.*

Sol luce sua cuncta illustrat. Dente lupus, cornu taurus petit. Benevolentiam civium blanditiis et assentando colligere curpe est.

NOTE 1. When *persons* are the *means* or *instrument* (question, *by whom? through whom?* the accusatives with *per* is always used: *per legatos eum certiores facit; per me (or mea opera) factum est.* To denote *accompaniment* of persons or things (question, *with whom? with what?*) *cum* is used: *cum patre profectus sum; cum rege locutus sum; cum magno damno abii; cum gladio, cum magna pecunia veni* (but, *hunc agrum magna pecunia emi*).

NOTE 2. The following may also be considered an *ablative of means*: *tenere se castris*, to stay in the camp; *recipere aliquem lecto*, to receive one under one's roof. But in a figurative sense, only *recipere aliquem in amicitiam*.

2. ABLATIVE OF INANIMATE AGENT (*ablativus rei efficientis*). The ablative without a preposition is used with passive and intransitive verbs to denote the thing by which anything is effected. (Question, *whereby?* *by what?*)

Boni nullo emolumento impelluntur in fraudem, improbi saepe parvo. Trahimur omnes studio laudis et optimus quisque maxime gloria ducitur. Corpora iuvenum firmantur labore. Concordia parvae res crescunt, discordia maximae dilabuntur.

3. ABLATIVE OF LIVING AGENT (*ablativus auctoris*). With passive verbs the *person* who is the *author* of an action is put in the *ablative* with *a* or *ab*.

Roma a Romulo, Alexandria ab Alexandro condita est. Alexander ab Apelle potissimum pingi et a Lysippo fingi volebat.

Natus, ortus, genitus (born, descended from) take the name of the father or mother in the *ablative*, without preposition; however, *ex* is sometimes used. *Quod ex nobis natos appellamus liberos, ideoque Cere nati appellati sunt Liber et Libera*; but with regard to more remote ancestry, we find *oriundus* or *ortus a claris maioribus*, descended from renowned ancestors. *Naturā*, by nature (as inanimate cause); *a natura*, from nature (as a person). In the sentence, *per quos et a quibus homines occisi sunt?* *a* denotes the authors, *per* the actual doers as the tools of the former.

§ 221.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE (*ablativus causae*). The *ablative* without preposition is used to express the *cause* for which or motive through which something is done.

Most generally this *ablative* is used with substantives expressing *feeling* or *emotion*; as, *dolore, ira, studio, odio, metu, timore, cupiditate, avaritia, spe, misericordia, benevolentia, amore, taedio, mollitia*. In English, *through, with, for*.

Multi metu mortis vim tormentorum pertulerunt. Nimio gaudio paene desipiebam. Multi officia deserunt mollitia animi. Nolito putare, me oblivione tui rarius ad te scribere. Regale civitatis genus non tam regni, quam regis vitii repudiatum est.

2. The ablative of cause is most frequently used with verbs and adjectives denoting feeling or emotion. (Question, *on what account? for what? at what?*)

Thus, *dolere, maerere, laborare, gaudere, laetari, delectari, exsultare, gloriari, triumphare*; *laetus, anxius, contentus*, satisfied with; *fretus*, trusting in, and the corresponding verbs, *nitor, fido, confido*, I trust in, *aliqua re*, something; (*fido, confido*, also with dative, I place trust in; and *diffido alicui*, I mistrust one).

Omnes boni interitu suorum maerent. Diversis duobus vitiis, avaritia et luxuria, civitas Romana laborabat. Delicto dolere, correctione gaudere oportet. Nulla re tam laetari soleo, quam meorum officiorum conscientia. Contentum suis rebus esse maximae sunt certissimaeque divitiae. Haec ad te scripsi: fretus conscientia benevolentiae tuae. Quis poterit aut corporis firmitate aut fortunae stabilitate confidere?

1. *Odio*, through hatred; but better, *odio permotus*. In the same way, *amore ductus, cupiditate impulsus; ira incensus* or *inflammatum*; *ardens odio; flagrans cupiditate; timore permotus*, through fear; *prae timore*, for fear. *Meā causā*, for my sake; *mei ipsius causā*, for my own sake (§ 238, 9); *tuā, suā*, etc., *causā*. *Ea de causa* (or, *ob eam causam*), on that account; *amicorum causa (gratia)*, for the sake of my friends (§ 164, 15, 4) (*causa* and *gratia* always after the dependent word). *Consilio Themistoclis*, by the advice of Themistocles; *iussu consulis*, by command of the consul; *iniussu populi*, without the people's will; *mandatu meo*, by my direction; thus also, *monitu, permissu*, etc.

2. *Laborare ex capite*, to have a headache; so also, *ex dentibus, ex intestinis, ex pedibus*. *Gloriari de aliqua re* and *in aliqua re*; *se iactare*, nearly always, *in aliqua re*, to boast of a thing; sometimes, however, *iactare aliquam rem*, instead of *se iactare in aliqua re*.

§ 222.

ABLATIVE OF PRICE (*ablativus pretii*).—The substantive denoting the price at which something is bought or valued, is put in the ablative.

When the price is expressed by an adjective, after verbs of valuing, the gen. is used; after those of buying or selling, the abl. and gen. § 218.

Otium non gemmis neque purpura venale (est) neque auro. Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidit. Darius mille talentis percussorem Alexandri emere voluit.

Quanti habitas? how much rent do you pay? *Puroo*, cheap; *duodecim thaleris*, twelve dollars; *duobus millibus nummum*, 2,000 sesterces.

§ 223.

The adjectives *dignus* and *indignus*, worthy and unworthy, always govern the *ablative* (concerning *dignus qui*, cfr. § 258).

Excellentium civium virtus imitatione, non invidia digna est. Nihil magno et praeclaro viro dignius placabilitate et clementia. In summa difficultate nulla vox audita est populi Romani maiestate indigna.

The verb *dignor*, I deign, consider worthy, and am considered worthy, also governs the *ablative*. *Res dissimiles saepe consimili laude dignantur.*

§ 224.

ABLATIVE OF MANNER (*ablativus modi*).—To denote manner we use :

1. The *ablative* without a preposition with words that express *manner* and *way* ; as, *hoc modo, hac ratione*, in this manner ; *Graeco more*, after the Greek manner ; *pecudum ritu*, after the manner of animals ; *nostra consuetudine, hac lege ; certis conditionibus*, under certain conditions.

2. The *ablative*, with *cum*, is used with all other words which are *not limited* by an adjective ; *cum diligentia*, with diligence, *i. e., diligenter* ; *cum fide*, with faithfulness ; *cum voluptate*, with pleasure ; *cum ignominia*, with shame.

Also *per* with the accusative ; as, *per dedecus*, with shame, in shame.

3. The *ablative* is used either *with or without* the preposition *cum*, when the word is modified by an adjective ; as, *magna cum diligentia*, and *magna diligentia ; incredibili cum celeritate* and *incredibili celeritate*.

Quid aliud est, gigantum modo pugnare cum diis, nisi naturae repugnare ? Beate vivere et honeste, id est cum virtute vivere. Is cultus deorum est optimus, ut eos semper pura mente veneremur. Albuicium cum multa venustate risit Lucilius.

1. *Iure* (with reason), rightfully ; *iniuriā* (without reason), unjustly ; *ratione et via*, with method and reason ; *voluntate* (*sponte*), voluntarily ; *silentio*, silently ; *ordine*, in good order. Nouns expressing a disposition of mind, even when joined to an adjective, are used without *cum* ; *aequo animo ; hoc consilio ; ea mente*. *Per vim*, in a violent way ; *vi*, by force ; *per ludum*, in a playful manner ; *specie*, under the color of ; *per speciem*, on pretence.

2. To denote an article of dress, *cum* may be added or left out; as, *sedebat cum tunica pulla*; *sedebat pulcherrimo vestitu*. To denote a part of the body, *cum* is not used. *Nudo capite incessit*. *Cum ferro*, with the sword (in hand); *ferro*, with the sword (ablative of instrument); *ferro ignique*, with fire and sword.

§ 225.

ABLATIVE OF QUALITY (*ablativus qualitatis*).—The ablative of a substantive with an adjective is used to express a *quality*.

This ablative is used both as predicate and as attribute.

Agessilaus statura fuit humili et corpore exiguo. *Cato in omnibus rebus singulari fuit prudentia et industria*. *Aristoteles, vir summo ingenio, prudentiam cum eloquentia coniunxit*.

The *descriptive genitive* (§ 211) may be used instead of the *ablative of quality*, except when parts of the body are described; hence only, *Britanni capillo sunt promisso*. When a numeral takes the place of the attributive adjective the genitive only is used; as, *classis trecentarum navium*.

§ 226.

ABLATIVE OF LIMITATION (*ablativus limitationis*).—The ablative without preposition is used in order to express a *limitation of the judgment*, by indicating the measure according to which the judgment is to be applied. (In English generally, *with regard to, as to, in*).

Multi utilitate officium dirigunt magis, quam humanitate. *Sunt quidam homines non re, sed nomine*. *Magnos homines virtute metimur, non fortuna*. *Socrates omnium eruditorum testimonio, philosophorum omnium facile fuit princeps*. *Mea quidem sententia paci semper consulendum est*.

1. Here belongs, *maior natu*, older; likewise, *maximus natu*; *minor natu*; *minimus natu*; but, *Cyrus Maior*, *Scipio Maior*, without *natu*. *Claudus altero pede*; lame of one foot.

2. *Mea sententia, meo iudicio*, in my opinion, judgment; *ex (mea) sententia*, according to my wish; *numero quinque*, five in number; *genere*, by race; *natione Gallus*, by nation a Gaul.

3. Poets use an accusative of limitation, after the Greek manner, (*accus. Graecus*); as, *longam vestem indutus*, instead of *longa veste*; *os humerisque Deo similis*; instead of *ors humerisque*. *Feminas Germanorum nudas erant brachia et lacertos*.

§ 227.

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON (*ablativus comparationis*).—The ablative is used after an adjective in the *comparative* degree instead of *quam*, with the nominative or the accusative; thus, *filius patre maior est*, for *filius maior est quam pater*.

Patria mihi vita mea multo est carior. Nihil est amabilius virtute. Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum. Lacrimā nihil citius arescere dicunt. Recte auguraris, nihil abesse a me longius crudelitate. Quem auctorem locupletiozem Platone laudare possumus?

1. This ablative *cannot* be used when it would render the meaning doubtful. *Germani graviores hostes sustinuerunt, quam Romanos*; not *Romanis*, which would mean *quam Romanis*. Often: *hoc* or *quo nihil vidimus indignius. Scipio Punici belli perpetrati, quo nullum neque maius neque periculosius Romani gessere, unus praecipuam gloriam tulit*; than which the Romans waged none, either greater or more perilous.

2. *Minus, plus* and *amplius* (also *longius*) when joined to words of number and measure usually drop *quam*, without any further change; as, *Plus pars dimidia ex quinquaginta millibus hominum caesa est* (seldom *quam pars* or *parte*). *Milites Romani plus dimidiati mensis cibaria ferebant. Minus duo millia hominum ex tanto exercitu effugerunt.*

In the phrase, *Caesar opinione celerius advenit, opinione* may be explained either as standing for *quam opinio* advenit, or as *quam opinio* erat (*est, fuit*). In the same manner we often say; *plus aequo; solito magis; spe citius* or *serius*, etc. *Multi plus aequo in amicitiam congerunt.*

§ 228.

ABLATIVE OF MEASURE (*ablativus mensurae*).—The *measure* by which a thing or an action surpasses another, is expressed by the *ablative*; as, *multo melior*, by far better.

This ablative is principally used with *comparatives, superlatives* and *verbs* having a comparative meaning; as *malle, antecellere, praestare, superare, postponere*, etc. *Multo meo iudicio stare malo, quam reliquorum omnium, I will by far rather.*

Hibernia dimidio minor est, quam Britannia. Diogenes disputare solebat, quanto regem Persarum vitā fortunāque superaret. (Ego) Tanto pessimus omnium poëta quanto tu optimus omnium patronus.

1. *Quo — eo*, the — the; *quanto — tanto*: *quo quisque est doctior, eo est vequior*; the more learned he is, the more wicked is he; which may also

be expressed thus: *doctissimus quisque nequissimus*: or, *ut quisque est doctissimus, ita est nequissimus*.

2. With the above mentioned verbs (except *malle*) the adverbial forms *longe, multum, tantum* may also be used; this, however, seldom occurs with comparatives; with the superlatives *longe* is generally used.

§ 229.

ABLATIVE OF PLENTY (*ablativus copiae*).—Verbs denoting plenty or want, filling, furnishing with or depriving, govern the *ablative*.

Abundare, redundare, affluere, to abound in; *carere*, to miss, to be wanting; *vacare*, to be free from; *egere*, to be in need of; *indigere*, to want, need; *implere, complere, refecere*, to fill; *privare, orbare, spoliare*, to rob, deprive; *nudare*, to divest.

Germania Galliaque abundant rivis et fluminibus. Monitio acerbitate carere debet. Quid affere consilii potest, qui ipse eget consilio? Gravius est spoliari fortunis, quam non augeri dignitate. Deus bonis omnibus explevit mundum, mali nihil admiscuit.

Here belongs the expression, *afficere aliquem aliqua re*; as, *Poenam eos affecit*, he punished them; *magno me dolore affecisti*, you have caused me great sorrow. Also, *praeditus*, endowed with; as, *Virtute qui praediti sunt, soli sunt beati*.

Indigere, when it means to stand in need of, takes the genitive; as, *Consilii tui indigeo*, I need your advice. *Interdicere*, to exclude, forbid, *alicui aliqua re*; seldom *interdicere alicui aliquid*. *Ciceroni aqua et igni interdictum est*, Cicero was exiled. *Lapidibus (lacte, sanguine) pluit*, it has rained stones.

§ 230.

Ablative with *opus est*, there is need. After the impersonal *opus est* the *thing* is put in the *ablative*; the *person*, that needs, may be added in the *dative*. *Mihi opus est libris*: I need books.

Opus est may, however, be construed personally (except in negative sentences); then the thing needed stands as subject in the *nominative*. *Mihi opus sunt libri* (*opus*, an indecl. subst.).

Multis non duce tantum opus est, sed adiutore et coactore. Dux nobis et auctor opus est (or *duce, auctore*); but negatively,

only *nihil opus est duce*; *quid opus est exemplo?* *Themistocles celeriter*, quae opus erant *reperiebat*.

Hence only; *quantum opus est*, *multa opus sunt* (the neuter of the adjective; never *quanto*, *multis*, even in negative and interrogative sentences).

§ 231.

The five deponents, *fruo*, *fungo*, *potior*, *utor*, *vescor*, take their object in the *ablative*.

Frui otio, to enjoy leisure; *fungi munere*, to discharge an office, perform a function; *potiri imperio*, to obtain the supreme command; *uti rationes*, to use reason; *vesci carne*, to eat meat. Thus also their compounds, *perfruo*, *defungo*, *abutor*, etc.

Commoda, quibus utimur, *lucemque*, qua fruimur, *spiritumque*, quem ducimus, *a deo nobis dari videmus*. *Nemo parum diu vixit*, qui *virtutis* functus est munere. *Imperator urbe potitus est*. *Numidae plerumque lacte et ferina carne vescebantur*.

Rerum (not *rebus*) *potiri*, to have supreme power. *Facili me utetur patre*, he will find in me a kind father; *utor eo doctore*, I have him for teacher.

§ 232.

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION. *Verbs* which denote a separation take the *thing* in the *ablative* with or without the preposition *a*, or *ex*; but the *person* always with the preposition *ab* (question, *from where?* *from whom?* *from what?*).

Arcere, to keep off; *expellere*, to banish; *desistere*, to leave off; *detertere*, to deter; *excedere*, to depart; *liberare*, to free; *abstinere*, or *abstinere se*, to abstain.

Apud Germanos quemcunque mortalium arcere tecto nefas habetur. *Tarquinius Superbus urbe expulsus est*. *Homines ab iniuria natura non poena arcere debet*. *Hannibal ex Italia decedere coactus est*. *Themistocles Graeciam servitute liberavit*. *Post mortem animus a corpore liberatus erit*.

2. The adjectives *alienus*, strange, averse; *purus* and *immunis*, pure; *liber*, free; *vacuus*, devoid, free from, take the *ablative* with or without *ab*; thus, *curis vacuus*, free from cares; *ab exercitationibus vacuum tempus*, a time without exercise (practice).

Animus per somnum curis vacuus est. Artibus variis ita eram deditus, ut ab exercitationibus nullus tamen dies vacuus esset. Avaritia aliena est a bono viro.

1. *Abdicare se dictatura*, to resign (lay down) the dictatorship; *aliquem tribu movere*, cast one out from the tribe.

2. *Prohibere hostem a rapinis*, or *rapinis*, to thwart in his robberies, and *prohibere rem publicam a periculo* or *periculo*, to save the state from danger. Likewise, *defendere ab iniuria*, (never the ablative alone), to defend against injustice; *defendere iniuriam*, to ward off an injury (never *ab* or ablative).

3. Verbs compounded with *se* and *dis* have nearly always *a* or *ab*: *secerno*, *separo*, *sejingo*, I separate; *disto*, *differo*, I differ; *distinguo*, *discerno*, I distinguish.—Mostly also, *alieno*, I estrange, *abhorreo*, I shrink from, *a scelere*, the crime. Instead of *dissentire ab aliquo*, to disagree with one, *dissentire cum aliquo*, can be said.

§ 233.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE (*ablativus loci*). The answer to the question, *where?* is put in the ablative with *in*. But the word *locus*, and any substantive joined to *totus*, always stand in the ablative without a preposition.

Omnibus locis virtus coli potest. Tyriorum coloniae paene toto orbe terrarum diffusae sunt.

Hoc loco, in this place; *opportuno loco*, in a favorable place; *loco, suo loco* (rarely *in loco*) in the right place; *parentis loco* or *numero esse alicui*, to be a father to one; *toto mari*, over the whole ocean; *tota Italia*, in all Italy, etc. *Terra marique* (also *et mari et terra*), by sea and land; but *in mari*, in the sea; *in terra*, on the land; *dextrā*, on the right; *sinistrā*, on the left. *Hoc libro disputatur de officiis*, refers to the contents of the book; *in hoc libro*, marks particular passages.

2. The ablative without preposition is used to mark the *line* or *direction* in which motion takes place.

Demonstrabo iter; Aureliā viā profectus est. Lapis cadens recta linea deorsum fertur.

Qua, which way; *hac, eā, recta*, this, that, straightways. *Portā Collinā*, through the Colline gate; also, *per portam Collinam*. *Dextra parte*, on the right side, *sido* taken as a direction; *in dextra parte*, taken as a point.

§ 234.

ABLATIVE OF TIME (*ablativus temporis*).—The ablative without a preposition answers the question, *when?* as, *hoc tempore*,

at this time; *hieme*, in winter; *nocte* or *noctu*, by night; *occasu solis*, at sunset; *luce*, by day.

Roma condita est anno septingentesimo quinquagesimo tertio ante Christum natum. *Virtus nullo tempore relinquenda est*. *Qua nocte Alexander natus est, eadem templum Dianae Ephesiae deflagavit*.

1. *Hoc tempore*, at this time; *in hoc tempore*, at this crisis; *extrema pueritia*, at the close of boyhood; but, *in pueritia, in vita*. *Initio, principio* (seldom with *in*), at the beginning; *ab initio, a principio*, from the beginning. *Luculli adventu*, on the arrival of Lucullus; *comitiis*, at the elections; *ludiis, contionibus, bello*, in the time of, (but *in bello*, in the war).

2. The length of time within which something is done is expressed by the ablative: as, *Agamemnon cum universa Graecia vix decem annis unam urbem cepit* (also *intra decem annos*). With a numeral adverb *in* is added; *bis in die*, twice a day; *ter in anno*, three times in the year.

2. The ablative preceded or followed by *ante, post*, denotes *how long* before or after; as, *tribus annis ante (post)*, or *tribus ante (post) annis*, three years ago (after); *paulo ante*, shortly before; *multo post*, long after.

Themistocles fecit idem, quod viginti annis ante fecerat Coriolanus. *Corpus Alexandri paucis post annis Alexandriam translatum est*. *Numa Pompilius permultis annis ante fuit, quam Pythagoras*.

1. Here *ante* and *post* are adverbs, and the ablative is rather that of measure than of time; (§ 228.) *Ante (post) tres annos*, or *ante (post) tertium annum*, are the same as, *tribus ante (post) annis*. When *quam* follows, it may be joined to *ante* and *post*; as, *Panaetius triginta annis vixit, postquam libros de officiis edidit*. *Post* is sometimes omitted after the ablative; as, *hoc factum est tertio anno, quam Aristides mortuus erat*. But in such instances the relative may be used instead of *quam*; as, *Mors Rosci quadriduo, quo is occisus est, Chrysogono nuntiatum*.

2. Three years ago (to-day) is, in Latin, *ante tres annos*, or *abhinc tres annos*, or *abhinc tribus annis*, seldom *ante hos tres annos*.

§ 235.

1. Concerning the *ablative with prepositions*, cfr. § 162, 163.

2. The verbs *ponere, collocare*, to put, place (also, *locare, statuere, constituere, considere*) take the ablative with *in*, though they imply motion, **not** *st*.

Plato animi principatum, id est rationem, in capite sicut in aere posuit. Herculem hominum fama in concilio deorum collocavit.

1. *Ponere* and *collocare* are always constructed as implying rest in a place, not motion to a place. Hence: *Ubi, hic, ibi, Romae fortunas meas posui.*

2. *Advenire*, to arrive; *convenire*, to meet together; *cogere*, to assemble; *nuntiare*, to announce; *abdere*, to conceal, take *in* with the accusative. *Graeci in Isthmum convenerunt*, the Greeks met on the Isthmus. *Romam nuntiatum est*, it was announced in Rome. Likewise, *quo, huc, illuc, eo convenerunt. In silvas se abdidit; but only, abditus in silvis.*

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

PECULIARITIES OF SYNTAX.

IDIOMS OF ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

§ 236.

ADJECTIVES.

In Latin an *adjective* is often placed in *apposition*, where in English we employ an *adverb*, or an adverbial clause (preposition and noun): such are,

1. Many participial adjectives; as, *sciens calumniatus est*, he has slandered *knowingly*.

Thus: *absens*, in one's absence; *praesens*, in (my) presence; *ignorans, insciens (ignarus, nescius)*, unwittingly; *occultus*, secretly; *mortuus*, after (one's) death; *vivus*, alive; *tacitus*, in silence, silently.

Hortensium vivum amavi, Crassum non edi mortuum. Natura ipsa de immortalitate animorum tacita iudicat.

2. The comparatives and superlatives denoting place; superior *stabat lupus*, higher up stood the wolf.

Thus: *inferior, prior, propior, extremus, infimus, primus, princeps*. Likewise, *medius, unus, solus, totus, (omnis, universus), frequens, creber, assiduus, rarus*.

Caesar constituerat, prior proelio non lacessere. Philosophiae nos nunc totos tradimus. Roscius assiduus ruri vixit.

3. The adjectives and participles of feeling; as, *laetus, libens, sobrius, invitus, trepidus, etc.*

Socrates venenum laetus et libens hausit. Soli hoc contingit sapienti, nihil ut faciat invitus, nihil coactus.

The adjective here always refers to the subject; but if the predicate is to be modified, then the adverb must be used; *sciens calumniatus est; scienter calumniatus est.*

4. Adjectives derived from proper nouns: *Hercules Xenophonteus*, the Hercules of Xenophon; *pugna Leuctrica, Marathonica, Cannensis*, the battle of Leuctra, etc. *Cimon Atheniensis*, Cimon of Athens, (the Athenian).

Epistola mea, my letter, and a letter from me. If the predicate is modified, the preposition must be used: *Lacedaemonii a Thebanis pugna ad Leuctra victi sunt.*

§ 237.

OTHER PECULIARITIES IN THE USE OF ADJECTIVES :

1. An adjective is seldom joined immediately to a proper noun. *Pompeius, vir clarissimus*, the renowned Pompey (not *clarus Pompeius*). *Socrates, homo sapientissimus; Corinthus, urbs opulentissima.*

But *Corinthus sola; uniuersa Graecia; omnis Gallia; cuncta Italia; tota Asia; noster ille Ennius; Cicero meus; Sulla Felix; Pompeius Magnus; Scipio Maior*, these are considered as a single name.

2. Words like *former, first, last, alone, only, self*, are sometimes expressed by an *adverb*, but oftener by an *adjective* (§ 236, 2), which then takes the case of the supposed or expressed antithesis; as, *hoc tu mihi primum dixisti* (scil. *postea negasti*) *hoc tu mihi primus dixisti* (scil. *postea frater tuus*); *hoc tu mihi primo dixisti* (scil. *postea fratri tuo*). *Sibi ipse omnia licere putat* (scil. *ceteri non putant*); *sibi ipsi omnia licere putat* (scil. *ceteris non putat*).

Homo non sibi se soli natum meruerit, sed patriae, sed amicis. Non egeo medicina; me ipse consolor.

3. The superlative of adjectives of place is often used in Latin, where in English a *substantive* or an *adverb* of similar meaning is employed: *in summo monte*, on the top of the mountain; *in media urbe*, in the middle of the city. So also with regard to time: *prima nocte*, at the beginning of the night; *prima luce*, at day-break; (*primo die*, on the first day;)

extremo anno, at the end of the year; *novissimum agmen*, the rear guard.

4. As in English, so also in Latin, *adjectives* are sometimes used as *substantives*: *bonum*, the good; *malum*, the evil; *verum*, the truth. *Aequalis*, the equal; *adversarius*, the adversary; *socius*, the ally.

1. Neuters of this kind are almost exclusively only the adjectives of the second declension, especially when used in the genitive: *nihil boni*, nothing good; *natura iusti et aequi mater est* (§ 212, 2, 2), but adjectives of the third declension, rarely; as, *turpe*, the ugly thing. Plural, *bona, mala, turpia*, good, bad, shameful things or actions. *Verum* or *vera dicere*, to tell the truth (not *veritatem*).

2. To denote persons, most adjectives are used as substantives in the plural only; in the singular, *vir* or *homo* is added. *Docti* or *homines docti*, learned men, or the learned; but *homo doctus*, a learned man; *doctissimi* or *homines doctissimi*, the most learned men; *homo vere doctus*, a really learned man. Thus also, *boni, mali, probi, improbi, prudentes, divites, pauperes; mei, tui, nostri, Stoici, Graeci*, etc. *Amicus, affinis, semulus, cognatus, familiaris, necessarius, peregrinus, propinquus, vicinus* are very often used in the singular as substantives; also a few others, especially in contrasts. *Plurimum interest inter doctum et rudem*.

3. Adjective substantives take *nemo* for no one, *quisquam*, any one (never *nullus, ullus*); thus, *nemo doctus*, no learned man; *nemo Romanus*, no Roman; *si quisquam sapiens hoc dixisset*, if any wise man had said this.

5. In comparing *two adjectives* both are often put in the comparative degree; as, *pestilentia minacior fuit, quam periculosior*, the pestilence was more threatening than dangerous (but also, *magis minax quam periculosa*).

So also with adverbs: *Romani bella fortius semper, quam feliciter gesserunt*, more bravely than successfully, or, with greater valor than success.

§ 238.

PRONOUNS.

1. The English, *and that too, and that indeed*, are expressed in Latin by *et is, et is quidem, atque is, isque* (*nec is, and that not indeed*).

Homo memoriam habet, et eam infinitam, rerum omnium. Uno atque eo facili proelio hostes caesi sunt. Annum iam audis Oratippum idque Athenis.

Haec locutus est, he spoke as follows (not *sequentia*); *Platonis illud*, this saying of Plato.

2. The RELATIVE PRONOUN is often used differently from the English :

a. The relative is used after *idem* for the English *as*. *Servi iisdem moribus esse solent, quibus dominus* (as the master; also *atque*, § 170, 2).

b. For the English, *so called*, we say in Latin, *qui vocatur* (*vocabatur, dicebatur*), or *quem vocant* (*vocabant, dicebant*). *Vestra, quae dicitur, vita mors est*, your so-called life is death.

For *above mentioned* never *supra dictus*, but *quem supra dicti, commemoravi*; and, in the same way, *quem paulo post commemorabo*.

c. To express the English, *considering*, according to, in accordance with, the *relative* is used in the following and similar phrases: *Spero te, quae tua prudentia et temperantia est, iam valere*, considering your prudence, in accordance with your prudence, as may be expected from your prudence. Also, *pro tua prudentia*.

3. The *demonstrative* is often omitted before a relative or put after the relative clause, in which latter case a substantive belonging to the demonstrative, is placed in the relative clause.

Num vir bonus emet denario, quod sit mille denarium (id quod)? Male se res habet, quum quod virtute effici debet, id tentatur pecunia. *Quam quisque norit artem, in hac se exerceat.* *Qua nocte Alexander natus est, eadem templum Dianae Ephesiae deflagavit.*

4. When the *relative as subject* refers to a personal pronoun of the first person the verb of the relative clause is also in the *first person*; if it refers to the second person, the verb is put in the second person (§ 191, 3, 2).

Non sum is consul, qui nefas esse arbitrer Gracchos laudare. *Vos, qui adfuitis, totam rem narrare poteritis.*

5. If the *relative* refers to a substantive in *apposition*, then this substantive is transferred to the relative clause. Cato, a man, whose authority surpassed that of all the rest, etc.; thus, *Cato, qui vir auctoritate omnes superabat* (never, *Cato vir, qui*).

Nihil cognovi ingratius; in quo vitio nihil non inest mali

Oppius curat negotia Rufi, quo equite Romano ego familiarissime utor.

6. The *relative* pronoun is often used, instead of *hic* or *is* with *et, nam, enim, sed, autem*, to connect sentences.

Perobscura est quaestio de natura deorum; quae (for sed ea) ad agnitionem animi pulcherrima est. Illa Stoicorum de se opinio firma in Rutilio et stabilis inventa est. Qui (for nam is) cum innocentissimus in iudicium vocatus esset, oratorem adhibere noluit.

A similar construction of *qui* is very frequent, as, *qui cum, qui ut, qui postquam* and other conjunctions. But if *qui* serves to connect two sentences it can never be followed by *autem, enim* or *vero*.

7. The *reflexive* pronoun *sui, sibi, se*, and the *possessive, suus*, have the following peculiarities:

a. The *reflexive* is used in all sentences, without exception, when the pronoun of the third person refers to the *subject* of the *same* sentence.

Caesar se ad suos recepit. Homo placabilis facile ignoscit iniurias sibi illatas.

b. The *possessive, suus*, is also generally used when the pronoun refers not indeed to the subject, but to *some other noun* of the *same* sentence. *Puer columbam cepit in nido suo*, in its nest (*eius*, less correct).

Suus must be used in case of emphasis; as, *his own*; also with *quisque*; moreover, always, *sui, his, their* friends, possessions, etc.

Caesarem etiam sua natura mitiorem facit. Hannibalem sui cives e civitate eiecerunt. Desinant insidiari domi suae consuli. Scipio Syracusanis suas res restituit. Suis flammis delete Fidenas. Sua quemque fraus et suus terror maxime vexat, suum quemque scelus agitat amentiaque afficit. Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam. Suum cuique tribue. Conserva tuis suos.

NOTE. But when the pronoun is not emphasized, *eius* may be used. *Deum agnoscis ex operibus eius*. Sometimes *eius* must be used, in order to avoid ambiguity: *Accipiter columbam cepit in nido eius*, because *suo* would refer to the hawk's own nest. *Huic Caesar pro eius virtute atque in se benevolentia maiorum locum restituerat.*

c. The *reflexive* is used in all *infinitive* and *subjunctive* clauses, that are *intrinsically dependent*, provided the pronoun refers to the *subject* of the *principal sentence*.

Intrinsically dependent clauses are those which contain a thought or sentiment, etc., of the leading subject in the principal sentence (not a simple statement of the speaker or writer). Such clauses are the accusative with the infinitive; subjunctive clauses (*ut, ne, quo, quominus, quin*); relative clauses expressing the thought of another (§ 261), and indirect questions. Clauses expressing simply effect or consequence and all indicative dependent clauses are only extrinsically dependent.

Sentit animus se sua vi, non aliena moveri. Ariovistus respondit, quod sibi (him) Cuesar denuntiaret, se (that he) Aeduarum iniurias non neglecturum: neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse. Romani a Prusia petebant, ne inimicissimum suum (their) secum (with himself) haberet sibi que (to them) dederet.

1. When the pronoun refers to a word which is not the grammatical, but the logical subject of the principal sentence, the reflexive is used. *Faustulo spes fuerat (Faustulus speraverat) regiam stirpem apud se educari.*

2. In subjunctive clauses, expressing only effect or consequence, *eius, ei, eum*, etc., are used, not *sui, sibi, se*; as, *Epaminondas erat disertus, ut nemo Thebanus ei par esset eloquentia* (§ 275, 2).

3. The reciprocal one another, each other, is generally rendered by *inter se*. *Veri amici non solum colunt inter se ac diligunt, sed etiam vobuntur. Haec inter se repugnant. Alter alterum colit*, the one honors the other; *alius alium colit*, one honors this one, another that one. *Civis civem trucidabat; miles militi obstrepbat.*

4. The *possessive*, his, hers, theirs, is expressed in Latin by *suus*, only when it refers to a noun of the same sentence (or to the subject of the leading sentence). When it refers to a noun in some other (coördinate sentence), the genitive, *eius, eorum, earum*, must be used.

Multi cives interfecti eorumque bona publicata sunt. Omitto Isocratem discipulosque eius. Quoquo se verterint Stoici, iaceat necesse est omnis eorum sollertia.

5. The *possessives* are often omitted when the sense will easily supply the omission: as, *Patrem amisi* (scil. *meum*); *fratrem tibi reddidi* (scil. *tuum*); *parentes carissimos habet* (scil. *suos*). But *patrem meum occidisti; fratrem tuum amamus. Meum ipsius (tuum ipsius, suum ipsius, nostrum ipsorum, ipsarum) patrem*, my own father, to strengthen the emphasis.

Suo loco, in the right place; *Cicero omnes honores suo anno cepit* (as soon as he had reached the legal age); *meo iure*, with my full right; *me, etc., iure*, never *pleno iure*.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

USE OF THE TENSES.

§ 239.

1. The tenses in Latin are used, on the whole, in the same way as those of the English verb.

The *principal tenses* (*tempora absoluta*) are the Present, Perfect and Future; the *relative tenses* (*tempora relativa*) are the Imperfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect. These latter are used only when reference to the time of another action is to be expressed.

2. The PRESENT denotes the present time. It expresses actions that are done now, or generally, or at all times.

Lego hunc librum; gaudio afficior, dum lego. Quotidie aliquid scribo. Tempestas nocet frugibus. Deus mundum conservat.

The present tense is sometimes used to denote *past* events; 1, *historical present* (§ 242); 2, with the conjunction *dum* (§ 245).

§ 240.

The PERFECT is used to express an action as entirely past, either in relation to the present time or without relation to any other time.

1. The *perfect definite*, or present perfect (*perfectum logicum*) is used to express that a past action is, in its relation to the present time, completely finished.

Mundus a Deo creatus est. Virtutem ne de facie quidem nosti. Disertissime Romuli nepotum, quot sunt, quotque fuere, M. Tulli! Fuimus Troes, fuit Ilium et ingens gloria Teucrorum. (The same as in English.)

2. The *historical perfect* (*perfectum historicum*) denotes a past event without any reference to the time of any other action. It is the English past tense.

Miltiades brevi tempore barbarorum copiis disiectis loca castellis idonea communit; multitudinem, quam secum duxerat, in agris collocavit crebrisque excursionibus locupletavit. Regulus in senatum venit, mandata exposuit; sententiam ne diceret recusavit; reddi captivos negavit esse utile.

§ 241.

The IMPERFECT is used, to denote a past action as existing at the same time with another past action.

1. The *imperfect* is especially used to denote by its *tense-form* the continuation of the action in past time.

Regulus Karthaginem rediit. Neque vero tum ignorabat, se ad exquisita supplicia proficisci; sed iusiurandum servandum putabat. Mos erat patrius Academiae adversari omnibus in disputando.

In the sentence, *Semper mos fuit Academiae adversari omnibus in disputando*, the duration in the past is also expressed, but by *semper*, not by the *tense-form fuit*.

2. To express that a past action was often repeated; to denote custom, manner or habit.

Ut Romae consules, sic Karthagine quotannis annui bini reges creabantur. Hortensius nullum patiebatur esse diem, quin aut in foro diceret aut medicaretur extra forum.

3. To narrate circumstances accompanying the principal action; to introduce descriptions, digressions, etc. The principal action stands in the *perfect*.

Caesar Alesiam circumvallare instituit. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summo, cuius radices duo duabus ex partibus flumina subleebant; ante id oppidum planities patebat; reliquis ex partibus colles oppidum cingebant.

Compare: *Aequi se in oppida receperunt murisque se tendebant. Conticuere omnes intentique ora tendebant.*

§ 242.

In *animated narration*:

1. The present indicative (historical present) is often used instead of the imperfect or the historical perfect.

Caesar ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naves, apportari iubet.

Ipse in Illyricum proficiscitur, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in locum convenire iubet.

2. The *present infinitive* (historical infinitive) is used instead of the imperfect in lively descriptions.

Nondum fuga certa, nondum victoria erat; tegi magis Romanus, quam pugnare; Volscus inferre signa, urgere aciem, plus caedis hostium videre quam fugae.

§ 243.

The **PLUPERFECT** is used, to express that a past action was already completed before another past action took place.

Pausanias eodem loco sepultus est, quo vitam posuerat.

1. In modifying clauses, the pluperfect is often used in Latin where we use the imperfect in English; as, *Verres quum rosam viderat tum ver incipere arbitratur* (when he saw). *Caesar quum in Galliam venisset (came), magna difficultate afficiebatur.*

2. In letters the perfect or imperfect is often used instead of our present, and the pluperfect instead of our perfect. The writer adapts his tenses to the time of the reader.

Nihil habebam quod scriberem; neque enim novi quidquam audieram, et ad tuas omnes epistolas rescripseram pridie, I have nothing to write; I have heard nothing; I answered all your letters yesterday. *Scripti ad te ante lucem*, I write. But, *Si vales, bene est; ego valeo. Maximi te semper et feci et facio.*

§ 244.

1. The **FUTURE** is used, to express that an action will be done at a future time: *omnes moriemur; cras Romam proficiscar.*

2. The *future perfect* is used, to express that a future action will have been completed before another future action. *Quum Romam venero, statim ad te scribam.*

3. In English the *present* is often used for the future and future perfect; and the *perfect* for the future perfect; but in Latin *that tense* must be used which corresponds exactly with the *time* in which an action is done. *Faciam, si potero*, if I can. *Ut sementem feceris (as you sow), ita metes.*

Naturam si sequemur ducem, nunquam aberrabimus. De Karthagine vereri non ante desinam, quam illam excisam esse cognovero. Qui Antonium vicerit, is bellum confecerit (conquers, finishes).

NOTE. Sometimes the future takes the place of the imperative. *Si quid novi acciderit, facies, ut sciam* (§ 265, 1).

§ 245.

Various *conjunctions* have in Latin an unmistakable influence on the choice of the tenses.

1. *Dum*, whilst, is generally used with the present.

In the meaning of *so long as*, *dum* is also followed by the imperfect or perfect.

Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est, equites Ariovisti propius accedere. Dum ea Romani parant consultantque, iam Saguntum summa vi oppugnabatur.

Catilina metuendus erat tam diu, dum urbis moenibus continebatur.

2. Conjunctions meaning *as soon as*, take the perfect indicative in a narration. They are: *simulac* or *simulatque*, as soon as; *posteaquam* or *postquam*, after; *ut, ut primum, ubi, ubi primum, quum, quum primum*, as, as soon as, when. In English we use the pluperfect and imperfect.

Simulac Verri occasio visa est, consulem deseruit. Postquam Xerxes in Graeciam descendit, Aristides in patriam restitutus est. Pompeius ut equitatum suum pulsum vidit, acie excessit. Ubi de Caesaris adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum miserunt.

1. The historical present is sometimes used instead of the historical perfect. *Quae ubi Romam nuntiantur, senatus extemplo dictatorem dici iussit.*

2. To express repeated actions, also in this case, the imperfect or pluperfect is used instead of the perfect; as, *Alcibiades simulac se remiserat, neque causa suberat, quare animi laborem perferret, dissolutus reperiebatur* (whenever, as soon as).

3. When clauses with these conjunctions refer to the present time, even then the perfect is used in Latin (the present in English). *Simulatque increpuit suspicio tumultus, artes illico nostras conticescunt. Quum fortuna reflavit, affligimur.* Likewise with *is qui* and words compounded with *cunq̄ue*. *Quocunq̄ue adspexisti (you look) tuas tibi occurrunt iniuriae, quas te respirare non sinunt.*

4. The conjunctions *simulac, postquam*, etc., require the future perfect when the thought refers to future time (§ 244, 3). *Me sapientia, simulatque ad eam confugero, in libertatem vindicabit.*

5. *Postquam*, later, after, when a long or definite space of time inter-

venes, so that there is no immediate succession of actions, takes the pluperfect; as, *Hannibal anno tertio, postquam domo profugerat, cum quinque navibus Africam accessit.*

§ 246.

SEQUENCE OR SUCCESSION OF TENSES (*consecutio temporum*). In intrinsically dependent clauses (§ 238, 7, c) the tense (of the subjunctive) depends upon the tense of the principal sentence. This dependence or succession of tenses (*consecutio temporum*) is regulated by the following rules:

1. If the *verb* of the *principal* sentence is in the present tense, or one of the futures, the verb in the *dependent* clause must be in the present, perfect or future (subjunctive); as,

Audio quid facias, quid feceris, quid facturus sis; audiam and audivero quid facias, feceris, facturus sis.

Quid est, Catilina, quod te iam in hac urbe delectare possit, in qua nemo est extra istam coniurationem perditorum hominum, qui te non metuat, nemo qui non oderit? Num, quae tempestas impendeat, vates melius coniiiciet, quam gubernator? Epicurus dicit, omnium rerum, quas ad bene beateque vivendum sapientia comparaverit, nihil esse iucundius amicitia. Morati melius erimus, quam didicerimus, quae natura desideret. Agamemnon non dubitat, quin Troia brevi sit peritura.

2. If the *verb* of the *principal* sentence is in the imperfect or pluperfect, the verb of the *dependent* clause must also be in the imperfect or pluperfect (subjunctive); as,

Audiebam, audiveram, quid faceres, fecisses, facturus esses.

Unum illud semper extimescebam, ne quid turpiter facerem vel iam fecissem. Libertas ut laetior esset, regis superbia fecerat.

3. If the *verb* of the *leading* sentence is a historical perfect (English past tense), the verb of the *dependent* clause must be in the imperfect or pluperfect (subjunctive).

Caesar audivit, quid Galli facerent, fecissent, facturi essent.

Regulus iuratus missus est ad senatum, ut, nisi redditi essent Poenis captivi nobiles quidam, rediret ipse Karthaginem.

4. Even if the *verb* of the *principal* sentence is in the perfect definite (present perfect), the *dependent* clause has the verb mostly in the imperfect or pluperfect, rarely in the present or perfect (subjunctive).

Audivi quid faceres, fecisses, facturus esses, seldom quid facias, feceris, facturus sis.

Haec, non ut vos excitarem, locutus sum, sed ut mea vox officio functa consulari videretur. Ad eamne rem vos delecti estis, ut eos condemnaretis, quos sicarii iugulare non potuissent? Membra utimur prius, quam didicimus, cuius ea utilitatis caruca habeamus (didicimus, i. e., scimus).

1. Clauses of purpose, interrogative and relative clauses are mostly always rendered by the imperfect and pluperfect (subjunctive) after a perfect definite. *Hoc dixi ut scires; rarely, ut scias.* But when a consequence or result is to be expressed, the present and perfect subjunctive are more common; because,

2. In clauses of consequence or result (with *ut*, so that, cfr. 249, 1, 2), the tense is entirely independent of the verb in the principal sentence. Therefore, in a clause of consequence, the tense is always that which would be used, if the clause were a leading sentence. *Verres Siciliam ita perdidit, ut ea restitui in antiquum statum non possit; even, Ardebat Hortensius cupiditate dicendi sic, ut in nullo unquam flagrantius studium viderim. In eam rationem vitae nos res ipsa deduxit, ut sempiternus sermo hominum de nobis futurus sit.* Compare: *Ita nati sumus, ut inter omnes esset societas quaedam* (object of our existence), and, *Ita nati sumus, ut inter omnes sit societas quaedam* (consequence of our existence).

3. A historical present may be followed by any tense of the subjunctive. *Helvetii legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, qui dicerent, sibi esse in animo iter per provinciam facere; rogare, ut id sibi facere liceat.*

4. If a clause be dependent on the infinitive, supine, gerund, participle, adjective or substantive, the verb of the clause must conform itself to the tense for which the infinitive, supine, etc., stand. *Cato mirari se aiebat, quod non rideret haruspex, haruspicem quum vidisset (= mirabatur). Miserunt Delphos consultum, quidnam facerent de rebus suis (= consuluerunt). Constitit rex, incertus, quantum esset hostium. Explicavi sententiam meam, et eo quidem consilio, tuum iudicium ut cognoscerem.*

5. A hypothetical thought, which, as leading or independent sentence, is stated in the imperfect subjunctive, always preserves the same tense, even when it is made to depend on a present or future. *Honestum tale est, ut vel si ignorarent id homines, sua tamen pulchritudine esset laudabile. Omnia sic erunt illustria, ut ad ea probanda totam Siciliam testem adhibere possem.*

6. The future subjunctive is often replaced by other forms:

a. The present or perfect subjunctive are used for either future when the reference to future time is already plain from some other future word in the sentence. *Affirmo tibi, hoc si mihi contingat (contigerit) magnopere*

me gavisurum. (Of course: *Affirmabam tibi, hoc si mihi contingeret [contigisset] magnopere me gavisurum.*) *Affirmo tibi, naturam si sequaris duces, nunquam te aberraturum* (not *si secuturus sis*).

b. If the verb has no future subjunctive (in the passive and in verbs without supine) a circumlocution with *futurum sit (esset) ut*, is employed whenever the future is not otherwise expressed. *Non dubito, quin futurum sit, ut huius te rei poeniteat.* *Non dubitabam, quin futurum esset, ut Pompeius a Caesare vinceretur.*

CHAPTER XL.

USE OF THE INDICATIVE.

§ 247.

I. The INDICATIVE is the mood of knowing and asserting.

1. The *indicative* is used, to express by a simple *assertion* that which is known.

Virtus manet, divitiæ pereunt. Veni, vidi, vici. Veniet hora mortis.

2. The *indicative* is used in such conditional sentences as are, in reality, positive assertions (without the least uncertainty, § 248, 3, c).

Si Deus est, sempiternus est.

3. The *indicative* is used in *direct questions* which require a positive answer.

Suntne miseri, qui mali sunt? (Ans., Sunt). Infelix est Fabricius, quod rus suum fodit? (Ans., Non est).

II. The Latin makes use of the *indicative* where the English idiom has the *potential* form, as follows:

1. I must, should, could, would, might; it would be just, right, useful, necessary, better, difficult, etc., are rendered in Latin by the indicative present, when they are not accompanied by a conditional clause.

Possum persequi multa oblectamenta rerum rusticarum, sed ea ipsa, quæ dixi, sentio fuisse longiora. Animadvertendum est diligentius, quæ natura rerum sit, (we) must consider more attentively.

Longum est, it would take too long; *difficile est*, it would be difficult, too difficult.

2. I should have, could have, would have, ought to have, it would have been right, are put in the imperfect or perfect (also pluperfect) indicative. This occurs when there is a question of events which did not take place, but which should have taken place.

Contumeliis onerasti eum, quem patris loco colere debebas, whom you *should have* (ought to have) honored, but did not. *Perturbationes animorum poteram morbos appellare; sed non conveniet ad omnia. Aut non suscipi bellum oportuit aut geri pro dignitate populi Romani et perfici quam primum oportet. Plato philosophos ne ad rem publicam quidem accessuros putat, nisi coactos; aequius autem erat, id voluntate fieri.*

a. In a similar manner, *arbitrabar*, I would, should have thought; *nunquam putavi*, I would never have believed. *Ingenii magni est non committere, ut aliquando dicendum sit: Non putaram.*

b. The participle in *urus* takes *eram* and *fui*, even when a conditional clause is added. *Aratores agros relicturi erant, nisi Metellus litteras misset* (they would have left). *Hos viros testes citaturus fui, si tribuni me triumphare prohiberent* (I should have).

8. With *paene* and *prope*, nearly, almost, the perfect indicative is used in Latin, where, in English, the potential mood is generally used. *Brutum non minus amo, quam tu; paene dixi, quam te* (I might almost say, I had almost said). *Prope oblatus sum, quod maxime fuit scribendum.*

4. *Pronouns* and *relative adverbs* made general by being *doubled*, or by assuming the suffix *cunq̄ue*, take the indicative.

Quisquis, whosoever; *quotquot*, how many soever; *quamquam*, although; *quicunq̄ue*, *quantuscunq̄ue*, *quocunq̄ue*, *utcunq̄ue*, *ubicunq̄ue*, etc.

Quidquid in me est exultarum virium, tibi debetur. Virtutem qui adeptus erit, ubicunq̄ue erit gentium, a nobis diligetur. Quoscunq̄ue de te queri audivi, quacunq̄ue ratione potui placavi.

5. The *disjunctive* conditional clauses, with *sive* — *sive*, be it — be it, whether — or, have the *indicative* in Latin.

Mala et impia consuetudo est contra deos disputandi, sive ex animo id fit, sive simulate. Veniet tempus mortis et quidem celeriter, et sive retractabis, sive properabis; volat enim aetas.

CHAPTER XXI.

USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

§ 248.

The *subjunctive* is the mood of *desire, supposition, possibility and doubt*. Whatever we express by the subjunctive, we do not maintain nor assert, but we wish or suppose it, we consider it possible or doubtful.

I. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

1. The *subjunctive* is used :

a. To express a *wish* (*coniunctivus optativus*) ; as, *Sis felix*, may you be happy !

Valeant cives mei ; sint incolumes, sint florentes, sint beati ; stet haec urbs praeclara mihiq̄ue patria carissima ! Curio causam Transpadanorum aequam esse dicebat ; semper autem addebat : Vincat utilitas rei publicae. Potius diceret (should have said) non esse aequam, quia non utilis esset rei publicae. Quod dubitas, ne feceris. Ne sim salvus, si aliter scribo ac sentio.

b. To express an *entreaty* or a *command* mildly (*coniunctivus hortativus*) ; as, *Oremus*, let us pray !

The negative particle with the optative and hortative subjunctive is *non* (not *non*).

Imitemur maiores nostros ; meminerimus, etiam adversus infimos iustitiam esse servandam ! Ne credamus vanis opinionibus.

1. To express the wish more forcibly, *utinam* is joined to the subjunctive (§ 254, 1) ; with an entreaty the subjunctive stands alone.

2. In asseverations, the first person of the subjunctive is often found ; as, *Sollicitat, ita vivam, me tua valetudo*, as I live, your state of health troubles me. *Ita vivam, ut maximos sumptus facio.*

2. The *subjunctive* is used to express *concession* or *supposition* (*coniunctivus concessivus*).

Ut is often added to this subjunctive ; negative particle, *ne* (§ 249, 3 and 250, 1).

Naturam expellas furca, tamen usque recurret. Fuerint cupidi, fuerint irati, fuerint pertinaces: sceleris vero crimine, furoris, parricidii, liceat On. Pompeio mortuo, liceat multis aliis carere.

3. The *subjunctive* denotes *possibility* and *doubt*. It is used :

a. To express a *judgment* in a milder form, not as a thing *that is*, but *that may be* (*coniunctivus potentialis*); the negative particle is *non*.

The perfect in the potential subjunctive has often the same force as the English present; and the imperfect in Latin is always used where in English we employ the pluperfect potential.

Roges me, *qualem deorum naturam esse dicam; nihil fortasse respondeam. Forsitan quaeratis, qui iste terror sit et quae tanta formido. Omnibus fere in rebus, quid non sit, citius, quam quid vi, dixerim.*

Crederes, you would have believed; putares, diceres. Isti mirandum in modum (canes venaticos diceret) ita odorabantur omnia et peruestigabant.

b. In *doubtful questions*, called also questions of appeal (*coniunctivus dubitativus*); negative particle, *non*.

It is either a subjunctive of *wavering purpose* (akin to the *coniunctivus hortativus*); as, *quo fugiam?* Whither shall I flee? or a subjunctive of *doubtful possibility* (like the potential subjunctive).

*Quo me vertam? quid faciam? quod auxilium implorem?
Quem vocet divum (= deorum) populus auxilio?*

Quis dubitet, quin in virtute divitiae sint? Ego tibi irascerer, mi frater? ego tibi possem irasci? ego te videre noluerim? Putaresne (would you have believed) unquam accidere posse, ut mihi verba deessent?

Here also the imperfect is used, as under a.

c. In *conditional clauses* that are *uncertain* and *unreal* (*coniunctivus hypotheticus* or *condicionalis*); negative particle, *non*.

In hypothetical sentences, the present and perfect subjunctive represent the supposition as *possible* though uncertain (not at all improbable); the imperfect and pluperfect represent it as *contrary to fact* (unreal) both in the leading sentence and dependent clause. The former is the potential subjunctive, the latter the hypothetical subjunctive.

Aequabilitatem vitae servare non possis, si aliorum virtutem imitans omittas tuam. Nunquam Hercules ad deos abisset, nisi

eam sibi viam virtute munivisset. Si constitueris, te cupiam advocatum in rem praesentem esse venturum, atque interim graviter aegrotare filius coeperit: non sit contra officium, non facere, quod dixeris. Si Roscius has inimicitias cavere potuisset, viveret.

The present and perfect subjunctive serve particularly to introduce an example as illustration. Sometimes conditional sentences are expressed by the indicative with *si*, etc.; as, *Si valet, bene est. Nunquam laboris, si te audies* (§ 247, I, 2). *Velim*, I should wish (and really do wish); *vellem*, I should have wished (under certain circumstances, but actually I do not wish).

§ 249.

II. THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CONJUNCTIONS.

Ut, ne, quin, quominus, and quo,
And licet, quasi, dummodo,
And o si, ac si, modo, dum,
With quamvis, utinam, and quum
 (Whene'er the cause it does denote)
 Must go with the subjunctive mode.

O si and *utinam* are not properly conjunctions, but rather particles expressing a wish. They stand only in principal sentences.

Ut governs the subjunctive:

1. When it means *that, in order that*, to express purpose.
2. When it means *so that*, to express a result or consequence (§ 275).
3. When it means *though, although*, to express a supposition or concession (§ 248, 2).

Esse oportet, ut vivas, non vivere, ut edas. Tanta vis probitatis est, ut eam etiam in hoste diligamus. Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas.

§ 250.

1. **Ne** governs the subjunctive, and means:

- a. *That not, in order that not, lest*, to denote purpose.
- b. *Though not*, to denote a supposition (§ 248, 2).

Nemo prudens punit, quia peccatum est, sed ne peccetur. Ne sit (though pain may not be) *summum malum dolor, malum certe est.*

Instead of *ne*, we often find *ut ne*, especially with *quia, quid. Iustitiae primum munus est, ut ne cui quis noceat.*

2. *That not* is rendered by *ut non* :

- a. When it expresses simply a *result* or *consequence*.
- b. When the negative particle *non* belongs only to *one* word of the sentence.

Quis est tam miser, ut non dei munificentiam senserit? Tunc Catilinam exire patiēre, ut abs te non emissus ex urbe, sed immisus in urbem esse videatur?

When two negative clauses of purpose are joined together, the second is connected by *neve* (= *et ne* ; *neque* = *et non*). *Hoc te rogo, ne demittas animum, neve te obrui magnitudine negotii sinas.*

3. After verbs of fearing, *that* is rendered by *ne*, and *that not* by *ut*.

Here the dependent clause is conceived as a wish, and the *thing wished* or *desired* is expressed by *ut*, with the subjunctive ; the thing which is *not wished*, by *ne*. We find also *ne non* for *ut*.

Words of fear are, *timeo, metuo, vereor*, I fear ; *timor, metus*, the fear ; *periculum est*, there is danger ; also, *caveo*, I am on my guard ; *terreo* and *deterreo*, I deter.

Timebam, ne evenirent ea, quae acciderunt. Omnes labores te excipere video ; timeo, ut sustineas. Animi conscientia improbi semper sunt in metu, ne aliquando poena afficiantur. Adulatores si quem laudant, vereri se dicunt, ut illius facta verbis consequi possint.

1. *That not* must be expressed by *ne non* (never *ut*) : (1) when *vereor, timeo*, etc., are preceded by *non* ; (2) when the negation belongs only to a *single* word of the sentence.

Non vereor, ne tua virtus opinioni hominum non respondeat. Veremur, ne forte non aliorum utilitatibus, sed propriae laudi servisse videamur. Vereor dicere, I hesitate to say ; non vereor dicere, I do not hesitate to say ; these are nearly the same as non dubito dicere (§ 252, II).

2. The *future* is never used after verbs of fearing. *I fear that he will come*, must be translated, *Timeo, ne veniat* (not *venturus sit*). *Timebam, ut veniret*, I feared that he would not come (not *venturus esset*). The tenses after verbs of fearing are the present and imperfect subjunctive.

§ 251.

Quo, as conjunction (= *ut eo*), governs the subjunctive :

1. When it means *that by which, that by this means, in order that*.

2. In the expression *non quo*, not as if, and *non quo non*, not as if not; *non quod* is also used for *non quo*, and *non quod non* for *non quo non*, or if a negation precedes, *non quin*.

In funeribus a Solone sublata est celebritas virorum ac mulierum, quo lamentatio minueretur. Legem brevem esse oportet, quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur.

Non soleo temere disputare contra Stoicos; non quo illis admodum assentiar; sed pudore impedior. De consilio meo ad te, non quo celandus esses, nihil scripsi; sed quia communicatio consilii quasi quaedam admonitio videtur esse officii. Non tam ut proximis causis elaborare soleo, quam ut ne quid obsim; non quin enitendum sit in utroque; sed tamen multo est turpius oratori, nocuisse causae, quam non profuisse.

Also: *non eo quo, non idcirco quod*, not because, not as if on that account.

§ 252.

I. **Quin** can be used only after *leading negative* sentences; it governs the subjunctive, and is used for:

1. *Qui non*, or *quod non*, who not, or that not.
2. *Ut non*, that not, but that, without.

Est fere nemo quin acutius atque acrius vitia in dicente, quam recta videat (there is scarcely any one that does not see). *Nihil est, quin male narrando possit depravari. Quis est (= nemo est) quin cernat, quanta vis sit in sensibus?*

Hortensius nullum patiebatur esse diem, quin aut in foro diceret aut meditaretur extra forum (on which he did not speak, § 260, note 2). *Nunquam tam male est Siculis, quin aliquid facere et commode dicant. Nunquam accedo, quin abs te abeam doctior* (but I depart).

Instead of *quin* we may say *qui non, quod non* or *ut non*; the feminine *quae non* is nearly always retained: as, *Nulla tam detestabilis pestis est, quae non homini ab homine nascatur.*

II. **Quin** is used after negative expressions implying doubt, uncertainty, omission and the like (*quin non*, that not). The English is *that* or *to*.

Non dubito quin, I do not doubt that; *non dubium est, quin*, there is no doubt that; *non multum abest quin*, not much is wanting that; *non (via,*

aegre) *abstineo quin*, I cannot (can hardly) refrain from; *praetermittere non possum*, or *facere non possum quin*, I cannot avoid, or I cannot help (doing).

Homines etiam quum taciti quid optant, non dubitant, quin dii illud exaudiant. Dubitandum non est, quin nunquam possit utilitas cum honestate contendere. Prorsus nihil abest, quin sim miserrimus. Facere non possum, quin quotidie litteras ad te mittam. Non possumus recusare, quin alii a nobis dissentiant.

But when (*non*) *dubito* signifies I (do not) hesitate, scruple, it generally takes the infinitive. *Non dubito sapientem solum dicere beatum.* Likewise, *dubito num*, I doubt whether; *dubito utrum—an*, whether—or. *Dubito an* is also used, but in an affirmative sense, while *dubito num* is generally used in a negative sense. (Cfr. § 176, note 3, d.)

§ 253.

Quominus (that thus the less = *ut eo minus*) that not, governs the subjunctive and is used after verbs of hindering, opposing, and the like.

Impedire, prohibere, officere, obstare, to hinder, to prevent; *obstistere*, to oppose; *deterrere*, to deter; *recusare*, to refuse.

Aetas non impedit, quominus agri colendi studia teneamus usque ad ultimum tempus senectutis. Isocrati, quominus haberetur summus orator, non officit, quod infirmitate vocis ne in publico diceret, impediretur. Quid obstat, quominus Deus beatus sit?

Instead of *quominus* we may use *ne*, and if a negation precedes, *quia*. *Impedior animi dolore, ne de huius miseria plura dicam. Prohibere* very often takes the infinitive. *Non ignobilitas sapientem beatum esse prohibebit* (cfr. § 269).

§ 254.

Utinam expresses a wish, Oh, that! Oh would that! It is used with the present or perfect subjunctive when the fulfilment of the wish is conceived as possible; and with the imperfect and pluperfect when impossible. (*O si*, if only.)

Utinam modo conata efficere possim! Utinam illud ne verberaberem! Utinam ego natus non essem!

O mihi praeteritos referat si Iuppiter annos!

2. *Quasi, ac si, tamquam, velut, velut si*, as if, govern the subjunctive. The *tense* depends upon that of the *principal* verb (§ 246).

Stultissimum est, in luctu capillum sibi evellere, quasi calvitio maeror levetur. Sequāni absentis Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrebant.

3. **Dummodo** (whilst only) *if only, if but*, or simply *dum*, or *modo*, governs the subjunctive. When joined with a negation, it becomes *dummodo ne, dum ne, or modo ne* (for the *tense*, cfr. § 248, 3, c).

Nonnulli recta omnia et honesta negligunt, dummodo potentiam consequantur. Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium et industria. Sit summa in iure dicundo severitas, dummodo ea ne varietur gratia, sed conservetur aequabilis. Mediocritas (in puniendo) placet Peripateticis, et recte placet; modo ne laudarent iracundiam.

4. *Nedum*, not to say, not to mention — that (or *ne* alone) governs the subjunctive.

Vix in ipsis tectis frigus vitatur; nedum in mari et in via sit facile abesse ab iniuria temporis.

5. *Quamvis (quantumvis, quamlibet)* and *licet*, although, however much, govern the *subjunctive*.

Licet is used only with the present or perfect.

Quod turpe est, id quamvis occultetur, tamen honestum fieri nullo modo potest. Licet ipsa vitium sit ambitio, frequenter tamen causa virtutum est.

Quamquam, although, governs the indicative (§ 247, 4). *Etsi* and *etiāsi* follow the construction of *si* (§ 248, 3, c). Sometimes *quamquam* and *etsi* have the meaning of meanwhile, nevertheless, still (§ 172).

§ 255.

1. **Dum, donec, quoad**, with the meaning of *whilst, as long as*, govern the *indicative*; with the meaning of *until*, they govern the *subjunctive*, when the sentence expresses a *purpose*; the *indicative*, when it simply states an *actual fact*.

Cato, quoad vixit, virtutum laude crevit. Iratis aut subtrahendi sunt ii, in quos impetum conantur facere, dum se ipsi colligant; aut rogandi orandique sunt, ut, si quam habent ulciscend

vim, differant in tempus aliud, dum defervescat ira. Ea vero continebis, quoad ipse te videam. Epaminondas ferrum usque in corpore retinuit, quoad renuntiatum est, vicisse Boeotios.

In narration, several writers use *donec* in the sense of *as long as*, with the imperfect subjunctive.

2. *Antequam* and *priusquam*, before, take the imperfect and pluperfect in the *subjunctive* only; the perfect in the *indicative* only; the *present* either in the *indicative* or *subjunctive*.

Aristides interfuit pugnae navali apud Salamina, quae facta est, priusquam poena exsilii liberaretur. Saepe magna indoles virtutis, priusquam rei publicae prodesse potuisset, exstincta fuit. Civitas Atheniensium antequam delectata est hac laude dicendi, multa iam memorabilia effecerat. Priusquam incipias, consulto, et ubi consulueris, mature facto opus est. Antequam de re publica dicam, exponam breviter consilium protectionis meae.

§ 256.

I. **Quum** governs the *subjunctive* in four instances:

1. *Quum*, denoting *cause*, in the sense of *since* (*quum causale*).

Quum sint in nobis consilium, ratio, prudentia, necesse est, deos haec ipsa habere maiora. Quum Athenas sis profectus, inanem redire turpissimum est.

2. *Quum*, denoting *concession*, though, although (*quum concessivum*).

Hoc ipso tempore, quum omnia gymnasia philosophi teneant, tamen eorum auditores discum audire quam philosophum malunt. Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, quum divitissimus esse posset.

3. *Quum*, denoting *opposition*, though, whilst (*quum adversativum*).

Homines quum multis rebus infirmiores sint, hac re maxime bestiis praestant, quod loqui possunt. Nostrorum equitum erat quinque millia numerus, quum hostes non amplius octingentos equites haberent.

4. *Quum*, in *narration* (*quum narrativum*), governs the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive in the sense of *when*, to express the connection between historical facts.

Epaminondas quum vicisset Lacedaemonios apud Mantineam atque ipse gravi vulnere exanimari se videret, quaesivit, salvus esset clipeus.

II. **Quum** (*cum*) governs the *indicative* also in four cases :

1. *Quum*, denoting *time* merely (*quum temporale*), in the sense of when, while, and determining the time of an event ; it is often preceded by *tum, eo die, eo tempore*.

Regulus tum, quum vigilando necabatur, erat in meliore causa, quam si domi periurus consularis remansisset. Ligarius eo tempore paruit, quum parere senatui necesse erat. Quum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui, alterius Sequani.

2. *Quum*, denoting *repetition* (*quum iterativum*), as often as, as soon as.

Qui non defendit iniuriam neque propulsat a suis, quum potest, iniuste facit. Quum recte navigari poterit, tum naviges. Quum ver esse coeperat, dabat se Verres labori atque itineribus.

3. *Quum*, denoting *coincidence* (*quum additivum*), when, while ; in the *apodosis*, it adds something unexpected to a previously mentioned circumstance.

In such cases, *quum* takes the perfect in a *narration*, but the imperfect in *descriptions*. The *protasis* is usually in the imperfect or pluperfect and rendered more forcible by *vix, aegre, iam, nondum* ; and the *apodosis* with *quum*, strengthened by *interea, repente, subito*. *Quum* is often equivalent to *et tum*.

Evolarat iam e conspectu fere fugiens quadriremis, quum etiamtum ceterae naves uno in loco moliebantur. Hannibal iam scalis subibat muros Locrorum, quum repente patefacta porta Romani erumpunt (historical present for perfect).

4. *Quum*, explanatory (*explicativum*), takes the present and perfect indicative in the sense of *eo quod*, in as much as, while.

If this *quum* is connected with an *imperfect* or *pluperfect* it governs the subjunctive.

De te, Catilina, quum quiescunt, probant ; quum patiuntur, decernunt ; quum tacent, clamant. Praeclare facis, quum Luculli memoriam tenes. Catulus cepit magnum suae virtutis fructum, quum omnes una prope voce "in ipso vos spem habituros esse" dixistis.

NOTE. Sometimes, however, notwithstanding the above rules, the subjunctive, particularly the imperfect and pluperfect, occurs: *Quum is tu duci debitorem vidissent, undique conuolabant* (as often as).

§ 257.

III. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES.

1. *Relative clauses* require the subjunctive when they express: a. an effect or consequence; b. an intention or purpose.

The relative is then equivalent to *ut* with a demonstrative; thus, *qui* = *ut ego, ut tu, ut is*; *cuius* = *ut mei*, etc.; *cui* = *ut mihi*, etc.; also, *ubi* = *ut ibi*, *unde* = *ut inde*.

Innocentia est affectio talis animi, quæ noceat nemini. Nulla gens tam fera, nemo omnium tam immanis est, cuius mentem non imbuerit deorum opinio. Non sumus ii, quibus nihil verum esse videatur, sed ii, qui omnibus veris falsa quaedam adiuncta esse dicamus.

Multi eripiunt aliis, quod aliis largiantur. Homini natura rationem dedit, qua regerentur animi impetus. Verba reperta sunt, non quæ impedirent, sed quæ indicarent voluntatem.

Non sum is consul, qui nefas esse arbitrer, Gracchos laudare.

Too great to (greater than that) is *maior quam ut*; however *maior quam qui* may be used, but always with the subjunctive. *Famae ac fidei damna maiora sunt, quam quæ aestimari possint. Maior sum, quam cui possit fortuna nocere.*

§ 258.

2. After *dignus, indignus, aptus* and *idoneus* the English infinitive is rendered by *qui* with the subjunctive (§ 223, 288).

Qui modeste paret, videtur dignus esse, qui aliquando imperet. Academici mentem volebant rerum esse iudicem: solam censebant idoneam, cui crederetur. Nulla mihi videbatur aptior persona, quæ de senectute loqueretur, quam Catonis.

§ 259.

3. The *relative clause*, when it expresses a reason or cause, takes the subjunctive; *qui* is then equivalent to *quum ego, quum tu*, etc.

O fortunate adolescens, qui (= quum tu) virtutis tuæ Horto

rum praeconem inveneris! O magna vis veritatis, quae contra hominum calliditatem facile se per se ipsam defendat!

§ 260.

4. *Relative clauses* require the subjunctive whenever the *relative* refers to an *omitted*, or to a *negative* or *interrogative* word; especially after those general and indefinite expressions: *est qui, sunt qui* (there are men who), *inveniuntur* or *reperiuntur qui*; *nemo est qui*; *non est* or *nihil est quod*; *quis est qui?* *quid est quod?* etc.

The relative clause here specifies the class referred to by the indefinite subject. The word *talis* or *eiusmodi* may be supplied here.

Sunt, qui una animum et corpus occidere censeant. Qui se ultro morti offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam qui dolorem patienter ferant. Nemo est orator, qui se Demosthenis similem esse nolit. Nullum est animal praeter hominem, quod habeat notitiam aliquam dei. Quis est, qui non oderit proterviam adolescentiam? Quae latebra est, in quam non intret metus mortis? Quotusquisque est, qui optimi cuiusque hominis auctoritatem magni putet? Non est, quod te pudeat sapienti assentiri. Quid est, cur virtus ipsa per se non efficiat beatos? Nihil habeo, quod accusem senectutem (I have no reason why).

1. When a substantive or a numeral is added to *sunt* the indicative may be used. *Multi sunt, qui dicunt* or *dicant*.

2. After negative expressions the imperfect is used in Latin where in English the pluperfect is generally used. *Polyerati nihil acciderat, quod nollet* (that he would not have wished). *Nemo inventus est tam impudens, qui istud postularet* (that would have asked).

§ 261.

5. *Relative clauses* take the *subjunctive* when they express the *thought* or *opinion* of *another* (not the opinion of the author).

The use of *quod*, because, with the subjunctive is common in such clauses.

Recte Socrates execrari eum solebat, qui primus utilitatem a iure seiunxisset. Aristides nonne ob eam causam expulsus est patria, quod praeter modum iustus esset? Socrates accusatus est, quod corrumperet iuventutem et novas superstitiones indu-

ceret. *Bene maiores nostri accubitionem epularem amicorum, quia vitae coniunctionem haberet, convivium nominarunt.*

NOTE.—*Hic quum Hannibalis permissu exisset de castris, rediit paulo post, quod se oblitum nescio quid diceret, instead of quod oblitus esset; often also with dicere, putare, arbitrari, etc.*

§ 262.

6. All subordinate relative clauses require the subjunctive when they form an essential part in the statement of a thought expressed by the infinitive or the subjunctive.

Grave est homini pudenti petere aliquid magnum ab eo, de quo se bene meritum putet. Socrates dicere solebat, omnes in eo, quod scirent, satis esse eloquentes. Tanta in Hortensio memoria erat, ut, quae secum commentatus esset, ea sine scripto iisdem verbis redderet, quibus cogitavisset.

1. In a similar manner, the subjunctive is used, not only in relative clauses, but also in other dependent clauses, especially in the indirect discourse (*oratio obliqua*) (cfr. § 277, 3).

2. Sometimes relative clauses are joined to an infinitive or subjunctive clause, without being essential parts of the same, but are rather inserted parenthetically, and may be omitted without destroying the sense. But then the indicative is used. *Caesar Helvetios in fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti iussit.* When Caesar continues: *Per exploratores certior factus est, ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discessisse,* he considers, as reports of the scouts, only the words, *ex ea parte vici omnes noctu discesserunt.* But the indicative is often retained when the relative clause is only an explanation or circumlocution for a single word; as, *ii qui audiunt*, for *auditores*; *ii qui praesunt*, higher magistrates; *ea quae importantur*, exports; *ea quae scimus*, our knowledge.

§ 263.

IV. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

In indirect questions the verb is always in the *subjunctive* (§ 176, note 2).

Dubito, num idem tibi, quod mihi, suadere debeam? (Direct: *Num suadere debeo?*) *Non recordor, unde ceciderim, sed unde surrexerim?* (*Unde cecidi? unde surrexi?*) *Quaeritur, naturā an doctrinā possit effici virtus? Saepe ne utile quidem est scire, quid futurum sit. Qualis sit animus, animus ipse nescit.*

Incertum est, quo te loco mors exspectet. Permultum interest, utrum perturbatione aliqua animi, an consulto fiat iniuria. Sitne malum dolor, necne, Stoici viderint.

NOTE 1.—Questions in the indicative mood are always to be considered as direct questions, though they may seem to be indirect. *Dic quaeso: Num te illa terrent, triceps Oerberus, Cocyti fremitus, traxectio Acherontis?* It might be, *Dic quaeso, num te illa terreant*, etc. *Vide! Quam conversa res est.*

NOTE 2.—Expressions like *nescio quis*, *nescio quomodo*, are sometimes used parenthetically, and do not imply a question; then, the indicative is, of course, retained. *Minime assentior iis, qui istam nescio quam indolentiam magnopere laudant. Sed nescio quomodo inhaeret in mentibus quasi saeculorum quoddam augurium futurorum.* In a similar way, expressions like *mirum quantum*, *nimum quantum*, are often equivalent to *plurimum* (wonderfully much), and then have the indicative. *Id mirum quantum (plurimum) profuit ad concordiam civitatis. Sales in dicendo nimum quantum valent.* But, of course: *Id mirum est quantum profuerit ad concordiam.*

NOTE 3.—*Indirect questions* must be carefully distinguished from *relative clauses*. The former are always transformed from direct questions; the latter always admit a demonstrative with the relative. *Elige, utrum tibi commodum sit*, choose which of the two is suitable to you. When you are in *suspense* about that which is really comfortable or suitable: *Utrum tibi commodum est, elige*; for, *id elige*, choose that which is suitable when you are no longer in suspense, but are sure of that which is suitable. So also: *Dic, quid sentias*, say what you think (give your opinion); *dic, quod sentis*, say what (that which) you think. *Nihil est in (Q. Maximo) admirabilius, quam quo modo mortem filii tulit*; i. e., *quam is modus quo tulit.*

NOTE 4.—Sometimes two questions are converted into one. *Considera, quis quem fraudasse dicatur* (who and whom?). *Quaerere debetis, uter utri insidias fecerit* (which of the two to the other).

CHAPTER XLII.

USE OF THE IMPERATIVE.

§ 264.

1. THE IMPERATIVE expresses a *command* (prayer, advice, or exhortation).

2. If the command is to be executed *immediately*, the imperative *present* is used; if *at a later time*, the *future* imperative.

3. The *future* imperative is used especially in maxims, rules of conduct, legal phrases and contracts.

Si quid in te peccavi, ignosce. Vale! vive felix! Ignoscito saepe alteri, nunquam tibi. Cras petito, dabitur; nunc abi. Quum valetudinis tuae rationem habueris, habeto etiam navigationis. Consules summum ius habent; nemini parento, illis salus populi suprema lex esto.

1. Always: *scito, scitote*, know (never *sci* or *scite*); thus also, *memento, mementote*.

2. To soften the expression, the imperative is often followed by *quasso*, *quaesumus*, I, we, pray; *sis* (*si vis*, § 141, note) *sodes* (*si audies me*), if you please; *dum*, well. *Refer animum, sis, ad veritatem. Agedum* or *agitedum*, well, come on! *iteradum*, please, repeat.

3. In animated discourse the imperative takes sometimes the place of a conditional clause. *Iracundus non semper iratus est; lacesse, iam videbis furentem* (= *sed si eum lacessiveris*) provoke him, and you will soon see. (Never *et* in Latin.)

§ 265.

A *prohibition* or *negative command* is, in the language of the law and of poets, expressed by *ne* with the imperative; in ordinary prose always by *noli* with the infinitive.

Hominem mortuum in urbe ne sepelito neve urito. Tu ne cede malis, sed contra audentior ito. Nolite putare homines consceleratos terreri Furiarum taedis ardentibus. Noli oblivisci, te Ciceroni esse. Nolite ul velle, quod fieri non potest.

1. Instead of *noli* with the infinitive, *cave* with the subjunctive or *ne* with the subjunctive or *non* with the future may be used. *Cave festines*, do not hurry; *ne feceris* (seldom *ne facias*), do not do it; *non facies*, do not do it. Poets say: *fuge quaerere* instead of *noli quaerere*.

2. Other paraphrases of the *imperative* are: *fac animo forti sis*, be of good cheer; *fac ut valeas*, farewell! *fac ne quid omittas*, do not forget anything; *cura ut valeas*, take care of your health.

CHAPTER XLIII.

USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

§ 266.

THE INFINITIVE is used partly as *subject*, partly as *object*. *Irasci non decet*, to get angry is not becoming; *peccare nolo*, I do not wish to sin.

Bene sentire recteque facere satis est ad bene beateque vivendum. *Invidere non cadit in sapientem*. *Docto et erudito homini vivere est cogitare*.

Vincere scis, Hannibal; victoria uti nescis. *Spartae pueri rapere discunt*. *Magistri te Latine loqui docuerunt*. *Beatus esse sine virtute nemo potest*. *Cato esse, quam videri, bonus malebat*. *Cives Romani omnia perpeti parati erant*.

1. When the *subject* of the *infinitive* is added, it is always in the *accusative*. *Deum esse*, that a God exists; *Caesarem venire*, that Cæsar comes.

2. When a *predicate noun* is added, this also is always in the *accusative*, if the infinitive itself is the *subject* of the sentence: *Deum esse sapientissimum facile intelligitur*. But, if the infinitive be the *object*, the *predicate noun* is put in the *nominative* case when it refers to a *nominative*, but in the *accusative* case, when it refers to an *accusative*; as, *Caesar Romae primus esse voluit*, Cæsar wished to be the first at Rome (because *primus* refers to *Caesar*); but, *Caesar se Romae primum esse voluit* (because *primum* refers to *se*), Cæsar wished that he (himself) should be the first at Rome (cfr. § 192, 3).

3. The infinitive as *object* with the *predicate noun* in the *nominative*, provided both members have the *same subject*, follows the verbs *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *cupio*, *scio*, *disco*, *statuo*, *decerno*; also, *audeo*, *studeo*, *incipio*, *pergo*, *desisto*, *consuesco*, etc., (§ 269).

4. In the best prose only one adjective, *paratus*, ready, takes the infinitive. But the poets, imitating the Greek idiom, make the infinitive follow many other adjectives; as, *cedere nescius, cantare peritus, avidus committere pugnam*, etc.

§ 267.

The *infinitive* with its *subject* in the *accusative* forms what is called the *accusative* with the *infinitive* (*accusativus cum infinitivo*).

This construction drops the English *that*, puts the *subject* in the accusative case and the *verb* in the infinitive mood. *Esse*, and verbs with the double nominative, likewise take the predicate noun in the accusative (cfr. § 192).

Deum esse (that there is a God) *certum est*. Deum esse bonum *scimus omnes*. *Putavi, te hoc dicere, dixisse, dicturum esse, dicturum fuisse* (that you said, had said, would say, would have said).

1. The *phrase* expressed by the accusative with infinitive is considered as *one thought* or idea, and sometimes as *object* for the accusative, sometimes as *subject* for the nominative; also for any other case, though more rarely.

2. When the subject is an *indefinite person*, the subject accusative is omitted; as, *Contentum esse suis rebus, maximas sunt certissimaque divitiarum* (to be satisfied, etc.). *Hesiodus eadem mensura reddere iubet* (that one should return), *qua acceperis, aut etiam maiore, si possis*.

§ 268.

The *accusative* with the *infinitive* is the *object* of verbs of perceiving and saying (*verba sentiendi* and *dicendi*), to express that something *exists* or *happens*.

They are: *video, audio, sentio, animadverto, opinor, puto, credo, iudico, censeo, suspicor, perspicio, comperio, intelligo, scio, nescio, ignoro, meminī, recordor, obliviscor, disco, accipio, spero, despero, concludo*; also, *dico, narro, trado, prodo, nego, fateor, scribo, doceo* (I teach, assert), *nuntio, affirmo, declaro, ostendo, demonstro, perhibeo, promitto, polliceor, minor, simulo, dissimulo*. The expression, *aliquem certiore facio*, and nouns like *opinio, spes, nuntius*, etc., with or without a verb (*habere, excitare, capere, afferre*, etc.).

When these verbs are used in the passive voice, the *accusative* with *infinitive* becomes of course the *subject*. *Humana omnia caduca esse facile intelligitur*.

*Lapidum conflictu atque tritu elici ignem videmus. Ego no-
ntilem quidem arbitror esse nobis futurarum rerum scientiam.
Tantum quisque laudat, quantum se posse sperat imitari. Plato-
nem ferunt (= dicunt) primum de animorum aeternitate sensisse
idem, quod Pythagoram (scil. sensisse ferunt). Concede, nihil
esse bonum, nisi quod honestum sit; concedendum est, in virtute
sola positam esse beatam vitam. Aristoteles docet, Orpheum
poëtam nunquam fuisse (§ 198, 1).*

1. *Persuadeo*, I convince, takes the accusative with infinitive; but *per-
suadeo*, I persuade, has *ut*. *Pater persuasit mihi, hoc verum esse*, and *per-
suasit mihi, ut hoc facerem*. The former shows that something *exists* or
takes place; the latter, that something *should* take place. *Censeo*, I be-
lieve, has only the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Aristoteles omnia
moveri censet*. But *censeo*, I advise or resolve, when followed by the
active, always takes *ut*; however, when followed by the *passive*, it has the
accusative with the infinitive joined to the participle in *ndus*. *Senatus
censuit, ut Caesar Aeduos defenderet. Ceterum censeo, Karthaginem esse
delendam*. Several of the above verbs take *ut* according to the above
distinction; as, *Philosophia nos docuit, ut nosmet ipsos nosceremus*. Com-
pare, *Scriptis mihi, licere sibi venire*, and, *ut liceret sibi venire*.

2. After the verbs, to hope, swear, promise, threaten (*sperare, iurare,
polliceri, promittere, spondere, vovere, minari, minitari*), the *present infini-
tive* is generally used in English, to express an action done by the *same
subject*; but, in Latin, the accusative with future infinitive, must be
used (§ 244, 8). *Spero me mox reditum esse*, I hope to return soon, or,
that I shall soon return. Likewise, *spero, te mox reditum*. *Pollicetur
(iurat), se hoc facturum esse*, he promises to do it. *Milites minantur, se
esse abituros*, threaten to depart. Concerning the reflexive, see § 238, 7.
The omission of the reflexive, as well as the use of the present infinitive,
is rare; as, *Pollicentur obsides dare*, instead of *se dituros esse*; but, in
the meaning, to believe, *spero* takes sometimes the *present* or *perfect*. *Te
mihi et esse amicum spero et semper fuisse* (§ 274, 4, note).

3. It is said of Pythagoras that he had come, is rendered in Latin,
Pythagoram dicunt (tradunt, ferunt) venisse (never, *de Pythagora dicunt
eum venisse*). Achilles of whom it was believed that he was the son of a
goddess; or, who was, as people believed, the son, is, in Latin, *Achilles,
quem putabant esse deae filium. Cicero, quem scimus patrem patrias
nominatum esse. Brutus, cuius patrem esse Caesarem dicebant. Errare te
verisimile est, you probably err. Patrem spero mox reditum esse.
Ciceronem constat eo tempore consulem fuisse, Cicero was, as is well
known, etc. Quo cruciatus censemus Dionysium illum angustatum? The
same with *puto, videor*.*

4. *Ha, she, it, his*, etc., in connection with the accusative and infinitive, are always rendered by *sui, sibi, se, suus*, when the pronoun refers to the subject of the *principal* sentence. *Ariovistus dicebat, nominem sine sua pernicie secum contendisse* (§ 238, 7, c.)

§ 269.

The *accusative* with the *infinitive* is the *object* of such verbs as denote a *wish*, or *permission*, and their contraries (*verba voluntatis*).

These verbs are, *volo, nolo, malo, cupio, studeo; iubeo, veto, prohibeo; cogo, sino, patior*. But *opto, postulo, peto, permitto, concedo*, etc., prefer *ut* (§ 275, 1).

1. When *both members* have the *same subject*, the infinitive alone is more generally used with *volo* and *malo* (§ 266, 3). *Prohibeo* takes also *quominus* (§ 258).

Ego me Phidiam esse malle, quam vel optimum fabrum lignarium. Mos est hominum, ut nolint eundem pluribus rebus excellere. Aristoteles versum in oratione vetat esse, numerum iubet. Hortensius nullum patiebatur esse diem, quin aut in foro diceret aut meditaretur extra forum. Germani vinum ad se importari omnino non sinunt.

2. *Iubeo te audire*, I command you to hear; *iubeo te audiri*, I command (others) to hear you. *Vetuit eum venire*, he forbade him to come; *vetuit eum ligari*, he forbade (others) to bind him. But when *iubeo* is followed by a passive, it has the meaning, to suffer, to cause; as, *Iussit eum occidi*, he caused him to be killed, ordered him to be killed. This may also be rendered by the simple *occidit eum*. *Archipiratam securi percussit* (cfr. § 281, 3, note).

3. But, *impero tibi, ut hoc facias*; however, with the passive, *impero hoc fieri*; *imperavit eum interfici*, seldom *ut interficeretur*.

4. *Volo, nolo, malo*, also take the subjunctive without *ut*; *malo te sapiens hostis metuat, quam stulti cives laudent*.

§ 270.

The *accusative* with *infinitive* is used as **SUBJECT** in three cases:

1. With many *impersonal verbs*:

Apparet, elucet, constat, fugit me, o, ortus (opus est, necesse est), decet, dedecet, licet, placet, convenit, iuvat, conducit, expedit, interest; refert (piget, pudet, poenitet, taedet).

Leges ad salutem civium inventas esse constat. Narrationem oportet tres habere res, ut brevis, ut aperta, ut probabilis sit. A deo necesse est mundum regi. Omnibus bonis expedit salvam esse rem publicam. Ut equos ad cursum, aves ad volatum, sic homines apparet natos esse ad cogitandum.

2. With *neuter adjectives* and *est*:

Apertum est, manifestum est, perspicuum est, verum est, verisimile est, par est, aequum est, rectum (pulchrum, iustum, honestum, grave, facile, difficile, iniquum, molestum, etc.) est.

Aliud est iracundum esse, aliud iratum. Scipio nihil difficilius esse dicebat, quam amicitiam usque ad extremum vitae diem permanere.

3. With *substantives* and *est*:

Tempus est, facinus est, scelus est, magna laus est, opinio est, spes est.

Facinus est vinciri civem Romanum. Tempus est nos de illa perpetua iam, non de hac exigua vita cogitare.

1. *Necesse est, oportet* and *licet* may, instead of the accusative with infinitive, also take the subjunctive without *ut*. *Necesse est hoc facias* or *te hoc facere*.

2. When *licet* has the person in the *dative*, then the predicate noun of the infinitive is also in the *dative*. *Licuit esse otioso Themistocli. Mihi negligenti esse non licet.*

3. *Interest* and *refert* may also have *ut* instead of the accusative with infinitive. *Magni mea interest, ut te videam.*

§ 271.

The *accusative* with *infinitive* is used as an *indirect* or more remote *object* with verbs of *emotion* and *feeling* (*verba affectuum*).

Such verbs are: *gaudeo, laetor, glorior, miror, admiror, doleo, angor, sollicitor, indignor, queror, aegre (moleste, graviter) fero*. *Quod* may be used instead of the accusative with infinitive (cfr. § 276).

Gaudeo, id te mihi suadere, quod ego mea sponte feceram. Minime miramur, te tuis praeclaris operibus laetari. Virtutes noli vereri ne querantur, se esse relictas.

§ 272.

The *accusative* with *infinitive* is used as an *expression* of *astonishment* or *complaint*; or as an *impassioned question* (sometimes *ne* is appended).

Me non esse cum bonis! I not to be on the side of the good!
Ita comparatam esse hominum naturam, aliena ut melius videant et diiudicent, quam sua! Tene hoc dicere, tali prudentia praeditum!

Ut is similarly used. *Tu ut unquam te corrigas!* That you should ever amend! With the infinitive, *credibile est*, may be understood; and *postulandum est*, with *ut*.

§ 273.

1. The *Nominative* with the *Infinitive*. The passives, *videor*, *dicor*, *putor*, *iubeor*, *sinor*, *vetor*, *perhibeor*, *arguor*; as also, *traditur*, *fertur*, *feruntur*, are, in good prose, always used personally and construed with the nominative and infinitive (§ 192, 4, 5).

Hoc fecisse dicor, they say that I have done this (not, *dicitur me hoc fecisse*); *hoc fecisse diceris*; *hoc facere iussus sum*; *tu hoc dixisse perhiberis*.

2. In the same way, are often construed, *nuntior*, *existimor*, *iudicor*; sometimes also, *negor*, *memoror*, *scribor*, *cognoscor*, *perspicior*, *intelligor*, *audior*, *demonstror*, *ostendor*, *reperior*; still the latter more commonly have the *impersonal* construction, together with accusative and infinitive.

Non ita generati a natura sumus, ut ad ludum et iocum facti esse videamur. Romulus *Amulium regem interemisse fertur.* Luna *solis lumine collustrari putatur.* *Lycurgi temporibus* Homerus *fuisse traditur.* Tyndaridae *fratres non modo adiutores in proeliis, sed etiam nuntii victoriae fuisse perhibentur.* *Non fecisti, quod facere iussus es.* *Acta agere vetamur vetere pro-verbio.*

1. The *impersonal* construction and the accusative with infinitive of the verbs under No. 1 is very rare. *Dicitur, eo tempore matrem Pausaniae vixisse.* It should, however, be used when both the principal verb and the infinitive are formed by means of a participle. Hence, *Athenae conditas esse putantur*; but only, *Athenas conditas esse putatum or putandum est.*

2. But if, after a sentence personally construed with *dicitur*, *videtur*, etc., the *infinitive* construction is continued in several successive sentences, the accusative with the infinitive must be used in the latter. *Ad Themistoclem quidam doctus homo accessisse dicitur eique artem memoriae pollicitus esse se traditurum.* *Quum ille quaesisset, quidnam illa ars efficere posset, dixisse illum doctorem, ut omnia meminisset.* *Et ei Them-*

stoclem respondiisse, *gratius sibi illum esse facturum, si se obliuiscit, quas uellet, quam si meminisse docuisset.*

8. *Consiliis, ut videmur (it seems), bonis utimur.*

§ 274.

The different *tenses* of the infinitive are used in Latin as in English. However, the following peculiarities must be remarked :

1. The *present, perfect, or future infinitive* is used after any tense of the principal sentence, according as *the time to be expressed* is present, past, or future, with regard to the action of the principal sentence.

Dicunt (*dicent, dixerint*) *eum* venire, *uenisse, venturum esse*, that he comes, has come, will come. Dicebant *eum* venire, *uenisse, venturum esse*, that he was coming, had come, would come; also, dicunt or *dicebant eum venturum fuisse*, he would have come.

2. With *memini*, I remember, past events which *I have witnessed* are often expressed by the *present infinitive*.

Memini, *Catonem mecum et cum Scipione* disserere. *Metellum* memini *puer bonis esse uiribus extremo tempore aetatis (dissererat; erat).*

3. Instead of *hoc fieri uol'*, I wish this to be done, we often find, *hoc factum (esse) uolo*, I would like to have this done.

4. Many verbs have *no supine* and hence also no infinitive future, active or passive; then the circumlocution *futurum esse ut* or *fore ut* is used. This is also common with other verbs; as, *Scio, futurum esse (or fore), ut omnes hoc discant*, or *ut hoc ab omnibus discatur*, I know that all *will learn* this, that *this will be learned* by all.

Video, te uelle in coelum migrare, et spero, fore, ut contingat id nobis. Clamabant homines, fore, ut ipsi sese dii immortales ulciscerentur. Plerique existimabant, futurum esse, ut oppidum amitteretur.

The infinitives *posse, uelle, nolle, malle*, are generally used as future infinitives without *fore ut*. *Spero, me hoc perficere posse.*

§ 275.

It is not always easy to determine when the English "*that*" is to be expressed in Latin by the accusative with infinitive, or

by the subjunctive with *ut* or *quod*. We, therefore, add a few rules on the use of *ut* and *quod*.

The word *that* must be rendered by *ut* in two instances (§ 249).

1. When *that* denotes a purpose, and is equivalent to *in order that*.

A purpose is contained in verbs and expressions which signify to advise, cause, beg, exhort (warn), strive, obtain; *suadeo, præcipio, mando; facio, officio, perficio; oro, rogo, precor, postulo, opto*, also *permitto* and *concedo; moneo, hortor, commoveo; nitior, contendo, peto, curo, operam do, id ago; impetro, assequor, adipiscor*, etc.

Idcirco amicitiae comparantur, ut commune commodum mutuis officiis gubernetur. Temperantia sedat appetitiones et efficit, ut hae rectae rationi pareant. Impetrabis a Caesare, ut tibi abesse liceat et esse otioso. Natura fert, ut eis faveamus, qui eadem pericula, quibus nos perfuncti sumus, ingrediantur. Magnopere te hortor, ut orationes meas studiose legas. Omne animal se ipsum diligit et id agit, ut se conservet. Phaëton optavit, ut in currum patris tolleretur. Qui stadium currit, eniti debet et contendere, ut vincat.

2. When *that* denotes a consequence, or is used after words which contain the particle *so* or *such*, it must be rendered by *ut*; *as, ita, sic, eiusmodi, adeo, tantopere, tantus, talis, tam* and *is = talis*.

A consequence or result is expressed by *fit* (future infinitive, *fore*), *accidit, contingit, evenit*, it happens, occurs (= *efficitur*); also by, *restat, relinquitur, reliquum est, superest, sequitur, proximum est, extremum est, prope est, longe abest, lex est, mos est* or *moris est, consuetudo est; hac lege, hac condicione*.

Talis est ordo actionum adhibendus, ut omnia in vita sint apta inter se et convenientia. Fieri potest, ut recte quis sentiat et id, quod sentit, polite eloqui non possit. Plerisque accidit, ut praesidio litterarum diligentiam in perdiscendo remittant. Temporibus persaepe evenit, ut utilitas cum honestate certet. Restat, ut doceam, omnia, quae sunt in hoc mundo, hominum causa facta esse. Reliquum est, ut certemus officiis inter nos. Vetus est lex illa iustae veraeque amicitiae, ut idem amici semper valiant.

1. Especially in short sentences *ut* (*ne*) is sometimes omitted. *Cave ignoscas*, do not forgive; *fac animo forti sis* or *ut sis*; *sine te exorem* (§§ 265, 2, 269, 4; 270, 3, 1).

2. REMARK: *Tantum abest ut . . . ut*, to be so far from . . . that. *Tantum abest, ut nostra miremur, ut nobis non satisfaciat ipse Demosthenes*, we are so far from admiring our own productions that even Demosthenes does not satisfy us. *Philosophia tantum abest, ut digne laudetur, ut a multis etiam vituperetur*, far from being praised by all, philosophy is even blamed by many.

3. *Efficere*, in the sense of, to prove, generally takes the accusative with infinitive; but sometimes also, *ut*. *Pluto efficit, animos hominum esse immortales*.

4. With a passive infinitive, we say, *Plato a Deo aedificari mundum facit*, Plato assumes that the world is built by God. But the active participle is also used after *facio* in the same case. *Xenophon Socratem disputantem facit*, he makes Socrates maintain, introduces Socrates as maintaining. Likewise with deponents, *Quas est Socratis oratio, qua Plato eum facit usum apud iudices!*

§ 276.

That is expressed by *quod* in four cases:

1. After *est* with a noun, *quod* is used to signify the *fact that*, the *circumstance that*.

In fabrica mundi nihil maius est, quam quod ita coheret, ut nihil cogitari possit aptius. Magnum beneficium est naturae, quod necesse est mori.

2. *Quod* is placed at the beginning of sentences with the meaning, *if, that*.

Quod nos in Italiam salvos venisse gaudes, perpetuo gaudeas velim. Quod me Agamemnonem aemulari putas, falleris.

3. When the conjunction *that* is explanatory and refers to a preceding demonstrative, *quod* is used.

Hoc uno praestamus vel maxime feris, quod exprimere dicendo sensa possumus. Qui benigniores sunt, quam res patitur, in eo peccant, quod iniuriosi sunt in proximos.

4. *Quod* is used, when the conjunction *that* denotes a reason or cause, especially after verbs of *feeling* or *emotion*, and after words which give outward expression to feeling. It is therefore generally equivalent to *because* (§ 271).

Quod is used after verbs which give outward expression to feeling:

such as, *accuso, reprehendo, vituperō, gratias ago, gratulor, laudo, damno*; also, *indignor, misereor*.

Cato mirari se aiebat quod non rideret haruspex, haruspicem quum vidisset. Quod spiratis, quod vocem mittitis, quod formas hominum habetis, indignantur. Praeclare in epistola quadam Alexandrum filium Philippus accusat, quod largitione benevolentiam Macedonum consecetur. Magna diis immortalibus habenda est gratia, quod hanc pestem effugimus. Gratulor tibi, quod te provincia decedentem summa laus prosecuta est.

1. However, after the verbs of feeling the accusative with infinitive is also used (§ 271).

2. *Nisi quod, praeterquam quod*, unless, except that.

3. *Acedit quod*, but also *acedit ut*, in addition, moreover.

§ 277.

ON THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE (ORATIO OBLIQUA).

The indirect discourse, is that which in form and conception is made to depend on some other idea. *Tu venisti*, you have come, is direct discourse (*oratio recta*); *dico te venisse*, I say that you have come, is indirect discourse. However, by indirect discourse is commonly meant the narrative or historical form of a previously spoken discourse. For this latter the following rules will hold.

1. All *leading sentences* of the *direct discourse* that express a narration or assertion, are, in the *oratio obliqua*, put in the *accusative* with *infinitive*.

2. The *leading sentences* of the *direct discourse* that express a command, wish or question, are, in the *oratio obliqua*, put in the *subjunctive* imperfect (pluperfect).

3. All *dependent clauses* are, in the *oratio obliqua*, expressed by the *subjunctive* (imperfect or pluperfect).

4. The *pronouns* of the first person in the *direct discourse* become, in the *oratio obliqua*, *reflexive pronouns* (*sui, sibi, se, suus*, seldom *ipse*) § 238, 7, c.

The *second person* of the direct discourse becomes, in the *oratio obliqua*, generally *ille*, sometimes *is*; the *third person*, on the contrary, generally *is*, sometimes *ille*.

In consilio Aeduorum Dumnorix dixerat, sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri (oratio recta. mihi referetur). Consules

scripta ad Caesarem mandata remittunt, quorum haec erat summa: Caesar in Galliam reverteretur, Arimino excederet, exercitus dimitteret (oratio recta, revertere, excede, dimitte). Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: "Si quid ipsi (for sibi) a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse; si quid ille se vellet, illum ad se venire oportere. Praeterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere, quas Caesar possideret, neque exercitum sine magno comaeatu in unum locum contrahere posse; sibi autem mirum videri, quid in sua Gallia, quam bello vicisset, aut Caesari aut omnino populo Romano negotii esset."

1. Sometimes the form of a question is used instead of the negative form, then the accusative with infinitive is used. *Tribuni militum nihil temere agendum existimabant; "quid enim esse levius aut turpius, quam auctore hoste de summis rebus capere consilium?"* as much as, *nihil enim esse levius.*

2. Relative clauses are, in the *oratio obliqua*, expressed by the accusative with infinitive when *qui* stands for *et is*, *unde* for *et inde*, etc. *Res deferitur, esse civem Romanum, qui se Syracusis in lautumias fuisse quereretur; quem iam ingredientem navem retractum esse et asservatum (for et eum).*

3. When the indirect discourse depends on a *historical present*, the present subjunctive may be used instead of the imperfect subjunctive (§ 246, note 8). But in the course of a long, indirect discourse, the present subjunctive is also allowed, by way of exception, after a *historical perfect*.

CHAPTER XLIV.

USE OF THE PARTICIPLES.

§ 278.

1. PARTICIPLES are adjectives in form and inflection, but they govern the case of their verb.

2. Some *perfect passive participles* have, besides the *passive*, also an *active* meaning:

cenatus, dined, and one that has dined.

iuratus, sworn, and one that has sworn.

potus, drunk, and one that has drunk.

pransus, breakfasted, and one that has breakfasted.

NOTE.—The perfect participles passive of some verbs, especially intransitives, have become simple adjectives, but with an active meaning. Thus, *consideratus*, deliberate; *profusus*, extravagant, lavish; *falsus*, false, deceitful. Of intransitives, *adultus*, grown up; *concretus*, dense (grown together); *coniuratus*, conspiring; *consuetus*, accustomed; *deflagratus*, burned down; *nupta*, married; *obsoletus*, obsolete; *praeteritus*, past. *Adultus sum*, I am grown up; *adolevi*, I have grown up.

3. Many perfect participles of deponent verbs have, besides the active, also a passive meaning; as,

Comitatus (accompanying and accompanied), *complexus*, *confessus*, *dimensus*, *ementitus*, *expertus*, *interpretatus*, *meditatus*, *pactus*, *partitus*, *populatus*, *testatus*.

4. Many perfect participles of deponent and eni-deponent verbs are used with the meaning of a present participle. Thus, always *ratus* and *solitus* (never *rens*, seldom *solens*); often, also *fluens*, *diffusus*, *veritus*; sometimes, *ausus*, *gavisus*, etc. *Caesar veritus, ne hostes effugerent, duas legiones, in armis excubare iubet.*

5. The perfect participle passive of some verbs, with *habeo*, *mihi est*, *teneo* is often used as a more forcible expression for the perfect indicative active.

Siculi meam fidem spectatam iam habent et diu cognitam (spectaverunt, cognoverunt). Statutum iam habeo, quid mihi agendum putem. Senatum inclusum in curia habuerunt (they kept). Mihi Siculorum causa suscepta est.

Mihi persuasum est or *persuasum habeo* (never *mihî*), I am convinced.

§ 279.

1. Participles are used far oftener in Latin than in English; they often take the place of *relative* and of *subordinate* clauses.

2. There are two kinds of participial constructions.

a. The *attributive*, when the participle is an attribute or in apposition to some word of the principal sentence.

b. The *absolute*, when the participial sentence does not refer to any word of the principal sentence, hence altogether independent of the principal sentence (§ 283).

3. The *attributive* participial construction is thus arranged: The relative or the conjunction is omitted; the finite tense is changed into the corresponding participle, and is made to agree in gender, number, and case, with the word to which it refers.

§ 280.

1. The *participle* supplies the place of a *relative clause* (for *qui, quae, quod* with a finite tense).

Est enim lex nihil aliud, nisi recta et a numine deorum tracta ratio, imperans honesta, prohibens contraria (i. e. *quae imperat, prohibet*). *Misericordia est aegritudo ex miseria alterius, iniuria laborantis. Pater filio vitam dedit perituram; sunt divitiae certae, perpetuo mansurae. Pisistratus Homeri libros, confusos antea, sic disposuisse dicitur, ut nunc habemus.*

2. When the *relative* in English has a *demonstrative* for its antecedent, the latter must be omitted in the participial construction (§ 281, 4, note 1).

Verum dicentibus facile credam, I shall easily believe those that tell the truth (never iis verum dicentibus). Male parta male dilabuntur. Imperaturus omnibus eligi debet ex omnibus.

§ 281.

The *participle* takes the place of an *adverbial clause*. The participle is then equivalent to a conjunction.

1. *Present participle*—equivalent conjunctions, *while, when*.

Ego recreavi afflictos animos bonorum, unumquemque confirmans, excitans (i. e. *dum confirmo, excito*). *M^p. Curio, ad focum sedenti* (i. e. *dum sedet*) *magnum auri pondus Samnites quum attulissent, repudiati sunt. Mundum efficere moliens deus terram primum ignemque iungebat* (i. e. *quum moliretur*).

2. *Perfect participle*—equivalent conjunctions, *after, when*.

Dionysius tyrannus, Syracusis expulsus, Corinthi pueros docebat (i. e. *postquam expulsus est*). *Pleraque scribuntur orationes, habitae iam, non ut habeantur* (*postquam habitae sunt*). *Hostes, hanc adepti victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victores confidebant* (i. e. *quum adepti essent*).

3. *Final participle* (expressing purpose) only in the future active or passive—equivalent conjunctions, *in order that, in order to*.

Ad prima signa veris Hannibal in Etruriam ducit, eam quoque gentem aut vi aut voluntate adiuncturus (i. e. *ut adiungat*).

*Alexander Hephæstionem in regionem Bactrianam misit, com-
meatus paraturum (i. e. ut or qui pararet).*

Demus nos *philosophiæ excolendos patiamurque sanari (i. e. ut excolamur)*. *Antigonus Eumenem mortuum propinquis eius sepeliendum tradidit. Hi ossa eius in Cappadociam ad matrem deportanda curarunt (i. e. ut sepeliretur, ut deportarentur).*

The use of this future participle passive is very common, especially with *dare, tradere, mandare, mittere, relinquere, proponere, accipere, conducere, locare*, and, in particular, *curare*; as, *Fabricius perfugam reducendum curavit ad Pyrrhum* (took care to have him brought back; caused him to be led back).

4. Sometimes the participles of all the three tenses may be resolved into *if* (conditional participle), *because* (causal participle), *although* (concessive participle).

Non potestis, voluplate omnia dirigentes (i. e. si dirigitis), aut tueri aut retinere virtutem. Quis potest, mortem metuens (i. e. si metuit), esse non miser? Ne mente quidem recte uti possumus, cibo vinoque completi (quum completi sumus). Dionysius tyrannus, cultros metuens (i. e. quia metuebat) tonsorios, candente carbone sibi adurebat capillum. Risus interdum ita repente erumpit, ut eum cupientes (i. e. quamvis cupiamus) tenere nequeamus. Herculem Germani, ituri (i. e. quum ituri sunt) in proelium, canunt.

1. If the participle takes the place of a *conjunction* (but not of a relative, § 280, 2), the demonstrative may be retained. *Quid posset iis esse lactum, exitus suos cogitantibus (i. e. si cogitarent).*

2. The verbs *to see* and *to hear* have three kinds of construction: 1. *Vidi eum currere*, I saw that he ran. 2. *Vidi eum quum curreret*, I saw him, when, as, while he ran. 3. *Vidi eum currentem*, I saw him running. So also: 1. *Audivi eum dicere*, I heard that he said. 2. *Audivi eum quum diceret*, I heard him when, or, as he said. 3. *Audivi eum dicentem*, I heard him saying.

§ 282.

Besides the above participial sentences, we may add:

1. The *copulative participle*, the participle equivalent to *and*.

Grues, quum loca calidiora petentes mare transmittunt, trianguli efficiunt formam (i. e. petunt et transmittunt). Sunt andera, quas infixæ coelo non moventur (i. e. quæ infixæ sunt et

non moventur). *Manlius Torquatus Gallum in conspectu duorum exercituum caesum torque spoliavit* (i. e. *cecīdit et*).

2. The *negative participle* (i. e., the participle with a negation) is very often equivalent to *without* (and a participial noun).

Epicurus non erubescens (without blushing) *omnes voluptates nominatim prosequitur*. *Nihil feci iratus, nihil impotenti animo, nihil non diu consideratum et multo ante meditatatum* (without having considered), cfr. § 283, note 2.

Without, and a participial noun, is sometimes expressed by *ut non*. *Multi malunt existimari boni viri, ut non sint* (without being such), *quam esse, ut non putentur*. If another *negation* precedes, *quin* may be used for *ut non* (§ 252).

3. The *substantive participles*. The passive participle is often used in Latin where the English idiom requires a participial noun, or a verbal noun with *of*.

Lacedaemoniis nulla res tanto erat damno, quam disciplina Lycurgi, cui per septingentos annos assueverant, sublata (as the abolishing of the constitution). *Poenā violatae religionis* (of violating) *iustam recusationem non habet*. *Homerus fuit et Hesiodus ante Romam conditam* (before the building of Rome). *Ab oppugnanda Neapoli Hannibalem absterruere* *conspecta moenia*, Hannibal was deterred from besieging Naples by the sight of the walls.

1. In a similar way, the participle is to be translated, when modifying the *predicate* of a sentence. *Omne malum nascens facile opprimitur; inveteratum fit plerumque robustius*, every evil is easily checked in the beginning (at its birth); it generally grows stronger by age. *Qui erant cum Aristotele, Peripatetici sunt dicti, quia disputabant inambulantes in Lyceo*, because they had discussions on their walks in the Lyceum. Also, *Valet apud nos clarorum hominum et bene de re publica meritorum memoria, etiam mortuorum* (even after their death, § 286).

2. Many of the participial clauses in § 281 can be translated by verbal substantives with prepositions.

§ 283.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE (*ablativus absolutus* or *consequentiae*).

1. The attributive participial construction, instead of the adverbial clause, can be used only when *some* word of the *principal* sentence is the *subject* of the *clause*. The subject of the

clause must occur in some form or other in the principal sentence, not, however, necessarily as subject.

2. But when the *subject* of the dependent *clause* does *not* occur at all in the principal sentence, the absolute participial construction, i. e., *ablative absolute* is used.

The construction of the ablative absolute consists in omitting the conjunction (when, whilst, etc.) and putting the subject of the dependent clause with its predicate in the ablative. If the predicate is a verb, it is put in the corresponding participle ; the copula is rejected.

Tarquinio regnante *Pythagoras in Italiam venit* = *quum Tarquinus regnaret*, when or whilst Tarquin was king, in or during the reign of Tarquin. *Mortuo Traiano Hadrianus imperator factus est* = *postquam Traianus mortuus est*, after or when Trajan had died, after the death of Trajan.

Maximas virtutes iacere omnes necesse est, voluptate dominante (= *quum* or *si voluptas dominatur*). *Reluctante naturā irritus labor est* (= *si natura reluctatur*). *Artes innumerabiles repertae sunt, docente naturā*. *Pietate adversus deos sublata fides etiam et societas generis humani et una excellentissima virtus, iustitia, tollitur*. *Regibus exterminatis libertas in re publica constituta est*. *Causā morbi inventā medici curationem esse inventam putant*. *Perditis rebus omnibus tamen ipsa virtus se sustentare potest* (= *etiamsi res omnes perditae sunt*).

1. The conjunctions, *quamquam* and *etsi*, are sometimes retained by the side of the ablative absolute ; as, *Augustus Neapolim traiecit, quamquam morbo variante*.

2. When the perfect participle requires *ab eo, a se*, to complete the sense, it is better translated by the active ; as, *Antonius, repudiata* (i. e., *a se*) *sorore Octaviani, Cleopatram uxorem duxit*, Antony, the sister of Octavius, having been put away (by him), etc., or, Antony having put away the sister, etc. ; or, after Antony had put away —, he married. But *ab eo, a se* must *never* be expressed after the participle. *Xerxes, res Persarum, terror ante gentium, bello in Graecia infeliciter gesto, etiam suis contemplui esse coepit*. *Natura dedit usuram vitae, tamquam pecunias, nulla praestituta die, without determining the day (limit), § 282, 2.*

3. Sometimes a whole clause takes the place of a subject-ablative. *Alexander, audito Darium movisse ab Ecbatani, fugientem insequi pergit*. i. e., after he had heard ; strictly, after it had been heard, that Darius had

moved, etc. Such isolated ablative participles are especially, *audito*, *cognito*, *comperto*, *nuntiato*, *edicto*, *explorato*. *Auspicato*, after taking the auspices; *inauspicato*, without taking the auspices; *summoto*, after room had been made.

§ 284.

Instead of a *participle* various substantives and adjectives may be used in the construction of the *ablative absolute*.

1. *Verbal substantives* which denote the *acting person*; as, *dux*, *comes*, *adiutor*, *auctor*, etc.; thus, *naturā duce* = *quum natura dux est*, when nature is the guide, under the guidance of nature; *patre comite*, in the company of the father; *deo adiutore*, with the help of God; *auctore Caesare*, upon the advice of Cæsar.

2. *Substantives* describing a person according to age, dignity or office; as, *puer*, *iuvenis*, *senex*, *rex*, *consul*, *praetor*, *dictator*; thus, *me puero* = *quum ego puer essem*, in my boyhood; *te adolescente*, in thy youth; *Cicerone consule* = *quum Cicero consul esset*; *Romulo rege*.

3. *Adjectives*: *deo propitio* = *si deus propitius est*, with God's mercy; *invitā Minervā*, against the will of Minerva (without skill); *coelo sereno*, with a clear sky, when the sky is clear; *patre ignaro*, without the father's knowledge.

Quod affirmate et quasi deo teste promiseris, id tenendum est. Sapientia praeceptrice in tranquillitate vivi potest.

Caninio consule scito neminem prandisse; nihil eo consule mali factum est. Eius orationis epilōgus tanto in honore, pueris nobis, erat, ut eum etiam edisceremus.

Romani Hannibale vivo nunquam se sine insidiis futuros arbitrabantur. Sereno quoque coelo aliquando tonat. Nonne simillimis formis saepe dispares mores sunt et moribus simillimis figura dissimilis est?

CHAPTER XLV.

USE OF THE ERUND.

§ 285.

1. The *gerund* is, in form, the neuter of the future participle passive in the four oblique cases. It has, however, always an *active meaning* and *governs the case* of its verb.

2. When the verb governs the *accusative*, the gerund is generally changed into the future participle passive, the accusative is put into the case of the gerund, while the gerund itself becomes participle future passive, and agrees with the object-noun in gender, number and case.

Thus, instead of *consilium condendi urbem*, we generally say: *consilium condendae urbis*, the plan for building a city; instead of *tempus accommodatum demetendo fructus*, generally: *demetendis fructibus*, the season suitable for gathering fruits; instead of *ad levandum fortunam* only *ad levandam fortunam*. The change has always to be made when the *gerund* is connected with a *preposition*.

1. The participle in *ndus* of the intransitives, *utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, is used in the same way. *Ad perfrundas voluptates* instead of *ad perfrundum voluptatibus*. But in the nominative it is used impersonally: *Utendum est viribus*, not *utendas sunt vires*, one must use his strength. *Suo cuique consilio utendum est*. But: *Omnia bona utenda ei ac possidenda tradidit*.

2. Sometimes the gerund with an accusative remains unchanged; always, when the accusative is a *neuter pronoun*; as, *studium illud videndi*, not *illius videndi*, because it would be doubtful, whether *illius* stands for *illum* or *illud*. Moreover, only, *cupiditas plura cognoscendi*. But even where there is no ambiguity this construction is found, however, only when the gerund is in the genitive or dative, or in the ablative without preposition.

§ 286.

The *genitive* of the gerund is used in answer to the question *what kind, of what*, after substantives and adjectives which

govern the genitive (§ 210, 2; 213). Thus, *ars dicendi*, the art of speaking, oratory, like *ars orationis*; *cupidus regnandi*, desirous of ruling (*cupidus regni*).

The substantives most common with this construction are: *ars, causa, consilium, consuetudo, cupiditas, difficultas, facultas, genus, libido, modus, occasio, potestas, ratio, scientia, spes, studium, tempus, vis, voluntas*. Especially frequent is the ablative *causā* with the gerund in *dī* to denote a purpose (for the sake of): *regnandi causā, venandi causā* (also *gratiā*). For adjectives of this kind see § 218.

Ut quisque optime dicit, ita maxime dicendi difficultatem pertimescit. Male fecisti, quod cum spe vincendi simul abiicisti certandi cupiditatem. Nihil Xenophonti tam regale videtur, quam studium agri colendi. Vestis frigoris depellendi causa reperta est. Pythagoreorum more exercendae memoriae gratia, quid quoque die dixerim, audierim, egerim, commemoro vesperi.

Epaminondas studiosus erat audiendi. Multae res oratorem ab imperito dicendi ignaroque distinguunt. Multi propter gloriae cupiditatem cupidi sunt bellorum gerendorum.

1. We often find, *Eius mos est omnibus adversari (ut adversetur)*, in answer to the question, What is his custom? (*adversari*, subject; *mos*, predicate). But, *mos omnibus adversandi turpis est*, in answer to, What kind of custom? Likewise, *tempus est, consuetudo est, consilium est*.

2. Remark, *me, te, se, nos, vos conservandi causa*, to save me, thee, etc.; or, *mei, tui, etc., conservandi causa*, in which construction *conservandi* is never put in the feminine or in the plural. *Regina sui conservandi causa urbem reliquit* (not *conservandae*). *Principes sui conservandi causa profugerunt. Nostrī conservandi causa urbe excessimus*.

3. Sometimes a genitive plural is found with the genitive of the gerund. *Agitur, utrum Antonio facultas detur agrorum suis latronibus condonandi, for agros condonandi, or agrorum condonandorum*.

4. Sometimes the genitive of the gerund is used with or without *esse*, to express purpose or tendency. *Naves deiciendi operis*, ships (built, used) for the destruction of the work. *Haec prodendi imperii Romani, tradendae Hannibali victoriae sunt*.

§ 287.

The dative of the gerund, in answer to the question, *to whom, for whom?* is used especially in three cases:

1. With the adjectives, *utilis, idoneus, aptus, habilis, bonus, commodatus, par*, and their contraries.

Aqua nitrosa utilis est bibendo (better, *ad bibendum*). *Ver tanquam adolescentiam significat ostenditque fructus futuros; reliqua tempora demetendis fructibus et percipiendis accommodata sunt.*

2. With the verbs, *praeesse, operam dare, laborem impertire, diem dicere, locum capere, satis esse*, also *esse* alone, in the sense of, to serve, to be suitable.

However, instead of the dative of the gerund, it is more usual to put the accusative with *ad*, especially after adjectives (§ 288, 1), or else a clause of purpose with *ut* or *qui* (§ 258).

Tunc, Eruci, praeesse agro colendo flagitium putas? Neque mihi licet neque est integrum, ut meum laborem hominum periculis sublevandis non impertiam.

3. The dative of the gerund also stands after certain official names, to denote their object (*for what?*); e. g., *triumvir coloniae deducendae*, a triumvir for leading away a colony.

Decemviros legibus scribendis creavimus. Valerius consul comitia collegae subrogando habuit.

Solvendo non est, he is not able to pay; *scribendo adfuit*, he was present at the writing (as a witness).

§ 288.

The *accusative* of the gerund is used only after some prepositions:

1. Very frequently after *ad*, to denote *tendency* or *purpose*.

2. Sometimes with *in*; seldom with *ob*, *inter*; still more rarely with *ante*, *circa*.

Ut ad cursum equus, ad arandum bos, ad indagandum canis, sic homo ad duas res, ad intelligendum et ad agendum natus est. Breve tempus aetatis satis longum est ad bene beateque vivendum. Natura animum ornavit sensibus, ad res percipiendas idoneis. Ipsa utilitatis magnitudo homines impellere debet ad suscipiendum discendi iuris laborem. Boum terga non sunt ad onus ferendum figurata.

Dubitabitis, quin tantum boni in rem publicam conservandam conferatis? Mores puerorum se inter ludendum simplicius detegunt.

1. As we say, *idoneus ad percipiendas res*, so also, *aptus, accommodatus,*

utilis, docilis, habilis, bonus, take *ad* with the gerund. Likewise, *res facilis, difficilis ad intelligendum; verba ad audiendum iucunda*.

2. The poets use the infinitive instead of *ad* with the gerund. *Protos pecus egit altos visere montes*, for *ad visendos montes; ut viseret montes*.

§ 289.

The *ablative* of the gerund is used :

1. As *ablative of instrument* (*with what? by what?*).

2. After the prepositions, *ab, de, ex, and in*.

Homini mens discendo alitur et cogitando. Omnis loquendi elegantia augetur legendis oratoribus et poetis. Homines ad deos nulla re propius accedunt, quam salutem hominibus dando (or *salute danda*, § 285, 2).

Aristotelem non deterruit a scribendo Platonis magnitudo. Multa de bene beateque vivendo a Platone disputata sunt. Ex providendo appellata est prudentia. In voluptate spernenda virtus vel maxime cernitur. Multa sunt dicta ab antiquis de contemnendis rebus humanis.

CHAPTER XLVI.

USE OF THE SUPINE.

§ 290.

1. THE *supine* in *um* has an *active* meaning, and governs the case of its verb; the *supine* in *u* has a *passive* meaning and never governs a case.

2. The *supine* in *um* is used with verbs of *motion*, to express the purpose or end to which the motion is directed. *Cubitum ire*, to go to sleep; *exploratum* or *speculatum mittere*, to send to reconnoitre.

Legati ab Roma venerunt, questum iniurias et ex foedere res repetitum. Fabius Pictor Delphos missus est, sciscitatum, quibus precibus deos placare possent.

1. *Cur te is perditum?* Why do you want to go to ruin? (to ruin yourself?) *Nuptum dare*, to give in marriage.

2. Compare the following constructions of clauses of purpose: *Legati Delphos missi sunt*

1. *Consultum Apollinem.*
2. *Ut or qui consulerent Apollinem.*
3. *Ad consulendum Apollinem.*
4. *Apollinem consulendi causa* or *Apollinis consulendi causa.*
5. *Apollinem consulturi* (seldom).

§ 291.

The Supine in *u* is used after a few *adjectives* and *three indeclinable substantives*. *Res facilis cognitu*, easy to know, to be known.

Adjectives with the supine in *u*: *facilis, difficilis, honestus, incredibilis, iucundus, memorabilis, optimus, proclivis*; sometimes also, *dignus, indignus, mirabilis, utilis*; the three substantives: *fas, nefas, opus*.

The most common *supines* in *u* are: *dictu, factu, auditu, cognitu, aditu, visu*; seldom: *inventu, memoratu, intellectu, etc.*

Quod optimum factu videbitur, facies. Humanus animus cum alio nullo, nisi cum ipso deo, si hoc fas est dictu, comparari potest. Quid est tam iucundum cognitu atque auditu, quam sapientibus sententiis gravibusque verbis ornata oratio?

Either: *Hæc res facilis est dictu* or *ad dicendum*, or *hanc rem facile est dicere*.

CHAPTER XLVII.

RULES AND DIRECTIONS FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES.

I. ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

§ 292.

1. THE Latin admits of far greater variety in the arrangement of words (*ordo verborum*) than the English. But with all this freedom and variety there are certain general laws of arrangement which must be observed.

2. We must distinguish, in general, a twofold arrangement of words:

- a. The GRAMMATICAL.
- b. The RHETORICAL.

The former considers the words in their *grammatical character* and in their relation to each other, as parts of speech and as parts of a sentence.

The latter refers more to the *intrinsic* and *extrinsic* value and weight of the words in conveying the *meaning* of the sentence.

With regard to both it is important to notice the *prominent* or *emphatic places* of the sentence; these are always the *beginning* and the *end*; but the former more so than the latter; any intermediate place is less *significant*. *Sol omnia luce sua illustrat.* *Sol* and *illustrat* occupy the emphatic places.

§ 293.

The fundamental principle of the grammatical arrangement is the following:

The more important a word is grammatically, the more prominent also the place which it should occupy. Hence the arrangement in a simple sentence will naturally be, that the *subject* and the *predicate* occupy the *emphatic places*; the subject the *first* place, the predicate the *last*; all *modifiers* stand between the two. *Cicero rediit.* *Cicero revocatus est.* *Cicero in Italiam rediit.* *Cicero a civibus suis Romam revocatus est.*

§ 294.

1. The *modifiers of the subject*, and of every substantive, in general, follow the subject or the substantive. If the thought implies a close connection, the modifiers are placed nearer the substantive.

Modifiers of nouns: 1. Adjective; 2. Genitive; 3. Adverbial modification; 4. Apposition.

Imago pulchra Athenis collocata erat; — imago pulchra Minervæ Athenis collocata erat; — imago pulchra Minervæ ex aere Athenis collocata erat; — imago pulchra Minervæ, ex aere, opus Phidiae, Athenis collocata erat.

2. The *modifiers of the predicate* precede the predicate.

The modifier which in the thought or proposition is most intimately connected with the predicate stands next to it. Hence the order to be observed: 1. The direct object (*accusa-*

tive); 2. The indirect object (any oblique case); 3. The adverbial modification; 4. The adverb.

Pater librum donavit — *pater filio suo librum donavit* — *pater magno cum gaudio filio suo librum donavit* — *pater hodie magno cum gaudio filio suo librum donavit*.

This arrangement may, however, be varied in various ways.

§ 295.

In dependent and subordinate *clauses*, conjunctions and relatives are placed before the *subject*, therefore at the beginning of the sentence.

Thus always, *nam, namque, etenim, sed, verum, at, sin, quare, quamobrem, dummodo*; also (unless an inversion be necessary for some rhetorical reason) *quum, ut, ne, quin, quominus, dum, quoniam, quia, quam, si, nisi, etsi, etiamsi, quamquam, quamvis, licet; itaque*, nearly always in Cicero; *tamen*, varies.

Never at the beginning, but only after some emphasized word can we use *enim, vero, autem, quoque, quidem; igitur* is seldom found in the first place.

§ 296.

The strict adherence to grammatical arrangement may place the important word of the sentence in the background, and also give rise to a succession of words and sounds displeasing to the ear. The principles of the *Rhetorical* arrangement remedy this twofold defect:

1. By placing the *important* word of the sentence in the most *prominent* place (this is called the *Logical* arrangement);
- 2, by disposing the words in such a manner as to please the ear (the *Rhythmic* arrangement).

§ 297.

According to the first principles of the rhetorical arrangement, those words occupy the most prominent position in the sentence, which are the most important in the expression of the thought. This especially happens in *contrasts*.

Dicebat melius, quam scripsit Hortensius. Because *dicebat*

is the most important word; *scripsit*, being next in importance, holds the second place, after the conjunction. It would be incorrect to say, *Dicebat melius quam Hortensius scripsit*; though it would be correct, according to grammatical arrangement, to say, *Hortensius melius dicebat quam scripsit*.

§ 298.

The *modifiers* of the subject may, for the sake of greater *emphasis*, be placed before it.

Humana figura, contrasted with *aliae figurae* (e. g., *bestiarum*); but, *figura humana*, contrasted with *animus humanus*.

Caesaris sapientia, contrasted with *aliorum sapientia*; *sapientia Caesaris*, with *fortitudo*, etc., *Caesaris*.

But if the *emphasis* falls on two words grammatically connected, one is placed at the beginning, the other at the end of the sentence. This arrangement makes them more conspicuous.

Tantam ingenuit animantibus conservandi sui natura custodiam.

§ 299.

When *contrasted* words are in the same member of the sentence, they are usually placed *side by side*, in order that the contrast may more effectually appear. But when they belong to different members, the arrangement follows the general rule, which is sometimes also the case when there is only a single member.

Our igitur victus est (a Milone Clodius)? Quia non semper viator a latrone, nonnunquam etiam latro a viatore occiditur quia, quamquam paratus in imparatos Clodius, tamen mulier inciderat in viros. Ex falsis verum effici non potest. Errare mehercule malo cum Platone, quam cum istis vera sentire. Milvo est quoddam quasi naturale bellum cum corvo.

§ 300.

When the *same word* (in a different form) is repeated, and also when words, similar in sense or derivation, occur in the

same member of the sentence, they should not be separated from each other.

Aliis aliunde periculum est. Nulla virtus virtuti contraria est. Sublato tyranno tyrannida manere video. Sequere, quo tua te virtus ducit.

§ 301.

When a *contrast* is expressed by *pairs or couples* of words, the two words of each pair that express the contrast most forcibly are placed by the side of each other, the remaining two at the beginning and end. Grammarians call this *chiasmus*, from the form of the Greek X.

Vir specie quidem puerili, senili vero prudentia. Ratio nostra consentit, repugnat oratio.

§ 302.

In many expressions and phrases custom has established a certain order which must be observed. The following rules will serve as a guide.

1. In joining a *noun* (especially a proper name) and an *attribute* together, the noun usually stands first; as, *Cicerone consule*. But custom requires *urbs Roma*, as Rome is the *urbs* by excellence.

2. In joining an *adjective* (participle, numeral) to a *noun*, the noun likewise is placed first. The rhetorical arrangement, however, often varies this order.

a. If an *adjective* belongs to *two substantives*, it is placed either before or between them; as, *haec forensis laus et industria*, or *vir et consilii magni et virtutis*.

b. But if the *adjective* stands *after the last substantive* it belongs *generally* — if it stands *immediately before it*, it belongs *always* to this substantive alone. *Agri et omnia maria* means only, the lands and all the seas; *agri et maria omnia* generally means the same.

c. If *two adjectives* belong to *one substantive*, they are placed either *grammatically*, both after the substantive; as, *Senatum afflictum et abiectum excitavi*; or *rhetorically*, both before the

substantive; as, *egregia et praeclara indoles*; or one precedes the substantive, the other with a conjunction follows it; as, *effrenata libido et indomita* (never *effrenata et libido indomita*).

3. When a *genitive* and *noun* are joined together, the *latter* is placed *first*. However, owing to the rhetorical arrangement, variations are very frequent. When the genitive refers to two nouns it follows the rule laid down for the adjective under *a*.

Caesaris virtus ac prudentia. Virtus Caesaris ac prudentia. Virtus ac prudentia Caesaris; but not *virtus ac Caesaris prudentia*. The same with: *Ciceronis et Caesaris orationes*.

4. But if *one* of the *two genitives* depending on a noun is subjective and the other objective, the former is placed before the noun; the latter may be placed either after the subjective genitive or after the noun.

Theophrasti orationis ornamenta. Siculorum spes exigua reliquarum fortunarum. Atheniensium populi potestatem omnium rerum.

§ 303.

Notice the following points:

1. The demonstrative pronoun stands generally before the noun; *hoc tempus*; *illo tempore*; *ista causa*.

Ille, meaning *he, the well known, famous, etc.*, is generally put *after*, or in complex expressions, *between* the adjective and the substantive. *Ex Ponto Medea illa profugisse dicitur. Magnus ille Alexander.*

Ipsa, in connection with another pronoun, stands commonly *after* it: *sua ipsi frumenta corrumpunt*; *hoc ipsum, illud ipsum*, etc.

2. The relative *qui* stands always in the *first place*; prepositions alone are placed before the relative; as, *propter quem*; *a quo*; *de quorum fide dubitabat*.

When two relatives must be placed beside each other, that one holds the first place, which refers to some previous expression; as, *Epicurus non satis politus est iis artibus, quas qui tenent, eruditi appellantur*.

3. For the position of *quisque* see § 68, note 4.

§ 304.

1. The *prepositions* stand immediately before the cases they govern; only *tenus, versus (causā, gratiā)* stand after them.

2. However, the *pronoun*, either relative or demonstrative, may sometimes be placed before the preposition; as, *res qua de agitur; quem contra dicit; dies quam ante; hunc post; quem propter; si quos inter*. But when the pronoun is joined to a noun, a monosyllabic preposition only can, in good prose, be placed between the pronoun and the noun; as, *qua in urbe; ista in re; quibus de rebus; hanc ob rem; quam ad scientiam*, also *ad quorum scientiam; cuius cum moribus*, or *cum cuius moribus*. The pronoun *is*, alone, follows the preposition always; as, *ob eam rem, cum ea cura; ab eo homine; de is*, however, an exception; as, *ea de causa; iis de rebus*.

3. The *adjective* when *emphasized* is often placed before the preposition; as, *magna cum cura; tanto in honore*. But Cicero and Cæsar always place *medius* after the preposition; as, *in medio mundo; in colle medio*.

§ 305.

Prepositions are seldom separated from their cases. They may, however, be separated from them by:

1. A *genitive*; as, *de doloris terrore*. *Propter Hispanorum, apud quos consul fuerat, iniurias*.

2. *Enclitics*, such as, *que, ve; de que re publica*. By the conjunctions *autem, enim, vero*, etc., but only with prepositions governing the accusative; as, *post enim Chrysippum; praeter enim tres disciplinas*.

3. *Adverbs*, when the word governed by the preposition is a participle or a gerund; *ad bene beateque vivendum; de praeclare gestis a te rebus — ex ante convecta copia*.

Two prepositions must never be together in Latin; as, *cum ex Graecia profectis militibus*, but *cum militibus ex Graecia profectis*; neither can any case, except the genitive, separate the preposition and the word which it governs. Every preposition must have its own case, hence two prepositions cannot govern one and the same case; never, therefore, say, *per et propter se*, but *per se et propter se*.

§ 306.

Conjunctions generally keep their grammatical position at the beginning of the sentence. However, *quum, ut, ne, dum, quia*, etc., are often preceded by a relative, a demonstrative, or any other word strongly emphasized, provided the principal sentence follows the dependent clause with its conjunction.

Quae quum ita sint, *Catilina, perge quo coepisti. Id ille ut audivit, domum reverti noluit. Naturam si sequemur ducem, nunquam aberrabimus.*

§ 307.

With respect to the particles, we may remark, that:

1. *Non*, when it belongs to a *single* word of the sentence, always stands immediately before it; as, *non te reprehendo, sed fortunam*; but if the negative word belongs to the whole proposition, *non* stands before the *verb*, and more particularly before the finite verb, if an infinitive depends on it; as, *cur tantopere te angas, intelligere sane non possum*. But if the negative is to be emphasized, it is placed at the beginning of the sentence; as, *non de improbo, sed de callide improbo quaerimus*. Instead of *non dico, nego* is generally used; *negavit eum adesse*, he said that he was not there.

2. *Etiam, adeo, praeterea, porro*, are *seldom* put after the word or thought to which they belong; *tantum* and *demum* nearly always, *quidem* always. But if there is a *pronoun* in the sentence, *quidem* is attracted to it and placed after it, though the sense or emphasis would require another arrangement.

Tibi persuade, esse te quidem mihi carissimum, sed multo fore cariorem; instead of *esse quidem te, or carissimum quidem te esse*.

§ 308.

In some phrases, custom has established a certain order; as,

1. The ablatives, *opinione, spe, aequo, iusto, solito, dicto*, when joined to a comparative, are regularly placed before the comparative; as, *opinione melius, dicto citius*. Livy, however, has *magis solito, longius solito*, etc.

2. The *vocative* is, in Latin, not placed at the beginning of the address, but is inserted after some other word and most generally just after the *pronoun or verb* of the person addressed. *Multa mihi necessario, iudices, praetermittenda sunt*, Judges, I necessarily, etc. *Quousque tandem abutere, Catilina, patientia nostra*, Cataline, how long, etc.

3. In *letters*, the writer puts in the first place his own name, then either the salutation, *S. D.* (*Salutem Dico* or *Dicit*), or the name of the person addressed in the dative; *Cicero Ap. Pulchro, ut spero, Censori S. D.* A simple *S* (*Salutem*) always after the dative, is used in more familiar correspondence; *Cicero Attico S.* Sometimes even *S.* is omitted; *Cicero Domitio.*

Rarely *S. P. D.* or *S. P.* (*Salutem Plurimam Dicit*); but, if used, it stands always after the dative.

4. *Place and date* of letters are written only at the end; and first the date, then the place (from which); *Valete. Pridie Kalendas Maias, Brundisio.*

When *D.* or *Data* (*sc. epistola*, not *dabam* or *dedi*) is added, it is placed before the date; *Vale. Data Nonis Martiis, ex castris Taricheis.*

5. *Inquam* is placed after one or more of the words quoted; if a subject is added to the verb, its position is after *inquam*; as, *Est vero, inquam, notum signum. Mihi vero, inquit Cotta, videtur.*

6. The following are idiomatic expressions:

Terra marique; ferro ignique (or *ferro atque igne*); *ferro flammaque* (or *flamma ac ferro*); *domi militiaeque; pace belloque; volis remisque; equis virisque*, with might and main; *ultra citroque; quod ad rem attinet* (never *ad rem quod attinet*).

§ 309.

The Romans considered the rhythmic arrangement of sentences of great importance and always endeavored, as well by the choice of single words (*sonus* or *vocum suavitas*) as by the position of the words (*numerus*), to produce the greatest euphony. *Duae sunt res, quae permulceant aures, sonus et numerus.*

It would, therefore, be very inelegant Latin:

1. If a number of *monosyllables*, or a number of *polysyllables*

of the same *cadence* or inflection of voice, were made to follow each other; as, *Our tu in hac re te non debere cedere crederes?* The rhythmus would be much improved by the following disposition of the words: *Our tu cedere in hac re non debere te crederes?* The sentence, *Ista pugna Caesar multos Gallos vicit atque cepit*, is devoid of all euphony. To avoid the monotony of the dissyllables, other words must be chosen; thus, *Isto proelio Caesar multos Gallos devicit atque cepit*. Sentences like the following should be avoided: *Romani Germanos hucusque invictos vicerunt*, or *Africanus Numantinos gloriose resistentes superavit*.

2. If many words beginning and ending with a vowel be put together; as, *cui ea omnia accepta ille esse putabat* — or words containing the same or nearly the same consonants; as, *Rex Xerxes; ars studiorum; ingens est stridor*.

3. If words of similar ending follow each other; as, *Horum duorum fortissimorum virorum; Quidquid fit, id puter non concedet*.

§ 310.

1. The *rhythmic* arrangement of the sentence (*numerus*) engaged the special attention of the ancients. They compared the sentence in prose with the verse in poetry, and required the same melody and rounding of the period in the former as in the latter. However, they carefully avoided making of this rhythm a perfect verse. Hence, Cicero says, *Versus in oratione si efficitur coniunctione verborum, vitium est*.

2. Particular attention was given to the termination of sentences (*clausula*). Cicero recommends as termination especially the *creticus* (— ∪ —) even twice or thrice repeated, and preceded by the *Paeon primus* (— ∪ ∪ ∪). But an hexametrical close was most carefully avoided; hence the frequent *mihī crede* instead of *crēdē mīhī*; never close with *ēssē vīdētur*. The first oration of Cicero against Catiline may serve as model, both for the rhythmus and the termination of sentences (*clausula*).

CHAPTER XLVIII

II. ON THE CONNECTION OF SENTENCES AND THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPOUND SENTENCES.

§ 311.

THE Romans were very careful to leave sentences or members unconnected, as rarely as possible. The links or hinges to make this connection of the sentences were, 1. the *relative*; 2. the *negative* conjunction *neque* (*nec*).

The *relative* was very often used where we use in English the demonstrative, either alone or with *and*, *but*, *for*; (*qui* = *et is*, *is autem*; *quo* = *et eo*, *eo autem*. See § 238, 6.)

Cum Pompeio nullis in aliis nisi de re publica sermonibus versatus sum: quae nec possunt scribi, nec scribenda sunt (i. e. *ea autem*). *Illa Stoicorum de se opinio firma in Rutilio et stabilis inventa est. Qui quum innocentissimus in iudicium vocatus esset, oratorem adhibere noluit* (i. e. *nam is*).

§ 312.

From this tendency to connect sentences by relatives, arose the use of *quod* before certain conjunctions, merely as a copulative. In English we may either omit it altogether, or render it by *now*, *and*, *but*. It is most frequent before *si* and its compounds *nisi*, *etsi*; we also find, *quod quum*, *quod ne*, *quod quoniam*, *quod quia*, *quod ubi*, *quod utinam*, *quod simulatque*, in some writers also *quod ut*.

Incumbe toto animo in eam rationem, ut eos, quos tuae fidei senatus populusque Romanus commisit, diligas et omni ratione tueare. Quod si te sors Afris aut Hispanis praefecisset, immanibus ac barbaris nationibus, tamen esset humanitatis tuae consulere eorum commodis et saluti servire (and if *fate*, etc.).

§ 313.

The *negative* connection by means of *neque* for *et* with a negative word is very common in Latin; as, *neque unquam*

instead of *et nunquam*. At the beginning of a sentence *neque* often takes the place of *non*, hence always *neque vero*; nearly always *neque tamen*; mostly *neque enim*; often, however, *non enim*.

Rutilius huic humilitati vel mortem anteponebam esse dicebat. Neque vero hoc solum dixit, sed ipse et sensit et fecit.

§ 314.

Whilst short, simple sentences are one of the characteristic features of the English language, we find the Latins very much given to the construction of long, well-rounded compound sentences or *periods* (*periodus*). In such a period there are at least two members. Quintilian says: *Habet periodus membra minimum duo; medius numerus videntur quattuor; sed recipit frequenter et plura*. — No precise rules can be given as to the construction of such periods; the following rules, however, may serve as a guide.

§ 315.

When the *leading* sentence and the *dependent* clause have *several* parts in common, the *latter* are placed first, then follows the dependent clause, and finally the remainder of the leading sentence.

Stultitia, etsi adeptam est quod concupivit, nunquam se tamen satis consecutam putat. Alexandrum omnes, ut maxime metuerunt, item plurimum dilexerunt.

§ 316.

When the leading sentence and the dependent clause have no parts in common, that word of the principal sentence is placed before the dependent clause, which would stand at the beginning, if the principal sentence were unaccompanied by a clause.

Insidiatores, postquam in eum locum agmen pervenit, decepti ordine atque vestitu, in eum faciunt impetum qui suppositus erat.

§ 317.

All *dependent* clauses are, in the construction of *periods*, placed *before* the *leading* sentences. The relative clauses, how-

ever, are generally put before the demonstrative pronoun referring to the relative.

Si mihi republica bona frui non licuerit, at carebo mala. Quum tempus necessitasque postulat, decertandum manu est. Socrates hanc viam ad gloriam proximam et quasi compendiarium dicebat esse, si quis id ageret, ut qualis haberi vellet talis esset.

§ 318.

1. Great care must be taken to allot each dependent clause its proper place. The order is determined, in the narrative or historical style, by the time in which the circumstances or facts, related in the clauses, succeed each other.

Darius, quum ex Europa in Asiam rediisset, hortantibus amicis ut Graeciam redigeret in suam potestatem, classem quingentarum navium comparavit. It would be wrong to say, *Darius, hortantibus amicis ut redigeret in suam potestatem, quum ex Europa in Asiam, etc.*, because the advice of his friends was subsequent to his return from Asia.

2. If the order of the dependent clauses is not determined by the succession of external circumstances, the place of the clause may be designated by the connection of the thoughts, or by a word of the principal sentence which points to the clause, or lastly by any circumstance which draws the attention to the clause.

3. When there are several clauses, great care is necessary to avoid harshness and monotony. This can be easily done by the use of conjunctions, participles and the ablative absolute, which give variety as well as harmony to the period.

Numitor, inter primum tumultum hostes invasisse urbem atque adortos regiam dictitans, quum pubem Albanam in arcem praesidio armisque obtinendam avocasset, postquam iuvenes perpetrata caede pergere ad se gratulantes vidit: extemplo advocato consilio scelera in se fratris, originem nepotum, ut geniti, ut educati, ut cogniti essent, caedem deinceps tyranni sequae eius auctorem ostendit.

§ 319.

In a succession of dependent clauses, the verbs, especially, if they have the same terminations, should not be placed too

near *enall* other. The following sentence is a violation of this rule.

Quum expediti utrimque ad occupandos super urbem tumulos processissent, pari ferme intervallo ab iugo, quod capiendum erat, quum inter se conspecti essent, constiterunt, nuntios in castra remissos, qui quid sibi, quando praeter spem hostis occurrisset, faciendum esset, consulerent, quieti opperientes.

§ 320.

Symmetry of construction, in the members of the period, adds very much to its beauty. Thus:

Etsi vereor, iudices, ne turpe sit, pro fortissimo viro dicere incipientem timere, minimeque deceat, quum T. Annii ipse magis de rei publicae salute quam de sua perturbetur, me ad eius causam parem animi magnitudinem afferre non posse: tamen haec nova iudicii forma terret oculos, qui, quocumque inciderunt, veterem consuetudinem fori et pristinum morem iudiciorum requirunt.

CHAPTER XLIX.

FIGURES AND TROPES.

§ 321.

1. CERTAIN deviations from the regular form, construction or signification of words are called *figures*; they are either *grammatical* or *rhetorical*.

2. The principal grammatical figures are:

Ellipsis, pleonasm, enallage and *hyperbaton*.

3. **Ellipsis** is the omission of some word or words in a sentence; as, *Arunt scil. homines. Quid multa? scil. dicam. Darius Hystaspis scil. filius.*

Ellipsis includes *asyndeton, zeugma, syllepsis* and *prolepsis*.

4. **Pleonasm** is using a greater number of words than is necessary to express the meaning; as,

Sic ore locuta est; casu et fortuito; prudens sciens.

Pleonasm includes *polysyndeton, hendiadys* and *periphrasis*.

5. **Enallage** is the substitution of one part of speech for

another, or of one grammatical form for another; as, *populum late rex* (for *regnans*) a people of extensive sway.

Enallage includes *antimeria*, *heterosis*, *antiptosis*, *synesis* and *anacoluthon*.

6. **Hyperbäton** is a transposition in the usual order of words or clauses. *Praeter arma nihil erat super (superat)*, nothing remained except their arms.

Hyperbäton includes *anastrophē*, *hysteronproteron*, *synchēsis*, *tmēsis* and *parenthēsis*.

§ 322.

FIGURES OF RHETORIC OR TROPES.

A rhetorical figure is a mode of expression different from the direct and simple way of expressing the same idea. It is called *trope*; it turns a word from its original and customary meaning.

The principal tropes are:

1. **Metaphor**, which indicates the resemblance of two objects by applying the name, attribute or act of one directly to the other. *Ridet ager*, the field smiles; *aetas aurea*, the golden age.

2. **Metonymy**, by which we put the cause for the effect or the effect for the cause; as, *cedant arma togae*, for *cedat bellum paci*.

3. **Synecdoche**, the use of a part for the whole, or of the whole for a part; of the special for the general, or of the general for the special; of the singular for the plural, or of the plural for the singular; as, *In vestra tecta (domos) discedite*. *Armato milite (militibus) complent*.

4. **Irony**, by which we mean quite the contrary of what we say: *A quo repudiatus ad sodalem tuum, virum optimum, M. Marcellum demigrasti*.

5. **Hyperbole**, which represents things as greater or less, better or worse than they really are: *Ventis et fulminis ocior alis*.

In order to obtain a more exact knowledge of these, as well as of the other figures and tropes, it is necessary to refer to a book of Rhetoric.

PART III.

PROSODY.

CHAPTER L.

OF THE LENGTH AND SHORTNESS OF SYLLABLES.

§ 323.

SYLLABLES are long or short, either by the nature of the vowel they contain, or they become long by their short vowel being followed by two or more consonants, that is, by their position. We shall first speak of the natural length and shortness of vowels.

§ 324.

1. All diphthongs are long, and also all those single vowels which have arisen from the contraction of two into one; such as, *cōgo* (from *coāgo*), *mālo* (from *māvōlo*), *tibicen* (from *tibicen* and *tibia*; but *tubicen*, from *tuba*), *bigae* (from *biigae*), *būbus* and *bōbus* (from *bōvibus*), and so also *dīs* for *diīs*, and *nīl* for *nihil*.

NOTE.—The preposition *prae* is commonly short, when compounded with a word which begins with a vowel; e. g., *Ovid, Metam., vii, 181, Quos ubi vidorunt praeacutae cuspidis hastas.*

2. A vowel is short when it is followed by another vowel (*vocalis ante vocalem brevis est*); as, in *dēus, filiūs, piūs, rūo, cor-rūo*; and, as *h* is not considered a consonant, also in such words as *trāho, contrāho, vēho, and advēho.*

NOTE 1.—The *e* in the termination of the genitive and dative of the fifth declension is long when it is preceded by a vowel, as in *diēi, speciēi.*

NOTE 2.—All the genitives in *iūs* have the *i* commonly long. The poets, however, use the *i* in *illius, istius, ipsius, unius, totius, ullius, and utrius*, sometimes as a long, and sometimes as a short vowel; but *alius*, being a contraction for *alīus*, can never be made short.

NOTE 3.—The verb *flo* has the *i* long, except when an *r* occurs in it. *Ovid, Trist.*, 1, 8, 7, *Omnia iam fient, fieri quae posse negabam.*

NOTE 4.—Greek words retain their own original quantity, and we therefore say *āer*, *ēos* (*hōc*); *Amphion*, *Agesilāus*, and *Mendāus*. The *e* and *i* in the terminations *ea* and *eus*, or *ia* and *ius*, therefore, are long when they represent the Greek *eia* and *eios* (the Romans, not having the diphthong *ei* in their language, represent the Greek *i* sometimes by *e* and sometimes by *i*; but these vowels, of course, are always long); *e. g.*, *Galatāa*, *Medāa*, *Aenēas*, *Darius*, *Iphigenia*, *Alexandria*, *Antiochia*, *Nicomedia*, *Samaria*, *Seleucia*, *Thalia*, *Arius*, *Basilius*, *nosocomium*; and the adjectives, *Epicurēus*, *Pythagorēus*, *spondēus*, and the like. But when the Greek is *ea* or *ia*, the *e* and *i* are short, as in *idēa*, *philosophia*, *theologia*.

§ 325.

USAGE (*auctoritas*) alone makes the vowel in the first syllable of *māter*, *frāter*, *prāvus*, *māno* (I flow), *dīco*, *dūco*, *mīror*, *nītor*, *scrībo*, *dōno*, *pōno*, *ūtor*, *mūto*, *sūmo*, *cūra*, etc., long; and short, in *pāter*, *āvus*, *cādo*, *māneo*, *grāvīs*, *rēgo*, *lēgo*, *bībo*, *mīnor*, *cōlo*, *mōror*, *prōbo*, *dōmus*, *sōno*, *sōror*, and others. It must be presumed that the student makes himself acquainted with the quantity of such words as these by practice; for rules can be given only with regard to derivatives. It must further be observed that the *i* in the following words is long: *formīca*, *lectīca*, *lorīca*, *vesīca*, *urfīca*, *hemīna*, *resīna*, *sagīna*, *salīva*, *castīgo*, and *formīdo*.

§ 326.

DERIVATIVE words retain the quantity of their root, as in declension and conjugation; thus, the *a* in *āmor* and *āmo* is short, and therefore also in *āmoris*, *āmat*, *āmabam*, *āmavi*, etc., except when the consonants after the vowel of the root produce a difference. *New* words, formed from roots or stems, likewise retain the quantity; as, from *āmo*, *āmor*, *āmicus*, *āmabilis*; from *lux*, *lūcis* — *lūceo*, *lūcidus*; from *māter* — *māternus*, *mātertera*; and from *fīnis* — *fīnio*, *fīnitio*, *fīnitimus*, etc.

§ 327.

With regard to conjugation, however, the following rules also must be observed:

1. The *perfect* and *supine*, when they consist of two syllables, and the tenses formed from them, have the first syllable long,

even when, in the present tense, it is short; e. g., *vīdeo, vīdī*; *fūgio, fūgī*; *lēgo, lēgī*; *lēgisse, lēgeram*, etc. (except, however, when one vowel stands before another, in which case the general rule remains in force; as, in *rūo, rūi, dirūi*), *vīdeo, vīsum*; *mōveo, mōtum, mōtus, mōturus*.

Seven dissyllable perfects, however, and nine dissyllable supines, together with their compounds, make their penultima short; viz., *bibi, dēdi, fidi* (from *finde*), *stēti, stīti, tūli*, and *scīdi* (from *scinde*), and *dātrum, rātrum, sātum, itum, litum, citum, quitum, situm, and rūtum*. *Sisto* makes its supine *stātum*, whence *stātus, a, um*, and the compounds *adstītum, destītum, restītum*.

2. Perfects which are formed by reduplication; as, *tundo, tūtūdī*; *cano, cēcīni*; *pello, pēpūli*, have the first two syllables short; but the second sometimes becomes long by position; as, in *mordeo, mōmordī*; *tendo, tētendī*. *Caedo* retains the long vowel in the syllable which forms the root, *cecīdī*; whereas, *ādo*, in accordance with the rule, has *cēcīdī*.

8. The perfect *posui* and the supine *positum* have the **o** short, although in *pono* it is long.

§ 328.

With regard to declension, we must notice:

1. The exception that the words, *lār, pār, sāl*, and *pēs*, shorten their vowel throughout their declension; *sālīs, pēdīs*, etc.

2. The terminations *ilīs* and *bilīs* have the **i** short when they make derivatives from verbs, but long when from substantives; e. g., *facilīs, docilīs*, and *amabilīs*, but *civilīs, hostilīs, puerilīs, senilīs*, etc.

§ 329.

COMPOUND words retain the quantity of the vowels of their elements; thus, from *āvus* and *nēpos* we make *abāvus* and *abnēpos*; from *prāvus, deprāvo*; from *prōbus, imprōbus*; from *iūs (iūris) periūrus*; from *lēgo* (I read) *perlēgo*; and from *lēgo* (I despatch) *ablēgo, delēgo, collēgo*. Even when the vowel is changed, its quantity remains the same; e. g., *laedo, illūdo*; *caedo, incīdo*; *aequus, inīquus*; *fauces, suffōco*; *claudio, reclūdo*.

1. We may, therefore, infer from compounded words the quantity of those of which they consist; e. g., from *adōro, admīror* and *abūtor* we conclude that *oro, miror* and *utor* have the first syllable long; and from *admōror* and *desūper* that the first syllable in *moror* and *super* is short.

2. But there are some exceptions, and the following compounded words change the long vowel into a short one: *deiĕro* and *periĕro*, from *iĕro*; *causidicus*, *fatidicus*, *maledicus*, *veridicus* from *dicere*; *agnitus* and *cognitus* from *nōtus*; *innūb(us)*, *-a*, and *pronūb(us)*, *-a*, from *nūbo*.

3. In respect to composition with *prepositions*, it is to be remarked that prepositions of one syllable which end in a vowel are long, and those which end in a consonant are short: *dēduco*, *āboleo*, *pĕrimo*; but the *o* (for *ob*) in *ōmitto* is short. **Pro**, in Latin words is long; e. g., *prōdo*, *prōmitto*; but in many it is short; *prōfugio*, *pronēpos*, *prōfiteor*. **Se** and **di** (for *dis*) are long; the only exceptions are *dīrimo* and *dīsertus*. **Re** is short; it is long in the impersonal verb *rĕfert*.

CHAPTER LI.

FINAL SYLLABLES.

§ 330.

MONOSYLLABIC WORDS.

In regard to the quantity of *final syllables*, the following special rules must be observed:

1. ALL *monosyllables* ending in a vowel are long, except the particles which are attached to other words: *quĕ*, *vĕ*, *cĕ*, *nĕ*, *tĕ* (*tutĕ*), *pse* (*reapsĕ*), and *ptĕ* (*suoptĕ*).

2. Among the monosyllables ending in a *consonant*, the *substantives* are long; *as*, *sōl*, *vĕr*, *fūr*, *iūs*; and all those are short which are not substantives, *as*, *ūt*, *ĕt*, *nĕc*, *in*, *ān*, *ād*, *quĭd*, *quōt*. The following substantives, however, are short: *cōr*, *fĕl*, *mĕl*, *vĭr* and *ōs* (gen. *ossis*). Some words, on the other hand, are long, although they are not substantives; *as*, *ĕn*, *nōn*, *quĭn*, *sĭn*, *crās*. *plūs*, *cūr* and *pār*, with its compounds, and also the adverbs in *ic* or *uc*, *as sĭc*, *hĭc*, *hūc*.

The monosyllabic forms of declension and conjugation follow the general rules about the quantity of final syllables, and *dās*, *fĕs* and *sōs*,

accordingly, are long, while *dāt*, *flēt* and *scīt* are short; *hīs*, *quōs*, *quās* are long, like the terminations *ōs* and *ās* in declension (§ 332). So, also, the ablative singular *hōc* and *hāc*. The nominative *hic* and the neuter *hoc*, on the other hand, although the vowel is naturally short, are commonly used as long. The abridged imperatives retain the quantity of the root, so that *dīc* and *dūc* are long, while *fāc* and *fēr* are short.

§ 331.

FINAL SYLLABLES IN WORDS OF TWO OR MORE SYLLABLES:

I. SUCH AS TERMINATE IN A VOWEL.

1. **A** is short in nouns, except in the ablative singular of the first declension and in the vocative of Greek proper names in *as* which belong to the first or third declension; e. g., *Aeneā*, *Pallā*. **A** is long in verbs and indeclinable words, such as *amā*, *frustrā*, *ergā*, *anteā* and *postēā* (except when separated into *post ea*); except, *iā*, *quā*, *eā*, and the imperative *putā* in the sense of "for example." In the indeclinable numerals, as *triginta* and *quadraginta*, the *a* is sometimes long and sometimes short.

2. **E** is short, as in *patrē*, *currē*, *nempē*; but long in the ablative of the fifth declension and in the imperative of the second conjugation. Adverbs in *e*, formed from adjectives of the second declension, are likewise long, as *doctē*, *rectē*; also, *ferē*, *fermē* and *ohē* (but *benē* and *malē* are always short).

3. **I** is long. The *i* is common or doubtful in *mīhi*, *sibi*, *ibi* and *ubi*; in compounds we usually find *ibīdem*, and always *ubīque*, whereas in *ubīvis* and *ubīnam* the *i* is always short. In *uti* for *ut*, the *i* is long, but in the compounds *utīnam* and *utīque* short.

4. **O** is common in the present tense of all the conjugations, and in the nominative of the third declension, as in *sermo*, *virgo*. But *o* is long in the second declension, as in *lectō*, and in adverbs formed from nouns and pronouns by means of this termination; e. g., *vulgō*, *falsō*, *paulō*, *eō*, *quō* and also *ergō*, *iccircō*, *quandō* and *retrō*.

5. **U** is always long, as in *diū*, *vultū*, *cornū*.

6. **Y**, in Greek words, is always short.

§ 332.

II. SUCH AS TERMINATE IN A CONSONANT.

All final syllables ending in a consonant are short, and special rules are required only for those ending in the sibilant *s*.

1. **As** is long in Latin words, with the exception of *anās*, *anātis*; but the Greek nominatives in *as*, which make their genitives in *adoç*, and in Latin in *adis*, such as *Ilias*, *Pallas*, and the Greek accusatives plural of the third declension, are always short, as in *heroās*.

2. **Es** is long; e. g., *amēs*, *legēs*, *audiēs*, *putrēs*. But Latin nominatives in *es*, which increase in the genitive, and have their *penultima* short, are themselves short; e. g., *mīlēs*, *mīlītīs*; *segēs*, *segētīs* (except *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *pariēs*, *Cerēs*, and the compounds of *riēs*); the preposition *penēs* and the second person of the compounds of *sum*, *ēs*; e. g., *abēs*, *potēs*; but the *ēs* (for *edis*) from *edo*, is long.

3. **Is** is generally short, but long in all the cases of the plural, as *armīs*, *vobīs*, *omnīs* (accusative for *omnes*); in the second person singular of verbs whose plural is *īīs*, that is, in the fourth conjugation, and in *possīs*, *velīs*, *noīīs*, *malīs* and *vīs* (thou wilt) with its compounds, such as *mavīs*, *quīvīs*, *quamvīs*.

Us is short in verbs and nouns, except monosyllables, but long in the genitive singular, in the nominative and accusative plural of the fourth declension, and in the nominatives of the third, which have *ū* long in the genitive, as *virtūs*, *ūtis*; *palūs*, *ūdis*.

5. **Ys**, in Greek words, is short, as *Halýs*, *Tethýs*, *chlamýs*.

§ 333.

Syllables (as was remarked in § 328) may become long by their vowel being followed by two or more consonants, that is, by their *position*.

X and z are accounted as two consonants.

1. A *position* may be formed in three ways:

a. When a syllable ends in two or three consonants, as in *ex*, *est*, *mens*, *stirps*.

b. When the first syllable ends in a consonant and the second begins with one, as in *ille*, *arma*, *mentis*, *in nova*.

c. When the first syllable ends in a vowel, and the one following begins with two consonants.

2. By the first and second kinds of position, a syllable which is naturally short becomes long.

Exceptions to this rule occur only in the comic poets, who frequently neglect position, especially that of the second kind.

3. In the third kind of position (made by two consonants beginning the syllable after a vowel), we must distinguish as to whether it occurs within a word or between two words, and whether the consonants are mutes with a liquid (*muta cum liquida*) or not. Within a word, a syllable ending in a short vowel is regularly made long, when it is followed by two consonants, or *x* and *z*, as in *aptus, factus, axis*; but when the first consonant is a mute and the second a liquid (which is called *positio debilis*), they make the vowel only common, according to the pronunciation in prose. Thus, we may pronounce either *cerēbrum, lugūbris, mediōcris, intēgri*, or *cerēbrum lugūbris, mediōcris, intēgri*. Ovid, for example, says: *Et primū similis volūcri, mox vera volūcris*. (*Metam.* xiii, 607.)

4. Between two words the vowel is rarely lengthened, except in the *arsis* of a verse. The last syllable of a word thus remains short; e. g., in Horace, at the beginning of a hexameter: *quem malā stultitiā aut*; or at the end: *praemiā scribae*. An instance in which the vowel is lengthened by the accession of the *arsis* occurs in Virgil, *Bucol.* iv, 51. *Terrasque tractusque maris coelumque profundum*.

5. **Qu** is not accounted as two consonants, for *u* is not a true consonant, though we usually pronounce it as such. But *j* alone is sufficient to make position, because this consonant was pronounced double (in early times it was also written double); e. g., *major* like *maiior*, and, in like manner, in *dius* and *Trōia*. In the compounds of *iugum* alone, it does not lengthen the preceding vowel, as *biugus, quadriugus*.

CHAPTER LII.

VERSIFICATION.

§ 334.

SYLLABLES are combined into certain metrical groups called **feet**, and feet, singly or in pairs, are combined into verses.

The most common metrical feet are :

1. $\cup \text{ — }$, *iambus* iambic ; as, *rēgunt, grāvi, pātēs*.
2. $\text{ — } \cup$, *trochæus* (*choræus*), trochee ; as, *mātrē, rēbus, fortēs*.
3. — — , *spondæus*, spondee ; as, *mātrēs, aūdāx, vōbis*.
4. $\text{ — } \cup \cup$, *dactylus*, dactyl ; as, *ōmniā, mātribūs, aūdiāt*.
5. $\cup \cup \text{ — }$, *anapaestus*, anapaest ; as, *dōminō, fugiunt, bōnitās*.

$\cup \cup$, *pyrrhichius*, pyrrhic ; $\cup \cup \cup$, *tribrachys*, tribrach ; $\cup \text{ — } \cup$, *amphibrachys*, amphibrach ; $\cup \text{ — — }$, *bacchius* ; $\text{ — — } \cup$, *palimbacchius* (*antibacchius*) ; $\text{ — } \cup \text{ — }$, *creticus* (*amphimacer*), cretic ; — — — , *molossus*. There are, besides, sixteen compound feet of four syllables.

§ 335.

1. In every verse the long and short syllables vary according to a fixed law ; the simple and constantly recurring combination of long and short syllables in a verse are called feet.

2. The movement and melody of a verse constitute what is termed *Rhythm*. It is the effect produced by the variation of sounds according to a fixed rule ; the variation of sounds consists in the *raising* (*arsis*) and *sinking* (*thesis*) of the voice in the delivery of the verse.

The arsis is marked by ' (the *ictus*) ; the thesis is either not marked at all, or else by ` . Examples of rising rhythm are, $\cup \text{ — } \text{ — }$, $\cup \cup \text{ — }$; of falling, $\text{ — } \cup$, $\text{ — } \cup \cup$.

3. A short syllable in a verse is considered as the standard ; the portion of time consumed in pronouncing the same is called *mora*. A long syllable has two *moras*. Hence, a long syllable may be put instead of two short syllables, and *vice versa*.

4. At the end of every verse a short pause must be made, even when the punctuation does not point it out ; hence, the last syllable may be either long or short. In a long verse, there is also, within the same, a slight pause or rest, but always at the end of a word. If this pause falls within a metrical (verse) foot, it is called **Caesura**, but when at the end of a foot it is termed **Diaeresis**, or incision.

5. The caesura is called *strong* when it immediately follows the arsis : as

Incidit in Scyllam | qui vult vitare Charybdim :
weak, when it falls within the thesis ; as,
Obstupuit simul ipse, | simul percussus Achates.

6. In the recitation or delivery of a Latin verse, the **elision** must be observed. When a word ends with a **vowel** or **m**, and the succeeding word begins with a **vowel** or **h**, the first and last syllable of both words are in the delivery contracted into one (the final syllable is dropped or elided); thus, *sapere aude*, read *saper'aude*; *improvisi aderant*, *improvis'aderant*; *orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano*, read *orand'est* or *orandum'st san'in*; likewise, *homo est*, either *hom'est* or *homo'st*. But if the two words stand in different lines, no elision takes place, except in very rare cases (*versus hypermeter*, § 337, 5).

§ 336.

Among the most frequent Latin verses, may be reckoned the Iambic Senarius, the Hexameter, and the Pentameter.

The Iambic Senarius (*senos iambos continens, versus senarius*) consists of six Iambics. It is also called Iambic Trimeter (*trimeter iambicus*) because every two feet (a dipody) form a measure; so that the whole verse consists of three measures or dipodies. The caesura falls usually after the first thesis of the second dipody (after the fifth half-foot), sometimes after the second thesis of the second dipody (after the seventh half-foot).

Scale of the pure Iambic Senarius :

$\cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } | \cup \text{ — } | \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — }$
Béatús ú | lé | qui prócúl | nēgótíis.

However, the pure Senarius is, in general, rare; all poets use it with the following licenses :

- a. A long syllable may take the place of one short syllable at the beginning of every dipody.
- b. Two short syllables may take the place of every long syllable, except the last.
- c. One short syllable may always replace the last long syllable.

Scale of the modified Senarius (*Iambic Trimeter*).

$\cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } | \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } | \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — }$
 $\cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } | \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } | \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — }$

Some poets, particularly Phaedrus, take still greater license: for they employ a long syllable instead of a short one everywhere, except in the last foot; thus,

$\cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } | \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } | \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — }$

and then each long syllable may again be converted into two short syllables. The verse is then apparent only by the *arsis*, which is more

marked in the first original long syllable of every dipody, but less so in the second.

Aevôpus aûc | tor | ouâm : atéri | am réppèrît,
Hanc égô poli | vi | vèrsibus | senâriis,
Duplex libel | lè | dôs est, quôd | risum môvêt,
Est quôd prudên | ti | vitam côn | silio mônêt.
Oulûmniâ | ri | si quis aû | tem volûerît,
Quod ârborès | loquântur | nôn | tantum feras :
Fictis iocâ | ri | nôs memînè | rit fâbulis.

§ 337.

The Hexameter (*versus heroicus*) consists of six dactyls: each of these is counted as a measure. The last dactyle, however, lacks one syllable. But two short syllables may always be exchanged for a long syllable: this, however, is very rare in the fifth foot.

The principal *caesurae* of the Hexameter are:

1. After the arsis of the third foot; scale:

˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘
Régiâ, | credè mi | hí || res | ést suc | currèrè | lâpis.

2. After the first short syllable of the third foot, (the trochaic *caesura*); scale:

˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘
Ôdè | rânt pec | cârè || dôni vir | tûtis âmôrè.

The thought is, sin is avoided, by the good, out of love for virtue; do not avoid it therefore through fear of punishment. Hence the *caesura* comes necessarily after *peccare* not after *boni*.

3. After the arsis of the fourth foot, sometimes with a secondary *caesura* after the arsis of the second foot; scale:

˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘
Quid rê | fert, | môr | bô an fûr | tis | pèrè | àmnè rã | pinis?

4. The verse becomes animated and lively by the use of many dactyls, while it is rendered grave and solemn by several spondees, but particularly when the fifth foot is a spondee (*versus spondiacus*).

Quâdrupedântè pûtrém sônitu quâtit úngulâ câmpum.
Illè intèr sêsè magnâ vi brâchiâ tollunt.
Obstitit âtquè oculis Phrygiâ agminâ circûmspècit.

5. Example of a *versus hypermeter* (§ 335, 6).

*Omnia Mercurio similis vocemque coloremque
Et crines flavos et membra decora iuventae.*

§ 338.

1. A verse is termed *Pentameter*, because the number of its syllables forms five feet. Properly speaking it consists of six dactyls, but the thesis in the third and sixth (both short syllables) are suppressed. Hence after the arsis, which is left over from the third foot, there is a strong pause (here a *Diæresis*); this divides the verse into two nearly equal parts. The first part allows a spondee instead of a dactyl, the second never; scale:

$\overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} \overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} \overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} \overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} \overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—}$
Iam t̄tigit̄ s̄umm̄os̄ | vērticē Rōmā d̄ic̄s.

2. The *Pentameter* occurs only as a sequence to the *Hexameter*. This union is called *Distichon* (distich) or elegiac verse.

*Principiis obeta! Sero medicina paratur,
Quum mala per longas convalere moras. —
Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos;
Tempora si fuerint nubila, solus eris. —
Laudat alauda deum, dum sese tollit in altum;
Dum cadit in terram, laudat alauda deum.*

CHAPTER LIII.

SHORT VIEW OF THE LYRIC
METRES OF HORACE.

§ 339.

I. THE shorter Asclepiadæan system consists of four short Asclepiadæan verses; thus,

$\overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} | \overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—}$
 $\overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} | \overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—}$
 $\overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} | \overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—}$
 $\overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} | \overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—} | \overset{\cdot}{\text{—}} \text{—} \text{—}$
 I : 1. III : 80. IV : 8.

The choriambics express something grand; the even movement of the verse implies great confidence and strong conviction.

II. The first Asclepiadean stanza in which the Glyconic verse alternates with the shorter Asclepiad; thus,

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \acute{ } - & | & \acute{ } \cup & | & \acute{ } \cup \asymp \\ \acute{ } - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup | \acute{ } \cup \asymp \\ \acute{ } - & | & \acute{ } \cup & | & \acute{ } \cup \asymp \\ \acute{ } - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup | \acute{ } \cup \asymp \end{array}$$

I : 8, 18, 19, 36. III : 9, 17, 19, 24, 25, 28. IV : 1, 8.

III. The second Asclepiadean stanza consists of three short Asclepiads and a Glyconic verse; thus,

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \acute{ } - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup | \acute{ } \cup \asymp \\ \acute{ } - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup | \acute{ } \cup \asymp \\ \acute{ } - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup | \acute{ } \cup \asymp \\ \acute{ } - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup & | & \acute{ } \cup \asymp \end{array}$$

I : 6, 15, 24, 33. II : 12. III : 10, 16. IV : 5, 12.

IV. The third Asclepiadean stanza in which a Pherecratian verse is substituted for the third Asclepiad in the preceding stanza; thus,

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \acute{ } - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup | \acute{ } \cup \asymp \\ \acute{ } - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup | \acute{ } \cup \asymp \\ \acute{ } - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup & | & \acute{ } \cup \\ \acute{ } - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup & | & \acute{ } \cup \asymp \end{array}$$

I : 5, 14, 21, 23. III : 7, 18. IV : 18.

V. The greater Asclepiadean system consists of four greater Asclepiads: thus,

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \acute{ } - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup | & \acute{ } \cup \asymp \\ \acute{ } - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup | & \acute{ } \cup \asymp \\ \acute{ } - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup | & \acute{ } \cup \asymp \\ \acute{ } - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup - & | & \acute{ } \cup \cup | & \acute{ } \cup \asymp \end{array}$$

I : 11, 18. IV : 10.

§ 340.

VI. The Sapphic Stanza consists of three smaller Sapphics with an Adonic as the fourth verse; thus,

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \acute{ } \cup - & \grave{ } | & \acute{ } | & \cup \cup | & \acute{ } \cup - & \cup \\ \acute{ } \cup - & \grave{ } | & \acute{ } | & \cup \cup | & \acute{ } \cup - & \cup \\ \acute{ } \cup - & \grave{ } | & \acute{ } | & \cup \cup | & \acute{ } \cup - & \cup \\ \acute{ } \cup \cup & | & \acute{ } \cup & \cup \end{array}$$

This metre is grave and solemn, and particularly adapted to invocations and prayer.

I : 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38.

II : 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16.

III : 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27.

IV : 2, 6, 11.

Carmen saeculare.

VII. The greater Sapphic stanza, in which the Aristophanian verse alternates with the greater Sapphic.

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc} & \acute{} & \cup & \cup & | & \acute{} & \cup & - & \cup \\ \acute{} & \cup & - & \acute{} & | & \acute{} & | & \cup & \cup & - & | & \acute{} & \cup & \cup & | & \acute{} & \cup & - & \cup \\ & \acute{} & \cup & \cup & | & \acute{} & \cup & - & \cup \\ \acute{} & \cup & - & \acute{} & | & \acute{} & \cup & \cup & - & | & \acute{} & \cup & \cup & | & \acute{} & \cup & - & \cup \end{array}$$

I : 8.

§ 341.

VIII. The Alcaic stanza is composed of two verses of eleven syllables, one of nine syllables, and one of ten syllables; they are all Alcaics; thus,

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc} \cup & | & \acute{} & \cup & - & \cup & | & \acute{} & \cup & \cup & | & \acute{} & \cup & \cup \\ \cup & | & \acute{} & \cup & - & \cup & | & \acute{} & \cup & \cup & | & \acute{} & \cup & \cup \\ & \cup & | & \acute{} & \cup & - & \cup & | & \acute{} & \cup & - & \cup \\ \acute{} & \cup & \cup & | & \acute{} & \cup & \cup & | & \acute{} & \cup & - & \cup \end{array}$$

This metre is lively and energetic, and well suited to encourage, to challenge, to advise and to cheer up.

The first line consists of two halves, the third verse is a doubling of the first half, while the fourth is an amplification of the second half. For the Catalectic in the first and second verse, answers to the omission of an entire double Trochee in the fourth line.

The Alcaic stanza resembles a composition in which after the musical idea has stamped itself on the ear by repetition, it is resolved into its elements and more fully carried out.

This is the favorite metre of Horace, and he uses it not less than thirty-seven times.

I : 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37.

II : 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20.

III : 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29.

IV : 4, 9, 14, 15.

§ 342.

IX. The first Archilochian stanza in which there is an alternation of (dactylic) Hexameter and the shorter Archilochian verse: thus,

$$\begin{array}{cccccc} \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup & | \cup \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \\ & & & & & & \\ \cup \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup & | \cup \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \\ \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup & | \cup \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \end{array}$$

IV : 7.

The four Archilochian stanzas are all expressive of sad and gloomy thoughts.

X. The second Archilochian stanza consists of the (dactylic) Hexameter and Iambic Elegiac verse; thus,

$$\begin{array}{cccccc} \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup & | \cup \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \\ \cup \cup \cup & | \cup \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \end{array}$$

The Iambic Dimeter is inserted without any connection between the two members of the preceding stanza.

Epode 13.

XI. The third Archilochian stanza consists of the Senarius or Iambic Trimeter and the Iambic Elegiac verse; thus,

$$\begin{array}{cccccc} \cup \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \cup \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup & | \cup \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup & | \cup \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup & | \cup \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup & | \cup \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup & | \cup \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \\ \cup \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \cup \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \cup \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \cup \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \cup \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \cup \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \cup \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup \end{array}$$

Epode 11.

XII. The fourth Archilochian stanza alternates the greater Archilochian verse with a verse of Iambic character; thus,

$$\begin{array}{cccccc} \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup & | \cup \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup \\ \cup \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup \\ \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup & | \cup \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup \\ \cup \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup \end{array}$$

I : 4.

§ 343.

XIII. The Almanic stanza in which the (dactylic) Hexameter alternates with a Catalectic Dactylic Tetrameter; thus,

$$\begin{array}{cccccc} \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup & | \cup \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \\ \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup & | \cup \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \\ \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup & | \cup \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \\ \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup & | \cup \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \cup & | \overset{\cdot}{\cup} \cup \end{array}$$

I : 7, 28. *Epode* 12.

§ 344.

XIV. The Senarius or Iambic Trimeter, with only slight variations is employed as in the following scale,

⊖ ′ ⊖ — | ⊖ | ′ ⊖ — | ⊖ ′ ⊖ ≡

Epode 17.

XV. The Iambic stanza consists of the Senarius or Iambic Trimeter and the Iambic Dimeter; thus,

⊖ ′ ⊖ — | ⊖ | ′ ⊖ — | ⊖ ′ ⊖ ≡
 ⊖ ′ ⊖ — | ⊖ ′ ⊖ ≡

Epodes 1-10.

This is properly the metre of the Epodes. The abrupt closing is well adapted to make the language keen and pointed.

XVI. The first Pyth-iambic stanza consists of the (dactylic) Hexameter and the Iambic Dimeter. It is termed pythic because the Pythoness delivered the oracles in this metre.

′ ⊖ ⊖ | ′ ⊖ ⊖ | ′ | ⊖ ⊖ | ′ ⊖ ⊖ | ′ ⊖ — | ′ ⊖ ⊖
 ≡ ′ ⊖ — | ⊖ ′ ⊖ ≡

Epodes 14, 15.

XVII. The second Pyth-iambic stanza is composed of the (dactylic) Hexameter and the Senarius or Iambic Trimeter; thus,

′ ⊖ ⊖ | ′ ⊖ ⊖ | ′ | ⊖ ⊖ | ′ ⊖ ⊖ | ′ ⊖ ⊖ | ′ ⊖ ≡
 ⊖ ′ ⊖ — | ⊖ | ′ ⊖ — | ⊖ ′ ⊖ ≡

Epode 16.

§ 345.

XVIII. The Trochaic stanza (of Hipponax) in which a Catalectic Trochaic Tetrapody is substituted in the second verse of the fourth Archilochian stanza; thus,

′ ⊖ — ⊖ | ′ ⊖ ⊖
 ⊖ | ′ ⊖ — ⊖ | ′ ⊖ — ⊖ — ≡
 ′ ⊖ — ⊖ | ′ ⊖ ⊖
 ⊖ | ′ ⊖ — ⊖ | ′ ⊖ — ⊖ — ≡

II : 18

§ 346.

XIX. The rising Ionic system; thus,

$\bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{u} - | \bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{u}$
 $\bar{u} \bar{u} - | \bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{u} -$
 $\bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{u} - | \bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{u} - | \bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{u} - | \bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{u} .$
 $\bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{u} - | \bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{u} \bar{u}$

III : 12.

APPENDIX.

CHAPTER LIV.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

§ 347.

1. The first day of every month is called **Kalendæ** (*Calendæ, K.,* or *Kal.*), *Calendæ*; in March, May, July, and October, the fifteenth day is called **Idus**, *Ides*; the seventh, **Nonæ**, *Nones* (from *nonus*, because counting backward, it is nine days from the Ides). In the other eight months the *Ides* fall on the thirteenth and the *Nones* on the fifth day.

2. The name of the month is always joined as adjective to these three words, and to express a date, the *ablativæ* is used; thus, *Kalendis Ianuariis*, the first of January; *Nonis Ianuariis*, the fifth of January; *Idibus Ianuariis*, the thirteenth of January; *Kalendis Octobribus*, first of October; *Nonis, Idibus Octobribus*, seventh, fifteenth of October.

3. The eve of the Calends, Nones, and Ides, was always expressed by *pridie* with the accusative (the day after, sometimes by *postridie*, with accusative); as, *pridie Kalendæ Apriles*, thirty-first of March; *pridie Idus Septembres*, twelfth of September (*postridie Nonas Maias*, eighth of May).

4. To express any of the other days, count how many days it is before the next Calends, Nones, or Ides, taking care to include the starting and concluding days, so that from the third to the seventh there are five days; from the nineteenth of May to the first of June, fourteen days. Hence the third of March is *dies quintus ante Nonas Martias*; nineteenth of May, *dies quartus decimus ante Kalendas Iunias*. But, instead of saying, *dies quinto ante Nonas Martias*, third of March, and *dies quarto decimo ante Kalendas Iunias*, an abridgment and transformation is very common; as, *ante diem quintum Nonas Martias* (*a. d. V. Non. Mart.*), *ante diem quartum decimum Kalendas Iunias* (*a. d. XIV. Kal. Iun.*); or, by omitting *ante*; thus, *quinto Nonas Martias* (*V. Non. Mart.*) *quarto decimo Kalendas Iunias* (*XIV. Kal. Iun.*)

THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

5. CALENDAR FOR THE YEAR.

OUR DATE.	I	II	III	IV
	MARCH, MAY, JULY, AND OCTOBER (31 DAYS)	JANUARY, AUGUST, AND DECEMBER (31 DAYS).	APRIL, JUNE, SEPTEMBER, AND NOVEMBER (30 DAYS).	FEBRUARY (28 DAYS).
1	Kalendis Martis.	Kalendis Ianuariis.	Kalendis Aprilibus.	Kalendis Februariis
2	a. d. VI. Nonas Martias.	a. d. IV. Nonas Ianuar.	a. d. IV. Nonas April.	a. d. IV. Non. Febr.
3	a. d. V. " "	a. d. III. " "	a. d. III. " "	a. d. III. " "
4	a. d. IV. " "	pridie " "	pridie " "	pridie " "
5	a. d. III. " "	Nonis Ianuariis.	Nonis Aprilibus.	Nonis Februariis.
6	pridie " "	a. d. VIII. Idus Ianuar.	a. d. VIII. Idus April.	a. d. VIII. Id. Febr.
7	Nonis Martias.	a. d. VII. " "	a. d. VII. " "	a. d. VII. " "
8	a. d. VIII. Idus Martias.	a. d. VI. " "	a. d. VI. " "	a. d. VI. " "
9	a. d. VII. " "	a. d. V. " "	a. d. V. " "	a. d. V. " "
10	a. d. VI. " "	a. d. IV. " "	a. d. IV. " "	a. d. IV. " "
11	a. d. V. " "	a. d. III. " "	a. d. III. " "	a. d. III. " "
12	a. d. IV. " "	pridie " "	pridie " "	pridie " "
13	a. d. III. " "	Idibus Ianuariis.	Idibus Aprilibus.	Idibus Februariis.
14	pridie " "	a. d. XIX. Kal. Februar.	a. d. XVIII. Kal. Maias.	a. d. XVI. Kal. Mart.
15	Idibus Martis.	a. d. XVIII. " "	a. d. XVII. " "	a. d. XV. " "
16	a. d. XVII. Kal. Apriles.	a. d. XVII. " "	a. d. XVI. " "	a. d. XIV. " "
17	a. d. XVI. " "	a. d. XVI. " "	a. d. XV. " "	a. d. XIII. " "
18	a. d. XV. " "	a. d. XV. " "	a. d. XIV. " "	a. d. XII. " "
19	a. d. XIV. " "	a. d. XIV. " "	a. d. XIII. " "	a. d. XI. " "
20	a. d. XIII. " "	a. d. XIII. " "	a. d. XII. " "	a. d. X. " "
21	a. d. XII. " "	a. d. XII. " "	a. d. XI. " "	a. d. IX. " "
22	a. d. XI. " "	a. d. XI. " "	a. d. X. " "	a. d. VIII. " "
23	a. d. X. " "	a. d. X. " "	a. d. IX. " "	a. d. VII. " "
24	a. d. IX. " "	a. d. IX. " "	a. d. VIII. " "	a. d. VI. " "
25	a. d. VIII. " "	a. d. VIII. " "	a. d. VII. " "	a. d. V. " "
26	a. d. VII. " "	a. d. VII. " "	a. d. VI. " "	a. d. IV. " "
27	a. d. V. " "	a. d. VI. " "	a. d. V. " "	a. d. III. " "
28	a. d. V. " "	a. d. V. " "	a. d. IV. " "	pridie " "
29	a. d. IV. " "	a. d. IV. " "	a. d. III. " "	
30	a. d. III. " "	a. d. III. " "	pridie " "	
31	pridie " "	pridie " "		

CHAPTER LV.

ROMAN WEIGHTS, MONEY AND MEASURES.

§ 348.

1. A Roman pound (*libra, pondo*) weighed about 11½ ounces. As a whole or unit it was called *as*. Fractions of the pound (*as*) are *uncia* = $\frac{1}{16}$; *sextans* = $\frac{1}{8}$; *quadrans* = $\frac{1}{4}$; *triens* = $\frac{3}{8}$; *quincunx* = $\frac{5}{16}$; *semis* = $\frac{1}{2}$; *septunx* = $\frac{7}{16}$; *bes* (gen. *bessis*) = $\frac{2}{3}$; *dodrans* = $\frac{5}{8}$; *dextans* (*decunx*) = $\frac{3}{4}$; *deunx* = $\frac{1}{4}$.

2. The most ancient Roman money was of copper (*aes, aeris*), and it was computed by pounds, *asses*; thus, *duo asses, tres asses*. When the amount was large, the word *asses* was omitted, and *aeris* used in its stead; e. g., *centum millia aeris*, 100,000 pounds of copper. The most ancient *asses* (*asses liberales*, full, also *aes grave*) were worth \$0.88; but when silver was more common, the copper *as* became lighter, and about 250 B. C. was worth only \$0.06; about 217 B. C., \$0.08; about 191 B. C., \$0.01½.

After the introduction of silver money, about 268 B. C., sums of money are reckoned by *sesterces*. The *sesterce* (*sestertius*) was a silver coin equivalent to 2½ *asses* (whence the sign of a *sestertius*, *HS*, from *LLS*, i. e. *libra libra semis*) worth \$0.03½. Two *sesterces* make one *quinarius* (5 *asses*); two *quinarii* one *denarius* (10 *asses*) about \$0.15.

Gold coins were very scarce before the emperors. An *aureus* (scil. *nummus*) was equal to 25 *Denarii*, worth about \$3.75.

The greatest sums were also computed in *sesterces*, hence *nummus* standing alone is always a *sestertius*. One thousand *sesterces*, is *mille sestertii*, or more commonly *mille sestertium* (genitive plural like *mille passuum*); 2000 *sesterces*, *duo millia sestertium*; 3000 *sesterces*, *tria millia sestertium*. But another substantive was soon formed, *sestertium* (genitive *i*., neuter), which expressed a sum of 1000 *sesterces*, about \$37.50 (but this did not exist as a coin). Hence *duo sestertia* is the same as *duo millia sestertium*, 2000 *sesterces*. Distributive numbers are also very frequently used, as *bina sestertia*, *terna sestertia*, *centena sestertia*, 100,000 *sesterces*. A million *sesterces* is in full, *decies centena millia sestertium* (genitive plural of *sestertius*) or simply *decies centena* (omitting *millia sestertium*). But here again the use of the substantive *sestertium* is very frequent to express millions, which is, however, only used in the singular; and when joined to numeral adverbs means not 1000 but 100,000 *sesterces*; thus, *sestertium decies* 1,000,000; *sestertium vicies* 2,000,000.

The Attic *talent* has 60 *minae*, one *mina* is 100 *drachma*; one *drachma* is $4\frac{1}{2}$ sesterces, about \$0.16 $\frac{1}{2}$; one *mina* is 450 sesterces, equivalent to \$16.88; one *talent* is 27,000 sesterces, in value \$1012.

8. The Roman foot (*pes*) is divided into sixteen inches (*digiti*); it is 8 lines shorter than our foot, and is equal to 11.6 inches. The span (*palmus*) = 4 *digiti*; the ell (*cubitus*) = $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet; the pace (*passus*, double step) = 5 feet; the rod (*decempeda*) = 10 feet. The *iugerum*, a surface measure, is 240 feet long by 120 wide, or 28,800 square feet.

On the public highways there was, at every 1,000 paces, a milestone (*lapis* or *milliarium*, *scil. marmor*), this distance forms the Roman mile (*mille passuum*), equal to 5,000 Roman feet or $\frac{1}{2}$ of a geographical mile. *Ad quintum lapidem*, at the fifth milestone, *i. e.*, five miles from the city; likewise, *ad tertium milliarium*, three miles from Rome.

4. The *amphora* (*quadrantal*), about a cubic foot, equivalent to nearly 7 gallons wine measure. It contains 2 *urnas*, 8 *modios*, 8 *congios*, or 48 *sextarios*; a *sextarius* is a little more than a half-pint.

CHAPTER LVI.

THE MOST COMMON ABBREVIATIONS.

§ 349.

NAMES.—A., *Aulus*.—App., *Appius*.—C. or G., *Caius* or *Gaius*.—Cn. or Gn., *Cneius* or *Gnaeus*.—D., *Decimus*.—K., *Cacso*.—L., *Lucius*.—M., *Marcus*.—M., *Manius*.—Mam., *Mamercus*.—P., *Publius*.—Q. or Qu., *Quintus*.—S. or Sex., *Sextus*.—Ser., *Servius*.—T., *Titus*.—Ti. or Tib., *Tiberius*.

OFFICIAL OR LEGAL DESIGNATIONS.—A. d., *ante diem*.—Aed., *Aedilis*.—C., *Cal.*, or *Kal.*, *Kalendae*.—Cos., *Consul*; *Coss.*, *Consules*.—Des., *designatus*.—D., *Diem*.—Eq. Rom., *Equus Romanus*.—F., *filius*.—Id., *Idus*.—Imp., *Imperator*.—Leg., *Legatus*, or *legio*.—N., *nepos*.—Non., *Nonae*.—O. M., *Optimus Maximus*.—P. C., *Patres conscripti*.—P. R., *Populus Romanus*.—Pr., *Praetor*.—Praef., *Praefectus*.—Proc., *Proconsul*.—Pont. Max., *Pontifex Maximus*.—Quir., *Quirites*.—Resp., *Respublica*.—S., *Senatus*.—S. C., *Senatus consultum*.—Tr. Pl., *Tribunis plebis*.—S. P. Q. R., *Senatus Populusque Romanus*.—Q. B. F. F. S., *Quod bonum fonestum foliaque sit*.

IN LETTERS.—S., *Salutem*.—S. P., or S. D., or S. P. D., *Salutem plurimam*, or *Salutem dico* (or *dicit*), or *Salutem plurimam dico*.—S. V. B. E. E. V., *Si vales, bene est; ego valeo*.—S. V. V. B. E. E. V., *Si eos valetis* etc.—D., *Data*.

OTHER ABBREVIATIONS WHICH WERE ADOPTED LATER.—A., *anno*.—a. c., *anni currentis*.—a. pr., *anni praeteriti*.—A. M., *anno mundi*.—A. u. c., *anno urbis conditae*.—A. Chr., *anno Christi*.—a. Chr. n., *ante Christum natum*.—Ictus, *Iurisconsultus*.—L. s., *Loco sigilli*.—M. S., *manuscriptus* (*sc. liber*).—c., *caput*.—cf., *confer* or *conferatur*.—i. e., *id est*.—h. l., *hoc loco*.—l. c. or l. l., *loco citato* or *laudato*.—p. or pag., *pagina*.—sc. or scil., *scilicet*.—sq. or seq., *sequens*.—v., *versus*.—v. or vid., *vide* or *videatur*.

INDEX.

The Figures denote the Sections, Subdivisions, and Notes.

A.

Abdere, conceal, 235, 2, 2.
Abdicare se magistratu, to lay down an office, 232, 2, 1.
Abest: *non multum abest quin*, 252, 2, n.; *longe abest ut*, 275; *tantum abest ut — ut*, 275, 2, 2.
Abhinc tres annos (tribus a.), three years ago, 234, 2, 2.
Abhorrere ab, shrink from, 232, 2, 3.
ABLATIVE, use of, 220; abl. of instrument., 220, 1: of inanimate and living agent, 220, 2, 3; of cause, 221; after part. and prep., 221, 2, 1 and 2; of price, 218, 2, 222; with *dignus*, 223; of manner, 224; of quality, 225; of limitation, 226; of comparison, 227; of measure, 228; of plenty, 229; after *opus est*, 230; after *fruor, fungor*, 231; of separation, 232; of place, 233; to express direction, 233, 2; of time, 234; of punishment, 217, 1; after prepos., 162, 163.
Ablative absolute, 233; with subst. and adj. instead of part., 234.
Absens, in one's absence, for adv., 233, 1.
Absolvere, to acquit, with gen., 217.
Abstinerere (se), to abstain, 232; *non (vix aegre) abstinere quin*, 252, II.
Abundare, to abound in, takes abl., 229.
Abunde, with gen. of quant., 212, 2.
Abuti, to abuse, 231.
Ac, and, 165, a, 1; than, 170, 2; *ac si*, as if, takes subj., 254, 2.
Accedit quod and *ut*, in addition, 276, 4, 3.
Accidit ut, it happens, 275, 2.
Accipere, receive, with fut. part. pass., 281, 3, n.
Accommodatus, suitable with (dat. and ad.), 287, 1; 288, 2, 1.
Accusare, to accuse, 217 and 2, 3; takes *quod*, 276.
ACCUSATIVE, use of, 198; after transit. verbs, 193; with *tuo, deficio*, 194; after intrans. verbs, 194, 3, 4; after verbs compounded with pre-

pos., 195; after *piget, decet, fallit*, etc., 196. Double acc. after verbs, 197; double obj. acc., after *docere, colo*, and verbs of asking, 198, 1, 2; acc., after verbs of remembering, 216, 2; acc. of extent, 199; of exclamation, 202; Greek acc., 226, 3; of neut. pron. instead of another case, 202, 2; in answer to the question, For what? 203, 3, 2; acc. and dat., after *metuo, caveo*, 204, 2; acc. after prep., 161, 163.
ACCUSATIVE, with the infinitive, 287; after verbs of saying and feeling, 268; after verbs of wishing and permitting, 269; after imper. verbs, subst. and adj., with *est* in indirect discourse, 277; as continuation of the nom. and inf. contr., 273, 2, below; circumloc. by *fore ut*, 274, 4; acc. with inf., or *ut* after *persuadeo, censeo*, etc., 268, 1; after *impero*, 269, 3; after *interest* and *refert*, 270; in exclamations, 272; after *efficere*, to prove, 275, 2, 3; acc., with inf. or *quod* after verbs of feeling, 271, 276; acc. with inf. or *quominus* after *prohibeo*, 269, 1; 263.
Adesse scribendo, to be present at the writing, 287.
ADJECTIVE, 48; indecl. adj., 47, I, 2; *heteroclitica*, 48, II; defectives, 48, III, 5, 2; comparison, 50; adj. without comparison, 53, 3; verbal adj., 181; denominative, 182; diminutive, 182, 20; adj. with object genit., 213; adj. of separation with abl., 232, 2; neut. adj. as subst., 212, 2; 237, 4, 1, 2; adj. rarely with proper names, 237, 1; two adj. in comparison, 237, 5; adj. for adv. and adverbial phrases, 236; for adv. of place and time, 237.
Adire hereditatem, to take possession of an inheritance; *aliquom*, to address some one, 195, 1.
Adiungere, add, subjoin, 205 and note.
Adiuvare, to help, governs acc., 194.
Adipisci, to obtain, with *ut*, 275, 1.
Admirari, to wonder at, takes acc. with inf., also *quod*, 271.

- Admonere**, remind, 216, 1, and note; with double acc., 198, 8.
- Adspargere**, besprinkle, 206.
- Adulari**, flatter, 194, 1.
- Advenire**, arrive, takes *in*, with acc., 235, 2, 2.
- ADVERBS**, 155; of time, 156; of place, 157; manner, 158; in *usus*, 159, 1; in *im*, 2; comparison of adv., 160; adv. with *esse*, 189, II, c, 5; adv. of place, with gen., 212, 2, 8; of quantity, with gen., 212, 2.
- Aegre fero**, to take it ill, has acc. with inf., also *quod*, 271, 276.
- Aemulari**, to vie with, 194, and n. 1.
- Aequare** and **aequiparare**, to be equal to, 194, and n. 1.
- Aestimare**, esteem, with gen., 218, 1.
- Afflicere aliquem aliqua re**, 229.
- Affinis**, akin, with dat. and gen., 203, 2, 1.
- Affluere**, to abound in, takes abl., 229.
- Age, agite**, come! well! 150; *agedum*, well, come on! 264, 8, 2.
- Aggredi aliquem**, to attack, 195, n. 1.
- AGREEMENT** of subj. and pred., 189, 190; of the attrib. and subst., 191, 1 and 2; of pron. and subst., 191, 3; of apposit., 191, 5; of the part., 279, 8.
- Aio**, I say, conj., 147, use, 148, note.
- Alienare ab**, estrange, 232, 2, 3.
- Alienus**, strange, averse, takes abl. with or without *ab*, 232, 2.
- Aliquid** and **aliquid**, 63, n. 1; with gen. of quantity, 222, 2, note.
- Alius, aium**, 238, 7, c, 3.
- Alone**, only, used as adj., 236, 2, 237, 1, note.
- Alter, alterum colit**, 238, 7, c, 3.
- Although**, 247, 4; 254, 5, note; 256, 2.
- An**, interrogative particle, 176, 1, 2, and note 3.
- Angor**, takes acc. with inf., also *quod*, 271.
- An non**, or not, in double questions, 176, 2.
- Answers**, 176, 1.
- Ante**, before, express time, 234, 2, and n. 1.
- Antecedere** and **anteire**, with dat. and acc., 195, n. 2.
- Anteponere**, 205.
- Antequam**, before tenses and moods, 255, 2.
- Anxius**, with abl., 221, 2; with gen., 218, 2.
- Apaga**, begone, 150, 2.
- Apparere**, to appear, with double acc., 192, 2, a.
- Appellare**, to call, with double acc., 197, 1; pass. with double nom., 192, 2, c.
- Appetens** takes gen., 214.
- APPOSITION**, 191, 4, 5; in a relative clause, 238, 5.
- Aptus**, fit, 203, 1, 2, and n. 1; with dat. of gerund, 287, 1; with ad and acc. of gerund, 288, 1, 1; *aptus quis*, with the subj., 258.
- Arbitrabor**, I would have thought, 247, 2, a.
- Arcere**, to keep off, 232.
- Arcessere**, to summon, with gen., 217.
- Ardere**, to burn, *ardens odio*, 221, 2, 1.
- Arguere**, to accuse, with gen., 217; *arguere*, pers. const., 273.
- ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS**, 292; grammatical arrang., rhetorical arrang., 292; principle of gram. arrang., 293; modifiers, 294, 1 and 2; position, conjunctions and relatives, 295; rhetorical arrangement, 296, 1; contrasts 297; contrasted words, 299; contrast in pairs or couples, 301; position of adj., 302, 2; of gen., 302, 8; position of demons. pron. 303, 1; of the relat., 303, 2; of prepos., 304; prep. when separated from their cases, 305, 1, 2 and 3; of conjunct., 306; of particles, 307; non., 307, 1; *etiam adeo*, 307, 2; usual constr., 308; the voc., 308, 2; letters, 308, 3; Rhythm. 309, 310.
- Arsis**, 335, 2.
- As**, after *talis, tantus, tot*, rendered by the correl. pron. 69, 2, 2; 170, 2; by *ac, atque*, 170, 2, and 238, 2, a.
- As follows**, 233, 1, note.
- As soon as, as often as**, 245, 2, and 256, II, 2.
- Ask**, with double acc., 193, 2.
- Assequi**, to obtain, takes *ut*, 275, 1.
- Assiduus**, used instead of adv., 236, 2.
- At, atamen, at enim**, 167 and note.
- Atque**, and, 165, 1; as, 170, 2.
- ATTRIBUTE**, agrees with subst., 191, 1 and 2; subst. as attribute, 191, 4.
- Audivi eum dicere, quum diceret, dicentem**, 281, 4, 2.
- Ausim** = *ausus sim*, 106.
- Auspicato**, after taking the auspices, 283, 2, 3.
- Ausus**, daring, 278, 4.
- Aut, or; aut — aut**, either — or, 166.
- Autem** bnt. 177.
- Ave, hail!**, 173.
- Avidus, desirous, with acc.**, 212.

B.

- Bell*, in war, 201, 2.
Bonus with gerund (dat. and ad.), 287, 1, and 288, 2, 1.
 But, rendered by *nisi*, 171.
 Buy, sell, 218, 5

C.

- Caesura*, 335, 4 and 5.
Canere receptus, sound a retreat, 208, n. 1.
Capitis damnare, 217, 1.
Carere, miss, be wanting, with abl. 229.
Causa, for the sake; position, 164, 15, 4, with gen.; *mea, tua causa*, ib. and 231, 2, 1; with gen. of gerund and fut. part. pass.; *mea* and *mei conservandi causa*, 286, 2.
Cause, iubeo, takes inf. pass., 269, 2, *curare*, with fut. part. pass., 281, 3, note.
Cavere aliquem, am on my guard against, *aliquid*, take care of some one, 204, 2.
Cave, with subj., 265, 1.
Cedo, give, say, let's see, 151.
Celare, conceal from, 198, 1 and note.
Canatus, dined, 278, 2.
Censere, to believe, takes acc. with inf., 268, 1; to advise, resolve, takes *ut*, also acc. with inf., 268, 1 and 3.
Certiorum facere, inform, 197; takes acc. with inf., 268.
 Choose, 197.
Circumfluere, flow around, 195.
Circumdare, surround, put around, const., 206.
Civis, civem, 238, 7, c., n. 3.
 Clauses, relative, in subj. or ind. 262; position of clauses, 815, etc.; intrinsically dependent, 238, 7, c. n.
 Clothing, by abl., with or without *cum*, 224, 3, 2.
Coarguere, convict, with gen., 217.
Coepi, conjug., 146; *coepitum sum*, with pass. inf., 14, 6, note.
Cogere, force, compel, 198, 3; acc. with inf., 269; *cogo in aliquem locum*, assemble, 235, 2.
Cognoscere, recognize, with double accusative, 197; *cognito*, abl. absol., 283, 3; *cognitum habeo*, know, 278, 5.
 Collective nouns in sing. with verb in plur., 189, II. 4, a.
Collocare, place, put, with *in* and abl., 235, 1.
Comitiis, at the elections, 234, 1, 1.
Commonere, commonefacere, remind, with gen., 216.
Commovere, with *ut*, 275, 1.

- Communicare*, communicate, 208, 3, n. 3.
 COMPARATIVE, 50-54; Comp. of adv., 160; comp. with abl. of comparison and measure, 227, 228, with partitive gen., 212, 1; comp. of adj. of place for adv., 236, 2; two comparat. in comparisons, 237, 5.
Comperto, abl. abs., 283, n. 3.
Complere, fill, with abl., 229.
Compos, having the use, with gen., 213.
 Composition, formation of words by, 185.
Concedere, grant, with *ut*, 275.
Condemnare, condemn, 217 and n. 3.
 CONDITIONAL CLAUSES, tenses, moods of, 247; 248, 3, c. and note.
Conducere, rent, with abl. and gen., 218, 2; with fut. part. pass., 281, 3, note.
Conferre, compare, 205 and n. 2.
Confidere, trust in, 221, 2.
 CONJUGATION, 75, contracted and antiquated forms, 106; periphrastic conj., 107; irreg., 137; defective, 145.
 CONJUNCTIONS, classified, 165; copulative, 165, I; disjunctive, 166; adverbative, 167; illative, 168; causal, 169; comparative, 54, 2 and 170; conditional, 171; concessive, 173; final, 173; temporal, 174.
Consciens, conscious, with gen., 213.
 Consequence, clauses of, tense, 246, 4, 2.
Considere, settle, takes *in* with abl., 235, 2.
Consilium est, takes inf. and gen. of gerund, 286, 1.
 Consonants, changes by assimilation, 185, 5, notes; in perfects and supines, 76, II, note 2 and 3.
Constituere, put, place, with *in* and abl., 235, 2.
 Construction according to sense, with collective nouns, 189, II, 4, a; in apposition, or with pronouns, 191, 5, 2; *tua ipsius soror, vestra omnium salus*, 210, 2, 3.
 CONSTRUCTION of sentences, 811, etc.
Consuetudo est, with *ut*, 275; with inf. or gen. gerund, 286, 1; *consuetudine*, according to custom, 224, 1.
Consulo te and *tibi*, 204, 2.
Contemptui esse, to be an object of contempt, 208, note.
Contendere, strive, takes *ut*, 275, 1.
Contentus, satisfied with, 221, 2.
Contingit, it happens, takes *ut*, 275, 1.
Contentionibus, at the meetings, 234, 1.

Contrasts, words in, 301, 297.
Convenire, to meet together, in *locum*, 235, n. 2; *convenire aliquem*, to meet one, 195, n. 1.
Convincere, to convict, takes gen., 217.
 Could, could have, by the indic., 247, II, 1 and 2.
Oreare, to choose for leader, with double accus., 197, 3, 1; pass. with double nom., 192, 2, c.
Credere, frequent, instead of adv. 236, 2.
Crederes, you would have believed, 248, 3, a, note.
Cum, appended to pronouns, 63, 1; 66, 1, 2; to denote accompaniment, 220, 1, n. 1; manner 224, 2, 3; articles of dress, 224, 3, 2; *cum ferro*, ib.
Oupidus, longing for, takes gen., 213.
Oupto, takes inf., and acc. with inf., 269; *cupere aliquem, alicui*, 204, 2.
Ourare, with *ut*, 275, 1; with fut. part. pass., 281, 3, note; *cura ut*, for the imperat. 265, 2.

D.

Damnare, to condemn, 217 and n. 1; with *quod*, 276, 4.
Dare, to give, with double dat., 208; for what, dat. and acc., 208, n. 2; 197, 2; *dare*, with fut. part. pass., 281, 3, n.
 DATIVE, constr. of, 208; of advantage, 208; ethical dat., 208, 2, 1; after *medeor, persuadeo*, etc., 204; after verbs compounded with prep., 205; after *circumdo*, etc., double constr., 206; after *esse* = to have, 207; of the name, *mihî nomen est*, double dat., to serve, *tribuere, mittere*, 208; dat. of purpose, 208, n. 1; dat. or acc. after verbs, 204, 1; dat. after the pass. instead of *ab*, 209; 275, 2, 4; dat. of predicate after *licet esse*, 270, 3, 2; dat. of ger. after official names, 287, 3.
Decet, it becomes, with acc., 196, 2.
Declarare, declare, with double acc., 197; pass., with double nom., 192, 2, c.
Dedecet, it is unbecoming, with acc., 196, 2.
Deesse, be wanting, with dat., 205.
 Defectives in case, 47, II; in number, 47, III-V.
Defendere ab iniuria, iniuriam, 232, 2, 2.
Deficere, am wanting, leave, with acc., 194; *animo*, lose courage; *a re publica*, fall away from the state, 194, 2.
Defungi, with abl., 21, note.

Delectari, with abl., 231, 2; *delectat me*, 196, 3.
 Demand, 198, 3.
 DEMONSTRATIVES, decl., 64, 65; omitted in relative clauses, 288, 3; in a particip. constr., 280, 2; 281, 4, 1.
 Deponent verbs, conj., 95; meaning, 95, 104; perfect and sup. of dep., 183; dep. with reflexive meaning, 104; perf. part. with pass. meaning, 278, 3; with present meaning, 278, 4.
 DERIVATION of words, 178; of subst. from verbs, 178; of subst. from subst., 179; of subst. from adj., 180; of adj., from subst., 182, 1-19; of adj. from adj., 182, 20; of verbs from verbs, 183; denominate verbs, 184; of adv., 158, 2; 159.
 Desideratives, 183, 2.
Desistere, leave off, 282.
Desitus sum, with pass. inf., 146, note.
Desperare, to despair of, 194, 3.
Deterrere, to deter, 282; with *ne* and *quominus*, 250, 8; 253.
Dextra, on the right, *dextra parte*, on the right side, 233, 1, n., and 2, n.
Diaeresis, 335, 4.
Dicere, call, with double acc., 197; pass. with double nom., 192, 2, b; *dicor* with pera. constr., 192, 5; *diceres*, you would have said, 248, 3, a, note.
Dico audiens sum, I obey, 203, 1, n.
Dies, day, gen., 46; *diem dicere* with dat., 208, n. 1; with dat. ger., 287, 2.
Differo, I differ, 282, 2, 3.
Difficile est, it would be difficult, too difficult, 247, II, 1; *difficilis* with inf., sup., or *ad*, 291; 288, 1, 1.
Diffidus, distrusting, 278, 4.
Dignari, deign, be considered worthy, with abl., 233, n.
Dignus, worthy, with abl., 233; *dignus qui* with subj., 258; with sup. in *u*, 291, n.
Diligens veritatis, fond of truth, 214.
 DIMINUTIVES, subst., 179, 2; adj., 182, 20; verbs, 183, 4.
 Diphthongs, 324.
Discernere a, distinguish, 282, 2, 3.
Distare a, differ, 282, 2, 3.
Distinguere a, distinguish, 282, 2, 3.
 DISTRIBUTIVE NUMBERS, 53; with plur. words, 59, 3.
Docere, teach, 198, 1, and note; with acc. and inf. or *ut*, 263.
Docilis with *ad* and acc. of gerund, 288, 2, 1.
Dolere with abl., 231, 2; with acc.

- 194, 4; takes acc. with inf., also *quod*, 271 and 276.
- Domus*, decl., 41; constr., 201, 1 and 2.
- Donare*, give, present, 206.
- Donec*, whilst, as long as, moods, 255, 1, and note.
- Double questions, 176, 2.
- Doubt, see *dubito*.
- Dubito num*, I doubt whether, *utrum* — *an*, whether — or, *dubito an* = *forsitan*, 252, II, note, and 176, 2, n. 3, *d*; *non dubito quin*, I do not doubt that, 252, II; (*non dubito* with inf., I do not hesitate, 252, II, note.
- Dubium non est quin*, 252, II.
- Dubius viae*, 218, 2.
- Ducere*, reckon, consider, with double acc., 197, 3; to estimate with gen. of price, 218, 1; to reckon with double dat., 201.
- Dum*, whilst, with ind., 255, 1; with pres. tense, 245, 1; until, with the ind. and subj., 255, 1; *dum (ne)* if only (not) with subj., 254, 3; tenses, 248, 3, c.
- Dummodo (ne)*, if only (not), with subj., 254, 3; tenses, 248, 3, c.
- E.
- Each other, 238, 7, c., 8.
- Ecce* / lo! behold! with nom. and acc., 202, 1.
- Edicto*, abl. abs., 238, n. 3.
- Efficere*, to make, with double acc., 197; pass. with double nom., 192, 2, c; *efficere*, to cause, with *ut*, 275, 1; to prove, takes acc. with inf., also *ut*, 275, 2, 3.
- Effugere*, to escape, 194 and 2.
- Egere*, to be in need of, with abl., 229.
- Eius, eorum*, his, etc., their, 238, 8.
- Either — or, 166.
- Eligere*, to choose, with double acc., 197; pass. with double nom., 192, 2, c.
- Elision, 335, 6.
- Emere*, to buy, takes abl. and gen., 218, 2.
- En* / lo! behold! with nom. and acc., 202, 1.
- Epicœna*, subst., 4; 6.
- Ergo*, for the sake of, takes gen., 164, 15, 4.
- Ergo*, consequently, 168 and 1.
- Esse*, to be, conj., 72; comp., 74; with dat. = *habere*, 207; with double dat., 208; with gen. of price, 218, 1; *est alicuius*, it is the duty, property, 215, 1; *esse* with gen. of gerund, 226, 4; with dat. of gerund, 237, 2; *est qui, sunt qui*, with subj., 230; *esse* with adv., 189, II, 5; *esse, est, sunt*, omitted, 189, II, 3.
- Et*, and, 165; when three or more words are connected, 165, n. 1; *et — et*, 165, 3; *et — etiam (et ipse)*, 165, n. 3; *neque — et, et — nec*, 165, 7; *et non, neque*, 165, 4; *et is (quidem)*, and that too, 238, 1.
- Etiam* and *quoque*, also, 165, 2 and n. 3; *etiam*, yet, still, before the comp., 54, 8; *etiam, yes*, 176, 1.
- Etiamet*, though, mood, 254, 4, note; 248, 3, c.
- Etsi*, although, mood, 254, 4, note; with abl. abs., 233, 2, 1; concessive, 172.
- Evadere*, become, with double nom., 192, 2.
- Even = *vel*, before compar. and superlat., 54, 6.
- Evenit*, it happens, takes *ut*, 275, 2.
- Excedere*, to depart, with or without prep., 232; *excedere modum*, exceed the bounds, 195, n. 1.
- Excellere*, 195, n. 2.
- Exclamations by interject., 177; by acc., 202; by acc. with inf. or *ut*, 272; by the subj., 248, 3, b.
- Existimare*, consider, with double acc., 197; pass. with double nom., 192, 2; *existimor*, pers. const., 192, 5.
- Expellere*, to banish, 232, 1.
- Expers*, devoid, with gen., 213.
- Explorato*, abl. abs., 233, 3.
- Exsisto*, to become, exist, with double nom., 192, 2.
- Exsultare*, rejoice, exult, with abl., 221, 2.
- Extent, with acc., 199.
- Extremus*, last, instead of, adv., 236, 2; *extremus est ut*, 275, 2.
- Ezueres*, take off, rob, 206.
- F.
- Facio*, passive of the compounds, 144, 2, 3, 4; 187, note.
- Fac ut (ne)*, for the imperat., 265, 2.
- Facere* with double acc., to make, 197, 1; with gen. of price, 218, 1; with inf. pass. and part., 275, 2, 4; *facere ut*, 275, 1; *facere non possum, quin*, 252, II.
- Facilis*, easy, with inf. sup. or ad., 288, 1, 1; 291; *facile*, adv., 158, 2, b, note.
- Factum volo*, I wish this be done, 274, 3.
- Fallit me*, it escapes me, 196, 3.

Fari, say, conj. 149; *fando audivi*, I know by hearsay, 149.
Fas, right, with sup. in *u*, 291.
Fecundus, ferax, fertilis, fertile, with gen., 213.
 Feeling, verbs and adj. of, take the abl., 221, 2; verbs take acc. with inf., 271; also *quod*, 276, 4.
Fero, I carry, conj., 140; comp., 140; *fertur* and *feruntur*, it is said, pers. const., 273.
Ferrum, iron; *cum ferro*, with the sword, 224, 3, 2.
Fidere, I place trust in, 208, 1; 221, 2; *fideus*, trusting, 278, 4.
Fieri, become, am made, conj., 144; with double nom., 192, 2; with double dat., 208; with gen. of price, 218, 1; *feri alicuius*, 215, 1; *fit ut*, 276, 2; *fit*, in prosody, 324, 2, 3.
 FIGURES and tropes, 321, 322.
Filius, filia, omitted, 210, 2, 5.
Flagitare, ask urgently, 193, 2.
Flagrare, to burn; *flagrans cupiditate*, with passion, 231, 2, 1
 Following, 283, 1, note.
Fore = futurum esse, forem = essem, 153; *fore ut*, instead of fut. inf., 274, 4.
 Former, adj. instead of adv., 286, 2; 287, 2.
 Fractions, 60, 2.
Frequens, for *frequenter*, 286, 2.
 Frequentatives, 185, 1.
Fretus, trusting in, with abl., 221, 2.
Frus, to enjoy, with abl., 231; *fruedus*, pass. and pers., 235, 2, 1.
Fugere, to flee from, 194, 3; *fugit me*, it escapes me, 196, 3.
Fungi, perform, with abl., 231; *fungendus*, passive, 235, 21.
 FUTURE, force and use, 244, 1; fut. perf. after *simulat*, etc., 245, 2, 4; fut. with *non*, prohibits, 265, n. 1; the fut. supplied, 246, 6, a.

G.

Gaudere, rejoice, with abl., 221, 2; takes acc. with inf., also *quod*, 271, 276; *gavisus*, 278, 4.
Genere, by race, 226, 2.
 GENITIVE, 210; subject gen., 210; possessive gen. 2, 2; 3, 4; object gen., 210, 2, and 2. 1; elliptic, 210, 2, 5; gen. of qual., 211; part. gen., 212; gen. of quant., 212, 2; after adv. of place, 212, 2, 3; after adj., 213; after participles, 214; after verbs of memory, 216; after *esse fieri*, 215, 1; 207, 2; gen. of crime, 217; of price, 218; gen. of person

after *interest*, 219; after *piget*, etc. 196; gen. of gerund and fut. part. pass., 286; posit. of gen., 302, 3; gen. *ius*, long, 324, 2, 2.
Genitus, born of, takes abl. with or without *ex*, 220, 3, n.
 GERUND, 285; gen., 286; dat., 287; acc., 288; abl., 289; changed into fut. part. pass., 285, 2.
Gloriari, to boast, 221, 2 and n. 2; takes acc. with inf., also *quod*, 271.
Gratia, for the sake of, 104, 15, 4, c; with gen. and *mea gratia*, ib., and 221, 2, 1.
Gratias agere, to thank, takes *quod*, also acc. with inf., 276 and n. 1.
Graviter fero, I take it ill, has acc. with inf., also *quod*, 271; 276, 4.
Gratulari, takes *quod*, 276, 4.

H.

Have, *esse* with dat. and abl. of qual., 207 and 3; 225; by *uti*, 231; object or end, *habere*, with dat. and acc., 197; 208, 3, 1 and 2.
Habere, to consider, with double acc. or *pro*, 197; *haberi*, to be regarded, with double nom., 192, 2, e; *haberi ludibrio*, to be an object of contempt, 208, 3, note; *habeo* and *mihî est*, 207; *habeor maximi*, am esteemed very highly, 218, 1; *habere*, with double dat., 208, 2; with perf. part. pass., 278, 5.
Habitus, with dat. of gerund, and with *ad*, 287; 288, 2, 1.
Haud scio an = forsitan, 175, n. 1; 176, 2, n. 3, d.
 Hear, takes inf. *quum* and part., 281, 4, 2.
Hei, with, 202, 1.
Heteroclitu and *heterogenea*, 32, 6; 41; 42, 2; 47, VI-VIII.
 Hexameter verse, 337.
Hic, iste, ille, 64, 3; 303, 1.
 Historical tenses, perf., 240, 2; pres., 242, 1; 245, 2, 1; pres. inf., 242, 2.
Honestus, with sup. in *u*, 291.
 Hope, takes acc. with fut. inf., 268, 2.
Horrere, with acc., to dread, 194, 4.
Hortor, to exhort, with double acc., 193, 3.
 How long? how old? etc., 199, 1.
Humi, on the ground, 201, 2.

I. J.

Iactare, to boast, 221, 2, 3.
Id artus, 202, 2.
Id, idem, with gen. of quant., 212, 1; 204, 2.
Idem qui (ac. atque), 233, 2, a.

- Idoneus*, fit, suitable, 208, f and n. 1.
-ier, old ending of the inf. pass., 106, 8.
Igitur, 168, 1.
Ignarus, ignorant, with gen., 213; instead of adv., 236, 1.
Ignorans, unwittingly, instead of adv., 236, 1.
Ille, hic, iste, 64, 8; *illud*, with gen. of quant., 212, 2, note; *illud Platonis*, 238, 1; position, 308.
Imitari, 194.
Immemor, unmindful, with gen., 213.
Immunis, pure, takes abl., with or without prep., 232, 2.
Impedire, to hinder, with *quominus, ne quin*, 253.
Imperare, to command, takes *ut*, also acc. with inf., 269, 3.
IMPERATIVE, pres. and fut., 264, 2 and 3; imperat. softened, 264, 3, 1; instead of a condit. clause, 264, 3, 2; in prohibitions, 265; paraph. (*cave, fac*, etc.), 265, 1 and 2.
Imperfect, 241; imperf. in the phrases, I should have, etc., 247, 2; imperf. subj. for the Eng. plup. potential, 249, 3; 260, 3.
Imperitus, inexperienced, with gen., 213.
Impersonal verbs, 154; with acc. and gen., 196; take acc. with inf., 270.
Impertire, present, 206, 2, note.
Impetrare, with *ut*, 275.
Implere, to fill, with abl., 229.
Impos, incapable, with gen., 213.
In, for determ. place, 200; 201; 233; time, 234, 1; with abl., whither, 235, 2.
Inanis, empty, with gen., 213.
Inauspicato, 233, 2, 3.
Incendere, to burn, *ira incensus*, 221, 2, 1.
Inchoatives, perf. and sup., 129; derivation, 183, 3.
Incredibilis with sup. in *u*, 291.
Incumbere, 205, note.
Incusare, accuse, with gen., 217.
Indeclinable words, 2 and 47, I.
Indefinite subj., 192, 6; 154, 4; omitted, 267, 2.
Indigere, to want, with abl., 229; to stand in need of, 229, note.
Indignari, takes acc. with inf., 271; also *quod*, 276.
Indignus, unworthy, with abl., 223; with sup. in *u*, 291; *indignus qui* with subj., 258.
INDICATIVE, meaning, 247; use, 248, 3, c, note; after *sunt qui*, 260, 1; in relative clauses, 262, 2.
Indirect discourse, 277.
Indirect questions, 263; 176, 2; by acc. with inf., 277, 4, 1.
Induere, clothe, 206.
Inferior, infimus, instead of adv., 236, 2.
INFINITIVE, subj. and obj., 266; 269; 270; 271; after adj., 266, 4; historical inf., 242, 2; acc. with inf., 267; with verbs of saying, etc., 268; tenses of the inf., 274; fut. inf. after verbs, to hope, etc., 268, 2; inf. or gen. of gerund, 286, 1; inf. instead of *ad* with gen., 288, 2; inf. in exclam., 272; nom. with inf., 273.
Inire societatem, magistratum, 195, 1.
Initio, ab initio, 234, 1, 1.
Iniuria, unjustly, 224, 3, 1.
Iniussu, 221, 2, 1.
Inops, poor, with gen., 213.
Inquam, 148.
Intrinsically dependent clauses, 238, 7, c, note.
Islands, names, 200, 4, and 201, 8.
Insimulare, to accuse, with gen., 217.
Inter for partit. gen., 212, 3; with gerund, 288.
Interdicere, exclude, forbid, 206, note.
Interesse rei, 205, 2, 1; *interest inter*, 205, 2, 1; *interest*, 219; takes *ut*, acc. with inf. or indirect quest., 219, 1; 270, 1, and 3, 8.
INTERJECTIONS, 177.
Interrogare, 198, 4, and note.
INTERROGATIVE particles, 176.
Inter se, each other, 238, 7, c, 3.
INTRANSITIVE verbs, 70, II, 2; with acc., 194, 3, 4; 195.
Inveniuntur qui with subj., 260.
Invidere, envy, 204, 1.
Invidus, for adv., 236, 3; 284, 3.
-io, verbs of third conj. in *io*, 105.
Ipse, for a reflex. in the ind. disc., 277, 4; *ipsius* with a possess. pron., 238, 9; case, 237, 2.
Irasci with dat., 204.
Is, et is (quidem), atque is, isque, and that too, *nec is*, and that not indeed, 233, 1; *eius*, his, 233, 7, b, note, and 8; *is qui* with perf. subj., 245, 2, 3.
Iste, hic, ille, 64, 3.
Ita, sic tam, 170, 1; *haud ita*, 175, 1.
Ita vivam, 248, b, 2.
Itaque, 168, a, note 1.
Iubere, order, command, takes acc. with inf., 269, 2; *iubeor*, 273.
Iucundus with sup. in *u*, 291; with *ad* and gerund, 288, 2, 1.

Judicare with double acc., 197; with double nom., 192, 2; pers. constr., 278.

Iuratus, 278, 2.

Iure, with reason, 224, 3, 1; *tuo iure*, 238, 9, note.

Iuseu, 221, 2, 1.

Iurare, help, with acc., 194; *iurat me*, 196, 8; *iuroaturus*, 77, IV, note.

K.

Know, 268, 3.

L.

Laborare, suffer, 221, 2, 2.

Laetari with abl., 221, 2; takes acc. with inf. or *quod*, 271; *hoc unum laetor*, 202, 2.

Laetus with abl., 221, 2; for adv., 236, 3.

Laudare, praise, takes *quod*, 276, 4.

Letters, tenses in, 243, 2; address, etc., 308, 3.

Lex est ut, 275.

Liberus for *libenter*, 236, 3.

Liber, free, takes abl. with or without prep., 232, 2.

Liberare, 232, 1; with gen., 217.

Licet, takes acc. with inf. or subj., 270 and 3, 1; *mihi licet esse otioso*, 270, 8, 2.

Licet, although, with subj. pres. and perf., 254, 5.

Locare, to let, with abl. and gen., 218, 2; with fut. part. pass., 281, 3, note.

Locare, to place, takes *in* with abl., 235, 2.

Loco, without *in*, 237, 1, note; *loco parentis esse alicui*, ib.; *locum capere*, with dat. of gerund, 287, 2; *nuo loco*, 233, 1, note.

Longe, by far, with superl., 54, 5; with compar. verbs, 228, 2.

Longum est, 247, II, 1, note.

Ludis, 234, 1.

M.

Mactare, sacrifice, 206.

Magni, *magno*, gen. and abl. of price, 218.

Make, 197.

Maledicere, with dat., 204.

Mandare, charge, takes *ut*, 275, 1; with fut. part. pass., 281, 3, note.

Mandatu meo, 221, 1.

Maneo, to stay, with double nom., 192, 2.

Maximi, gen. of price, 218.

Moderi, with dat., 204.

Medius, the middle, for adv., 236, 2.

Memini, 146; with gen., 216; acc., with inf. pres., 274, 2.

Memor, mindful, with gen., 213.

Memorabilis, with supine in *u*, 291. *Metuo te* and *tibi*, 204, 2; with *ut* and *ne*, 250, 3.

Miles, for *milites*, 189, II, a, 7.

Militias, in the field, 201, 2.

Minimo, abl. of price, 218, 2.

Minor, *minimus* (*natu*), younger, youngest, 226, 1.

Minoris, *minimi*, gen. of price, 218.

Minus, *minimum*, with gen. of quant., 212, 2.

Mirabilis, with sup. in *u*, 291.

Mirari, takes acc. with inf., also *quod*, 271.

Mirum quantum, with ind., 263, 2.

Misceor, to pity, takes *quod*, also acc. with inf., 276 and 1.

Miseret, 196, 1.

Mittere, to send, with fut. part. pass., 281, 3, note.

Moderari aliquid, *sibi*, 204, 2.

Modes (moods), 71.

MODIFIERS of the subj., 294, 1; of the predicate, 294, 2.

Modo (*ne*), with subj., 254, 2; tenses, 248, 2, c.

Molesto fero, takes acc., with inf., also *quod*, 271, 276.

Monere, advise, with double acc. or *de*, 198, 4, and 216, 2; with *ut*, 275, 1.

Monitu alicuius, 221, 2, 1.

Mori, to die, with double nom., 192, 2; *mortuus*, after death, 226, 1.

Mos, *moris est* with *ut*, 275, 2; with inf. and gen. of gerund, 236, 1; *Graeco more*, 224, 1.

Multare, condemn, with abl., 217, 1.

Multo, much, by far, with comp. and suppl., 54, 4, 5; with verbs, 228.

Multum, with gen., 212, 2; for *multo*, 228, 2.

Must, expressed by fut. part. pass., 107, notes 1 and 2; 154, 4; 247, II, 1.

N.

Nam, *namque*, *enim*, 169.

Nasci, to be born, with double nom., 192, 2.

Natu, by birth, 226, 1.

Natura and *a natura*, 229, 3, note.

Natus, born, with abl. and with *q*, 220, 3, note; old, 199, 2.

Ne with subj., 250, 1; for *ut* after verbs of fearing, 250, 3; for *quominus*, 253, note; *ne quis* for *est nemo*, 175, n, 3.

- Ne, enclitic*, 176; takes acc. with inf. in impassioned questions, 272.
- Nec*, and not, 165; *nec — nec*, neither — nor, 165, 4; *neque* or not, 176, 2; *nec is*, 238, 1.
- Necesse est* takes acc. with inf., also subj., 270 and 3, 1.
- Nedum* with subj., 254, 4.
- Nefas*, wrong, with sup. in *u*, 291.
- Negation, 175; with subj., 248; with *utinam*, *dummodo*, 254; two negat. in the same sentence, 175, 4.
- Nemo, nullus*, neuter, 68, 18, and note 1; *nemo*, defective, 47, 2, 2; *nemo non* and *nonnemo*, 175, 4; *nemo est qui* with subj., 260.
- Neque*, see *nec*; *neque neve*, 175, n. 1; 250, 2, *b*, note; position, 313.
- Nequeo*, I cannot, 143; pass. form with inf., 143, note.
- Ne — quidem*, not indeed, 175 and note 5.
- Nescio an* = *forsitan*, 176, n. 3, *d*; *nescio quis, quomodo* with ind., 263, 2.
- Nescius* for adv., 236, 1.
- Neve* = *et ne*, 175, n. 1; 250, 2, *b*, note.
- Neuter verbs = intrans., 70, II, 2.
- NEUTER adj. in sing. used as adv., 158, 2, *c*; adj. and pron. plur. for Eng. sing., 191, 6; of pronoun and adj. as subst. with gen., 212, 2.
- Neuter-passive verbs, 144, n. 2.
- Nihil non nonnihil*, 175, n. 4; *nihil* with gen. of quant., 212, 2; *nihil est quod* with subj., 260; *nihili* and *nihilo*, 218.
- Nimium*, too much, with gen. of quant., 212, 2; *nimium quantum* = *plurimum* with ind., 263, 2.
- Nisi* and *quam*, 171; *si non*, 171, n. 1; *non — nisi*, 175, n. 4; *nisi quod*, 276, 4, 2.
- Niti* with abl., 221, 2; with *ut*, 275, 1.
- Noti* with inf., 265, 1.
- Nomen est, datur*, 207, 3.
- Nominare*, call, name, with double acc., 197; pass. with double nom., 192, 2.
- NOMINATIVE, use, 192, 2-5.
- Nomin. with inf., 192, 4, 5; 273.
- Non*, not, 175, n. 1; *non est quod* with subj., 260; position, 307.
- Non magis (minus) quam*, 175, note.
- Non modo*, 175, notes 6, 7.
- Non quo, quod*, with subj., 251, 2.
- Non solum (modo, tantum) — sed etiam*, 167.
- Nos* for *ego, nos* for *meus*, 189, n. 7.
- Nubere*, to marry, with dat., 204.
- Nudare* with abl., 229.
- Num*, interrog. particle, 76.
- NUMERALS, 55; card. and ordinal, 55; decl., 56; 57; dates, 57, 2; distrib., 58; 59; adv. multip., 58; adj. multip., 60, 1; proport., 60, 2; denot. class, etc., 61.
- Numero*, in number, 226, 2; *parentis esse allicui*, 233, 1.
- Nuntiare*, 235, 2, 2; *nuntior*, pers. constr., 273; *nuntiatio*, abl. abs., 283, 3.
- Nunquam non* and *nonnunquam*, 175, n. 4.
- O.
- Obire negotium*, manage a business, *diu supremum*, die, 195, 1.
- Oblivisci*, to forget, 216.
- Obsequi*, to obey, with dat., 194, 1.
- Obstare*, to oppose, takes *quominus, ne, quin*, 253.
- Obstare*, hinder, with *quominus*, etc., 253.
- Obtractare*, belittle, with dat., 204.
- Occultus* for *occulte*, 236, 1.
- Officere*, to prevent, with *quominus, ne, quin*, 253.
- Old, *natus* or gen., 199, 2; 211, note; *natu maior*, 226, 1.
- Olere*, to smell of, with acc., 194, 4.
- One another, 233, 7, *c*, 3.
- Only, *non — nisi*, 175, note 4; by adj., 236, 2; 237, 2.
- Operam dare* with dat. of gerund, 237, 2.
- Opinione celerius*, 227, 2, note.
- Oportet* takes acc. with inf. or subj., 270 and 3, 1.
- Optare* with *ut*, 275, 1.
- Optimus* with sup. in *u*, 291.
- Opus est*, 230; with sup. in *u*, 291.
- Or, 166; in questions, 176, 1 and 2.
- Orare*, to pray, 196, 2, note, and *f* with subj., 275, 1.
- Ordare*, with abl., 229.
- Order of dependent clauses, 318; 319.
- Ortus*, born, descended, with abl., also *ex* and *a*, 220, 2, note.
- O si!* with subj., 254.
- Ostendere*, to show, with double acc., 197.
- Own, his, etc., 233, 7, *b*, note and 9.
- P.
- Paene*, almost, with perf. ind., 247, II, 3.
- Par*, with dat. of gerund, 237.
- Paratus*, ready, with inf., 266, 4.
- Parcere*, spare, with dat., 204.

- Pars, partim*, collect., takes pred. in plur., 139, II, 4, c.
- Particips*, partaking, with gen., 218.
- PARTICIPLE**, fut. act. from irreg. sup., 77, III, 1, note; part. of impers. verbs, 154, 2, 1; pres. part. with gen., 214; use of part., 278; as adj., 278, 2, note; part. pass. with act. meaning, 278, 2; of dep. verbs, 278, 3; with prea. meaning, 278, 4; perf. part., with *habeo*, 278, 5; partic. constr., 279, 2 and 3; 283; partic. for relat. clauses, 280; for adv. clauses, 281; expressed by *and*, *without*, *noun*, 282, 1, 2 and 3; fut. part. pass. with *dare*, etc., 281, 8, note; for the gerund, 285, 2; of *utor*, etc., with pass. meaning, 285, 2, 1; part. in *urus* with *eram*, etc., 247, 2, b.
- Parum*, too little, with gen. of quant., 212, 2.
- Parvi, parvo*, 218: 222.
- PASSIVE**, with reflex. meaning, 104; 204, 1.
- Pati*, suffer, takes acc. with inf., 268.
- Patiens*, with gen., 214, note.
- Patronymica*, 179, 9.
- Paulum*, little, with gen., 212, 2; *paulo*, somewhat, with compar., 54, 1.
- Pauper*, poor, with gen., 218.
- Pendere animi* and *animis*, to be in suspense, 218, 1, 2.
- Pendere*, esteem, with gen. of price, 218, 1.
- Pentameter verse, 338.
- Per*, to denote instrument, 220, 1, 1; manner, 224, 2, note, and 3, 1; time, 199, 1; comp. with verbs, 195.
- Perfect, formation, 76, I; change of pres. stem, 76, note 1 and 3; irreg. perf., 108 - 186; quantity of the antepenult, 327, 2; use of the perf., 240; perf. def. and hist. perf. 240, 1 and 2; perf. ind. after conj., 245, 1, note, 2, 3; pres. for hist. perf. 245, 2, 1; imperf. and plup. for perf., 245, 2, 2; fut. perf. for perf., 245, 2, 4; perf. subj. for pres. poten., 248, 3, a, note; with *is qui*, — *omnis*, 245, 2, 3; perf. and pres. subj. for fut. subj., 246, 3, a; with *paene*, 247, 2, 3.
- Perfloere*, takes *ut*, 275, 1.
- Perfrus*, with abl., 231.
- Perfungi*, with abl., 231.
- Perhibeor*, pers. const. 192, 5, and 278, 1.
- Periculum est ne*, 250, 3, note.
- Periphrast. conj., 107.
- Peritus*, skilled, 218.
- Permagni*, with gen. of price, 218.
- Permissu*, 221, 2, 1.
- Permittere*, takes *ut*, 275, 1.
- PERSONAL PRONOUNS**, omitted as subj., 74, 3; 189, II, 3, 1.
- Persuadere*, with dat., 204 and 1; takes *ut* and acc. with inf., 268, 1; *persuasum habeo, mihi persuasum est*, 278, 5, note.
- Petere*, 198, 2, note; with *ut*, 275, 1.
- Piget*, 196, 1.
- Place (where), abl. with and without *in*, 233, 1 and 2; (whither) 200, 1; (whence) 200, 2, and 232; adverbs of place, 157.
- Plenus*, full, with gen., 218.
- Pluit*, it rains, with abl., 229, note.
- PLURAL** of neut. adj. for sing., 191, 6; of verbs with collect., 189, 4, a; of subst. in sing., 191, 7; *nos* for *ego*, 189, II, 7.
- Pluraks tantum*, 47, IV; with distrib. numb., 59, 3; with diff. mean. in the sing., 47, V.
- Plurimi, pluris*, gen. of price, 218, 1 and 2.
- Plurimo*, abl. of price, 218, 2.
- Plurimum*, with gen. of price, 212, 2.
- Plus*, defect. subst., *plures, plura*, subst. and adj., 52, 1, note; *plus* with gen. of quant., 212; *plus aequo*, 227, 2; *plus minus (ve)*, 166.
- PLUPERFECT**, use, 243; for imperf., 243, 1; for perf. in letters, 243, 2; after *simulatus*, etc., 245, 2.
- Poenitet*, 196, 1.
- Ponere*, place, with *in* and abl., 235, 2.
- Poscere*, demand, 198, 2.
- Possessive instead of subj. and obj. gen., 210, 2, 3; with *ipsius, omnium*, etc., 210, 2, 3; 288, 9; *meum est*, 215, 2.
- Possible, *quam* with superl., 54, 7.
- Possum*, I can, 188; *posse*, as fut. inf., 274, 4, note; *possum, poteram*, I could, 247, 1 and 2.
- Post*, express. time, 284, 2 and 1; *post* in comp. with dat., 205.
- Postquam, posteaquam* with perf. ind., 245, 2; with fut. perf., 245, 2, 4; with plup., 245, 2, 5; 234, 2, 1.
- Postulare*, to summon, with gen., 217; demand, 198, 2; with *ut*, 275, 1.
- Potiri*, to obtain power, with abl., 231; *rerum*, supreme power, 231, note; part in *ndus*, pass., 285, 2, 1.
- Potus*, 278, 2.
- Procedere*, with double acc., 197, 2.

Praecedere, with dat. and acc., 195, 2.
Praecipere, with *ut*, 275, 1.
Praeditus, with abl., 229.
Praesae, with dat. of gerund, 287, 2.
Praesens, in (my) presence, for adv., 236, 1.
Praestare, surpass, 195, 2; with double acc., 197.
Praeterit me, it escapes me, 196, 3.
Praetermittere non possum quin, 252, II.
Praeterquam quod, 276, 4, 2.
Pransus, 273, 2.
PREDICATE, 189, 2; in the plur. after sing. collect. subj., 189, 2, 4, a; agrees with predic. noun, 189, 2, 6; predicate after several subj., 190, 1; in apposition, 191, 5; case of the pred. noun with the inf., 192, 3; 266, 2 and 3; after *licet esse*, 270, 3, 2.
Precor ut, 275, 1.
PREPOSITIONS, with acc., 161; with abl., 162; with acc. and abl., 163; with gen., 164, 15; position of prep., 164, 15; 304; 305; used as adv. and *vice versa*, 164, 16; prep. in compos., 185, 5, note; for obj. gen., 210, 2, 1; for partit. gen. (*ex, de, inter*), 212, 1, 3; for abl. of instr. and agent, 220, 1, 1 and 3; for abl. of cause, 221, 2, 1; part. for prep., 283, 2, 2; abl. abs. for prep., 284, 3; prep. with gerund, 286 - 289; prep. repeated after verbs, 205, 2.
PRESENT, use, 239, 2; after *dum*, 245, 1; hist. present, 242, 1; after conj., 245, 2, 1; pres. subj. in indir. disc., 277, 4, 3; pres. and perf. subj. for fut. subj., 245, 6, a.
PRICE, 218, 2; 222.
Princeps, for adv., 236, 2.
Principio, a *principio*, 234, 1.
Prior and *primus*, for adv., 236, 2.
Priusquam, tenses and moods, 255, 2.
Privare, rob. with abl., 229.
Pro, 203, 2, 4; *pro nihilo putare*, etc., *pro hoste*, 197.
Probably, 263, 3.
Prohibere, prevent, takes abl. and a, 232, 2, 2; takes acc. with inf., 269; also *quominus, ne, quin*, 253.
Proinde, 168, 1.
PRONOUNS, synt. pecul., 238; neut. pron. with gen. of quant., 212, 2; agrees with subst., 191, 2; position, 303, 304.
Prope, almost, with perf. ind., 247, 2, 3.
Prope est, with *ut*, 275, 2.

Propior, proximus, 203; *propior*, for adv., 236, 2.
Propinare, with fut. part. pass., 231, 3, note.
Proprius, own, proper, with dat. and acc., 203.
Prospicere, foresee, provide, 204, 2.
Provideo, provide, 204, 2.
Pudet, am ashamed, 196, 1.
Pueritia (in), *extrema pueritia*, 234, 1, 1.
Purpose, object, expressed by dat. and ad with adj., 203, 1 and n. 1; by dat. with *esse tribuere*, etc., 208; by acc., 208, 3, 2; by gen. of gerund, 286, 4; by dat. of gerund, 287 and 3; by acc. of gerund, also ad with fut. part. pass., 288, 1 and 2.
Purus, pure, takes abl. with or without prep., 232, 2.
Putare, consider, with double acc., 197, 3; pass. with double nom., 192, 2, c; *putor*, pers. constr., 192, 5; *putatur alioquin*, 215, 2, 1; *putares*, 248, 3, a, note; *putavi, putaram*, 247, 2, a; *puto*, with gen. of price, 218, 1.

Q.

Quā, which way, 233, 2, note.
Quaero, ex, ab aliquo, 198, 2, note.
Quaeso, I pray, 152; 264, 2.
Quam after the comp., 54, 2; omitted after abl., 227; after *minus, plus*, etc., 227, 2; *quam* for *postquam*, 234, 2, 1; *quam*, with superl., 54, 7; *quam* and *ut*, 170, 1.
Quamlibet, with subj., 254, 5.
Quamquam, with ind., 247, 4; with abl. abs., 233, 2, 1; conj., 172.
Quamvis, 173; with subj., 254, 5.
Quanti, gen. of price, 218; *quanti habitas*? 222.
Quanto — *tanto*, the — the, 228, 1.
Quantum, with gen. of quant., 212, 2.
Quantumvis, with subj., 254, 5.
Quasi, with subj., 254, 2.
Que, and, 165, 1, note.
Queo, I can, 143.
Queri takes acc. with inf., also *quod*, 271; 276.
QUESTIONS, 176; indirect quest. and rel. clause, 263, note 3; quest. in indir. disc., acc. with inf., 277, note 1; doubtful questions in subj., 248, 3, b; impassioned questions, acc. with inf., also *ut*, 272.
Qui, 66; 67.
Quicumque quisquis, 63, 2; *quicumque* with ind., 247, 4.

Quid, with gen. of quant., 212, 2, and note 1; 202, 2; *quid est quod* with sub., 260.

Quidam, 68, note 2.

Quidem, 172, note.

Quidquam, quidquid, with gen. of quant., 212, 2.

Quin, with subj., 252, 1; 282, 2, note; for *qui non*, etc., 252, 2; for *quominus*, 253; *non quin*, 251.

Quis for *quibus*, 66, 2.

Quis, aliquis, quisquam, 68, 4, and note 2.

Quis, qui, 67, 1, and *uter*, 3; *quis est qui*, 200.

Quisnam, quinam, 67, 2.

Quispiam, 68, 5.

Quisquam, ullus, 68, 7; used in neg. sent., 68, note 3.

Quisque, quisque, quislibet, 68; position, 68, note 4; with superl., 228, 1.

Quisque, with ind., 247, 4.

Quo, with subj., 251.

Quo — eo, 228, 1.

Quoad, 255, 1.

Quocunque, with 247, 4.

Quod, 276; *quod* or acc. with inf., 276; 271; *quod* or *ut* after *accedit*, 276, 4, 3; *non quod* with subj., 251; position, 312; with subj., 261.

Quod, with gen. of quant., 212, 2.

Quominus, with subj., 253.

Quoque, position, 165, 2, and note 3.

Quotquot, with ind., 247, 4.

Quum, meaning, moods, tenses, 256; *quum* and *quum primum*, 245, 2; *quum — tum*, 165.

R.

Rarus for *raro*, 236, 2.

Ratione ac via, 224, 3, 1.

Ratus, 278, 4.

Recens, adv., 158, 2, b, note.

Reciprocal express., 238, 7, c, 3.

Recordari, 216.

Rectè, 233, 2, note.

Recusare with *quominus, ne, quin*, 253.

Reddere with double acc., 197 and note.

Redimere with abl. and gen., 218, 2.

REDUNDANT words, 47, VI-VIII

Redundare with abl., 229.

Reforcare with abl., 229.

Refert mea, tua, etc., 219; takes acc. with inf., *ut*, or indirect quest., 219, 1; 270, 2, 3.

Refertus with abl., 213, 1.

REFLEXIVE pron. (*sui, sibi, se, suos*), 63, 4; 233, 7; joined to acc. with

inf., 268, 4; in ind. disc., 277, 4; in clauses of conseq., 238, 7, c, 2.

RELATIVE pron., agreeing with pred. noun, 191, 3, 2; for *et is*, etc., 233, 6; after *idem*, 233, 2, a; for *ut ego*, 257; 258; for *quum ego*, 259; position, 306; 303, 2; 311.

Relative clauses, with or without dem. monst., 238, c, 3; for so-called, 238, 2, b; considering, according to, 238, 2, c; disting. from indir. quest., 263, 3; when in acc. with inf. in indir. quest., 277, 4, 2; person of the verb in rel. clauses, 238, 4; rel. clauses in subj., 257; order of clauses, 317.

Religio, 208, 1.

Reminisci with gen., 216.

Renuntiari with double acc., 197; pass. with double nom., 192, 2.

Reperiuntur qui with subj., 260.

Reprehendere with *quod*, also acc. with inf., 276, 4, note.

Restat with *ut*, 275.

Revertor, perf. *reverti*, 135, 15.

Reum facere with gen., 217; *reus capitis*, 217.

Rhythmus, 309.

Ridere aliquem, 194, 4.

Right, 247, 1 and 2.

Ritu, 224, 1.

Rogare, to pray, 198, 2, note; with *ut ne*, 198, 2, note; 275; to ask, 198, 3.

Rudis with gen., 213.

Rus, 201, 1.

S.

Salvo, 150, 3.

Satis, with gen. of quant., 212, 2; *satis esse*, with dat. of ger., 237, 2;

satis, 160, 3.

Sciens, for adv., 236, 1.

Se, see Reflexive.

Secernere, seicungere, separare, take a, 232, 2, 3.

Secius, adv., 160, 3.

Sectari, with acc., 194.

Sed, but, 167; *sed tamen*, 167, note.

See takes inf., *quum* and part., 281, 4, 2.

Semi-depon., 115, 123, IV.

Sententia mea, etc., 226, 2.

SENTENCES, 189.

SEQUENCE of tenses, 246.

Sequi, and comp. with acc., 194, and note; *sequitur ut*, 275.

Servitutem servire, 194, 3.

Setius, 160, 3.

Seccenti = many, 57, note.

Si minus, 171, 1; *si non* for *nisi*, 171, 1; *si quis*, 68, note 2.

- Sic, ita, tam*, 170, 1.
Similis, with dat. and gen., 208, 1.
Simulac, 245, 2 and 4.
Sin autem, 171.
Sine ulla spe, 68, note 3.
Sinere, takes acc. with inf., 269, pers. constr., 278.
 Singular of subst. for plur., 189, 3, 7.
Singularia, 47, III.
Sis (si vis), 141, note 1; 264, 3, 2.
Sitire, with acc., 194, 4.
Sicc, or, 166; *sicc* — *sicc*, with ind., 247, 5.
Sobrius, for adv., 236, 3.
 So-called, 238, 2, b.
Sodes, 264, 3, 2.
Solito magis, 227; 308.
Solitus, 278, 4.
Sollicitor, takes acc. with inf., also *quod*, 271.
Solvendo non esse, not able to pay, 287, 3, note.
Solus, 236, 2; 237, 2.
Spe citius, serius, 227, 2, note.
Species, per speciem, 224, 3, 1.
Spectatum habeo, 278, 5.
Sperare, takes acc. with pres. and perf. inf., 268, 2.
Spoliare, with abl., 229.
Statuere, takes in with abl., 235, 2; *statutum habeo*, 278, 5.
 Stem-word, 178.
 Still, with compar. and superl., 54, 3, 6.
Studere, with dat., 204; takes inf., also acc. with inf., 266, 3; 269.
Studiosus, eager, with gen., 213.
Suadere, with *ut*, 275.
Subire periculum, 195, 1.
 SUBJECT, 189, 1; omitted, 189, II, 3, 1; subj. of the inf. in the acc., 206, 1; position, 293; 295; modifiers of subj., 189 I, 4; 294, 1.
 SUBJUNCTIVE, 248; optat., 248, 1; concess., 248, 2; potent., ib., 3, a; dubit., ib., 3, b; condit., ib., 3, a; subj. with conjunct., 349; in relat. clauses, 257; in indirect quest., 263; in indir. disc., 277; without conj., after *oportet*, etc., 270, 3, 1; after *volo*, etc., 269, 4; after *cave, fac, sine*, 265, 1 and 2; fut. subj. replaced, 246, 4, 6.
 SUBSTANTIVES, division of, 2, 1; kinds, 3; *communis*, 4, 4; *mobili*, 4, 5; *epicoena*, 4, 6; defective and redundant, 47; verbal, 178; denominative, 179; abstract from adj., 180; subst. as adj., 48, III, 5, 1; as attrib., 191, 4.
Sui sibi, see reflexive.
Sumere, with double acc., 197.
Suoapte, suapte, 69, 2.
Superest, with *ut*, 275.
Supergredi, superouedere, with acc., 195, 1.
Superior, for adv., 236, 2.
 SUPERLATIVE, regular, 50; in *errimus, illimus, entissimus*, 51; other irreg., 52, 1 — 3; in *umus* for *imus*, 52, 5, note; with *maxime*, 53; superl. = very, 54, 1; modified, 55, 5 — 7; without compar., 53, 1; no superl., 53, 2 and 3; with abl. of measure, 228; with part. gen., 212, 1; superl. of adv., 180.
 SUPINE, formation, 76, II; irreg. sup., 108; sup. in *um*, 290; in *u*, 291.
Supplicare, with dat., 204.
Suus, see reflexive; *suo loco, suo anno*, 233, note; 233, 9, note.
 Syllables, long or short, 323; 327; final syll., 330; 331; position, 333; in verse, 334.
 T.
Tacitus, for adv., 236, 1.
Taedet, 196, 1.
Talis — qualis, 69, 1, 2 and note 2.
Tam, sic, ita, 170, 1.
Tam = quam, 165.
Tamquam, with subj., 254, 2.
Tanti, gen. of price, 218.
Tantum, with gen. of quant., 212, 2; for *tanto*, 228, 2; *tantum abest ut — ut*, 275, 2, 2.
Tantus — quantus, 69, 2.
Temperare aliquid, sibi, 204, 2.
Templum omitted, 210, 2, 5.
Tempus est with inf., also gen. of gerund, 236, 1.
Teneo with fut. part. pass. for perf. act., 278, 5.
 TENSES of the verb, 71, II; use, 239; principal and relative tenses, 239, 1; tenses in depend. clauses, 246; in clauses of conseq., 246, 4, 2; in indirect disc., 277, 3; after hist. pres., 246, 4, 8. and 247, 4, 8; in clauses after an inf. part., adj. or subst., 246, 4, 4; in depend. hypoth. thoughts, 246, 4, 5; in letters, 243, 2; after verbs of fearing, 250, 3, 2; after *paene*, 247, 2, 3; after *utinam, dummodo, licet*, 254; *antequam*, 255, 2; exactness in Latin tenses, 243, 1; 244, 3; tenses of the inf., 274.
Terra marique, 233, 1.
Terreo with *ne*, 250, 8.
 That, expressed by acc. with inf., 267; by *quod*, 271; 276: *ut*, 249; 275: *quominus, ne, quin*, 253; *quin*

after *non dubito*, 252; *ne* after *timeo*, etc., 250, 3.

The — the, with compar., 228, 1.

Thesis, 335, 2.

This, these, those, omitted with the gen., 210, 2, 4.

Thousand = *sexcenti*, 57, 1.

Threaten takes acc. with inf., 268, 2.

Time (when), 199, 1; 234 and note 1; (how long?) 199, 1; 234, 2.

Too, by compar., 54, 1, II, 1, note.

Toto mari, etc., without *in*, 233, 1; *tutus* for adv., 236, 2.

Tradere with fut. part. pass., 281, 3; *traditur*, pers. const., 192, 5; 273.

Trans in comp., 195.

Transitive verbs, 70, II, 1.

Trepidus for adv., 236, 3.

Tribuere with double dat., 208.

Triumphare with abl., 221, 2.

Tum — *tum*, 165.

U.

Ubi, ubi primum, tenses, 245, 2 and notes.

Ubi terrarum, 212, 2, 3.

Ubicunque with ind., 247, 4.

Ullus, quisquam, 63, 7.

— *um* for *arum*, 15, 2; for *orum*, 25, 2; with distrib. numb., 59, 4.

— *undus* for *endus*, 106, 6.

Unicuersus for adv., 236, 2.

Unus in the plur., 59, 3; *unus ex, de* or with gen., 212, 1, note 3; as adverb, 236, 2.

Urbs, attrib. and appos., 201, 2, notes 1, 2.

Unus, usui esse, 208, 3, 1.

Ut, that, etc., with subj., 249; use, 275; after *timeo*, 250, 3; after verb *dico*, 268, 1; in exclam., 272; omitted, 275, 2, 1; *ut* or acc. with inf., see acc. with inf.; *ut* or *quod* after *accedit*, 276, 4, 3; *ut ne, non*, 250, 2; without = *ut non*, 282, 2, note.

Ut, as soon as, 245, 2 and notes.

Ut, as, 170, 1.

Utcunque with ind., 247, 4.

Uter, quis, 67, 3.

Uterque frater, quorum uterque, 212, 1, 1.

Uti with abl., 281; *utendus*, pass. and pers., 284, 2, 1.

Utilis, 208, 1 and note 1; with dat. of gerund, 237, 1; with *ad* and acc., 238, 2, 1; with sup. in *u*, 291.

Utinam, 254.

Ut primum. see *ut*.

Utrum, 176, 1 and 2.

V.

Vacare with abl., 229; with dat., 204.

Vacuus takes abl. with or without *ab*, 232, 2.

Vae with dat., 202, 1.

Vale, 150, 3.

Vapulo, 144, 2, note.

Ve vel, 166; *vel* — *vel*, 166; with compar. and superl., 54, 6.

Velut (si) with subj., 254, 2.

Vendere, sell, with gen. and abl., 218, 2.

Venire, to come, with double dat., 203.

Venire, to be on sale, 144, 2, note 1; with abl. and gen., 218, 2.

Venit mihi in mentem, 216.

Verbs, kinds of, 70, 1 and 2; moods, etc., 71; stem, root forms, 75; finite, etc., 71; trans., etc., 70; neuter pass., 144; semi-dep., 115; 122, 20; defect., 147; impera., 154; verbal, 183; freq., etc., 183; intrans. with acc., 194; 195; verbs of feeling with abl., 221, 2; take *quod* and acc. with inf., 268; 271; of fearing with *ut, ne*, 250, 3; of memory, 216; of separation, 232, 1 and 3; of buying, etc., 218; 222; pass. with pers. constr., 273; verbs with dat. of gerund, 287, 2; verbs with *ut*, 275.

VERSE AND VERSIFICATION, 334; 335; kinds, 336; 337; 338.

Vereri, with *ut ne*, 250, 3; *veritus*, 278, 4.

Vertere, with double dat., 206.

Vero, verum, verumtamen, 167.

Verum dicere, 237, 4, 1.

Vesci with abl., 231; *vescendus*, 285, 1.

Vestras, 69, 1, 1.

Vetare, takes acc. with inf., 269, 2; *vetor*, pers. const., 273, 1.

Via Aurelia, 233, 2.

Vicinus with gen. and dat., 208, 2, 1.

Victricia arma, 48, note 1.

Videor with double nom., 192, 2, a; pers. const., 208, 4, and 273; *videatur alicuius*, 215, 2, 1.

Vidi eum currere, etc., 281, 4, 2.

Vin for *vime*, 141, note 1.

Vitam vivere, 194, 3.

Vituperare with *quod*, also acc. with inf., 271.

Vocare with double acc., 197; in pass. with double nom., 192, 2, b.

VOCATIVE, position, 308, 2

Volo, nolo, malo, 141; take inf. acc. with inf. and subj., 269; *velim, vellem*, 248; *velle*, etc., as fut., 274; *hoc factum volo*.
Volt for *vult*, 141, note 2.
Voluntate, 224, 3, 1.
 Vowel, short, 324, 2; *e*, in fifth decl., long, 324, 2, note 1; vowels in Greek words, 324, 2, 4; gen. in *ius*, long, 324, 2, 2; *i*, in *fiō*, long, note 3.

W

What, which, see *quis, quid*.
 Whether — or, 176, 1, 2.
 With, abl. of instrum., 220, 1; *cum*, 220, 1, 2; abl. of manner, *cum, per*, 224.
 Without, 282, 2.
 Words, formation, 178.
 Worth, 218.
 Would, would have = ind., 247, 1.

175 OP

UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO



20 216 595

PA 2087 Schultz,
.S2912 Ferdinand, 1814-
1878 A Latin grammar

PA 2087 Schultz,
.S2912 Ferdinand, 1814-
1878 A Latin grammar

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO LIBRARY

U of Chicago



20216595

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO LIBRARY